

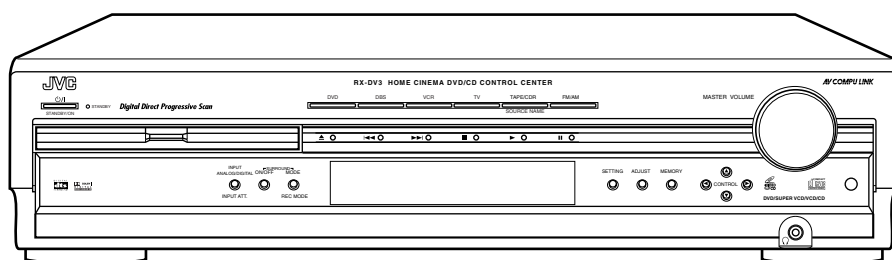
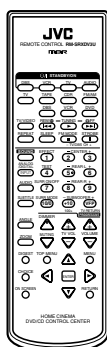
JVC



HOME CINEMA DVD/CD CONTROL CENTER

DVD 收音扩大机

RX-DV3SL



AV COMPU LINK
Digital Direct Progressive Scan



INSTRUCTIONS 使用说明书

For Customer Use:

Enter below the Model No. and Serial No. which are located either on the rear, bottom or side of the cabinet. Retain this information for future reference.

Model No. _____

Serial No. _____

LVT0875-002C
[US,UN]

Caution—/I/STANDBY/ON button!

Disconnect the mains plug to shut the power off completely. The STANDBY/ON  switch in any position does not disconnect the mains line. The power can be remote controlled.

注意—/I/STANDBY/ON 开关!

想要完全关闭电源，须将电源插头从插座上拔下。
无论 /I/STANDBY/ON 键处于何种位置，主电路仍旧没有关闭。
电源开关可用遥控器进行控制。

CAUTION

To reduce the risk of electrical shocks, fire, etc.:

1. Do not remove screws, covers or cabinet.
2. Do not expose this appliance to rain or moisture.

注意

为了减少触电，火灾等危险：

1. 请勿擅自卸下螺丝钉，盖子或机壳。
2. 请勿让本机受雨淋或置潮湿环境中。

CAUTION

- Do not block the ventilation openings or holes.
(If the ventilation openings or holes are blocked by a newspaper or cloth, etc., the heat may not be able to get out.)
- Do not place any naked flame sources, such as lighted candles, on the apparatus.
- When discarding batteries, environmental problems must be considered and local rules or laws governing the disposal of these batteries must be followed strictly.
- Do not expose this apparatus to rain, moisture, dripping or splashing and that no objects filled with liquids, such as vases, shall be placed on the apparatus.

注意

- 切勿堵塞通风眼或孔。
(如果通风眼或孔被报纸或布等物堵塞，
热量将无法散出。)
- 切勿在机体上放置任何裸露的火源，如点燃的蜡烛。
- 想要丢弃电池时，必须考虑环保问题以及严格遵守当地关于处理废旧电池的有关法律规定或条例。
- 切勿让本机受雨淋，受潮湿，落上或溅上水滴；亦勿在机体的上面放置盛满液体的容器，如花瓶。

Caution: Proper Ventilation

To avoid risk of electric shock and fire and to protect from damage.

Locate the apparatus as follows:

- Front: No obstructions open spacing.
 Sides: No obstructions in 10 cm from the sides.
 Top: No obstructions in 10 cm from the top.
 Back: No obstructions in 15 cm from the back
 Bottom: No obstructions, place on the level surface.
 In addition, maintain the best possible air circulation as illustrated.

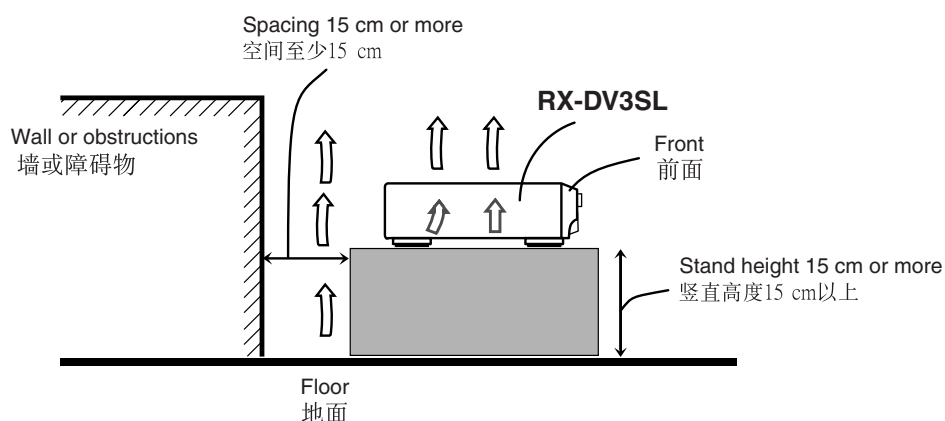
注意：正确的通风方法

为了防止触电、火灾以及避免损坏，

按如下要求放置机器：

- 前面：留下空间不要放置障碍物。
 侧面：侧面的10 cm之内不要放置障碍物。
 上面：上面的10 cm之内不要放置障碍物。
 背面：背面的15 cm之内不要放置障碍物。
 底部：不要放置障碍物，水平放置。

此外、如图所示，尽可能保持最佳的空气循环。

**IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS/ 雷射产品的重要说明****REPRODUCTION OF LABELS/ 标签内容说明**

① CLASSIFICATION LABEL, PLACED ON EXTERIOR SURFACE

① 分类标签，贴在外表面

② WARNING LABEL, PLACED INSIDE THE UNIT

② 警告标签，贴于机内

**CLASS 1
LASER PRODUCT**

CAUTION : Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM. (e)

ADVARSEL : Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åpen eller interlocken feiler. Undgå direkte eksponering til stråling. (d)

WARNING : Synlig och osynlig laserstråling när den öppnas och spärren är urkopplad. Betrakta ej strålen. (s)

VARO : Avattaessa ja suojalukitus ohitettuna tai viallisena olet alttiina näkyvälle ja näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle. Vältä säteen kohdistumista suoraan itseesi. (f)

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT

2. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.

3. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the Unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.

1. 一级雷射产品

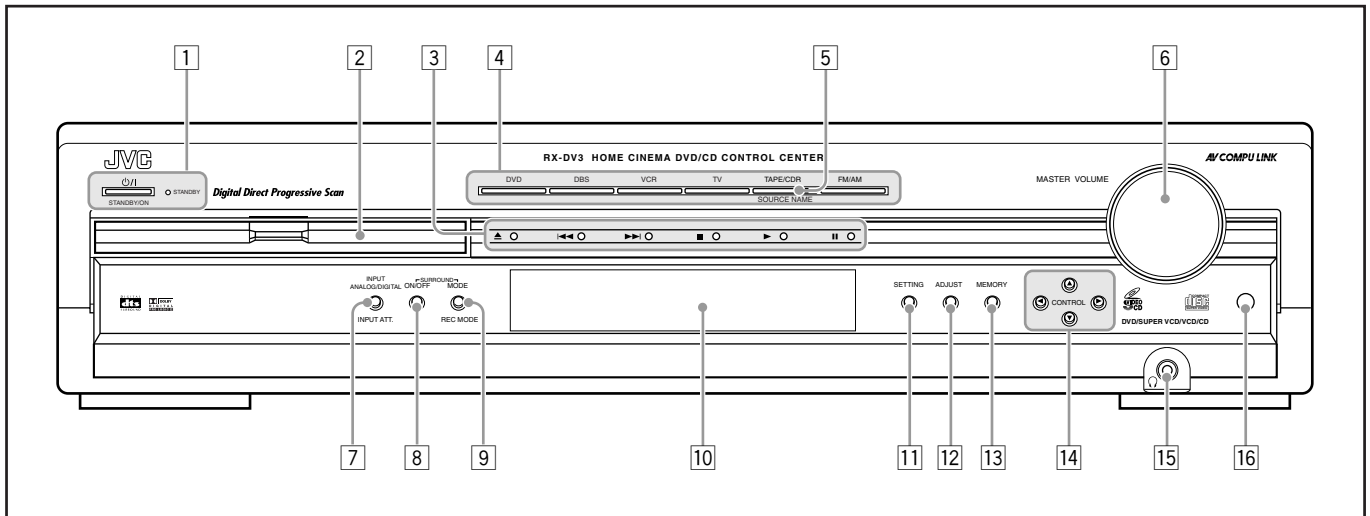
2. **注意：**当内部锁定装置失效或者损坏后，打开盖板可能会产生可见或不可见的雷射辐射。应避免受到雷射光线的直接照射。

3. **注意：**请勿打开顶盖板。本机内部没有用户可自行维修的部件；所有维修工作应由有资格的人员完成。

Table of Contents

Parts Identification	2	Operating Procedure	23
Front Panel	2	■ Front speaker output balance—"BAL"	24
Remote Control	3	■ Tone—"BASS" and "TREBLE"	24
Getting Started	4	■ Speaker output levels—"SUBWFR," "CENTER," "REAR L," and "REAR R"	24
Before Installation	4	■ DAP effect level—"EFFECT"	24
Checking the Supplied Accessories	4	Creating Realistic Sound Fields	25
Adjusting the Voltage Selector	4	Activating Surround Mode	27
Putting Batteries in the Remote Control	4	Selecting Surround Modes	27
Connecting the FM and AM Antennas	5	Adjusting Surround Mode Using Remote Control	28
Connecting the Speakers	6	DVD Player Operations	29
Connecting Audio/Video Components	7	Disc Information	29
■ About connecting cords	7	Using the On-screen Bar	31
■ Setting the color system	7	Basic Operation through the On-screen Bar	32
■ TV connection	8	Changing the Time Indication	32
■ VCR connection	9	Locating a Desired Scene from the Disc Menu	33
■ DBS tuner connection	9	Selecting a View Angle—ANGLE	34
■ Cassette deck/CD recorder connection	10	Changing the Languages—SUBTITLE and AUDIO	35
■ Digital connection	10	Playing from a Specified Position on a Disc	37
Basic Operations	11	■ Locating a desired chapter—Chapter Search	37
1 Turn On the Power	11	■ Locating a desired position—Time Search	37
2 Select the Source to Play	11	■ Locating a desired scene—DIGEST	38
3 Adjust the Volume	11	Special Picture Playback	39
Turning Off the Sounds Temporarily	12	■ Frame-by-frame playback	39
Turning Off the Power with the Sleep Timer	12	■ Showing continuous still pictures—STROBE	39
Changing the Display Brightness	12	■ Playing back in slow-motion	39
Changing the Source Name	12	■ Zooming in—ZOOM	39
Selecting the Analog or Digital Input Mode	13	■ Changing the VFP setting—VFP	40
Changing the Digital Input Mode Manually	13	Program Playback and Random Playback	41
Attenuating the Input Signal	14	Repeat Playback	42
Changing the Scanning Mode	14	MP3 Disc Playback	43
Activating the Recording Mode	14	Basic Operations	43
Basic DVD Player Operations	15	Operations through the MP3 CONTROL Screen	44
1 Open the Disc Tray	15	Repeat Playback	44
2 Load a Disc	15	JPEG Disc Playback	45
3 Start Playback	15	Slide-show Playback	45
4 Adjust the Volume	16	Operations through the JPEG CONTROL Screen	46
5 Activate Realistic Sound Field	16	Repeat Playback	46
6 Select Surround Mode	16	Choice Menu Operations	47
7 Stop Playback	16	Operation Buttons	47
8 Turn Off the Power (into Standby)	16	Configuration of Choice Menu	47
Tuner Operations	17	Operating Procedure	48
Setting the AM Tuner Interval Spacing	17	■ LANGUAGE menu	49
Tuning into Stations Manually	17	■ PICTURE menu	49
Using Preset Tuning	17	■ AUDIO menu	50
Selecting the FM Reception Mode	18	• Language code list	50
Basic Settings	19	■ SPK. SETTING menu	51
Operation Buttons	19	■ OTHERS menu	52
Operating Procedure	19	Restricting Playback by Parental Lock	53
■ Speaker information—"SUBWFR," "FRNT SP," "CNTR SP," and "REAR SP"	20	■ Setting Parental Lock	53
■ Speaker distance	20	■ Changing the setting of Parental Lock	54
—"FRNT D," "CNTR D," and "REAR D"	20	■ Releasing Parental Lock temporarily	54
■ Crossover frequency—"CROSS"	21	• Country/Area codes list for Parental Lock	55
■ Low frequency effect attenuator—"LFE"	21	Glossary for DVD Player	56
■ Dynamic range compression—"D.COMP"	21	AV COMPU LINK Remote Control System	57
■ Digital input (DIGITAL IN) terminals—"DGT"	21	Operating JVC's Audio/Video Components	59
■ Auto surround—"AUTO SR"	22	Operating Audio Components	59
■ Video output mode—"VOUT"	22	Operating Video Components	60
Sound Adjustments	23	Operating Other Manufacturers' Equipment	61
Operation Buttons	23	Changing the Preset Signal Codes	61
		Maintenance	64
		Troubleshooting	65
		Specifications	68

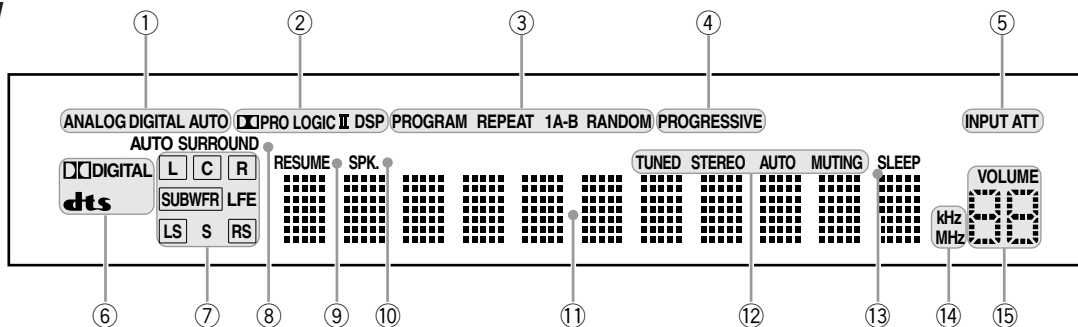
Front Panel



See pages in the parentheses for details.

- | | | | |
|---|---|----|--|
| 1 | ⏻/⏻ STANDBY/ON button and STANDBY lamp (11) | 8 | SURROUND ON/OFF button (16, 27) |
| 2 | Disc tray and illumination lamp (15) | 9 | SURROUND MODE button (16, 27) |
| 3 | DVD player operation buttons
▲ (open/close), ◀◀ (reverse skip), ▶▶ (forward skip),
■ (stop), ▶ (play), (pause) | | REC MODE button (14) |
| 4 | Source selecting buttons (11, 13)
• DVD, DBS, VCR, TV, TAPE/CDR, FM/AM | 10 | Display
• For details, see "Display" below. |
| 5 | SOURCE NAME button (12) | 11 | SETTING button (19 – 22) |
| 6 | MASTER VOLUME control (11, 16) | 12 | ADJUST button (23, 24) |
| 7 | INPUT ANALOG/DIGITAL button (13) | 13 | MEMORY button (17) |
| | INPUT ATT. (Attenuator) button (14) | 14 | CONTROL ▲/▼/◀/▶ buttons (17 – 24) |
| | | 15 | 📞 (phones) jack (11) |
| | | 16 | Remote sensor |

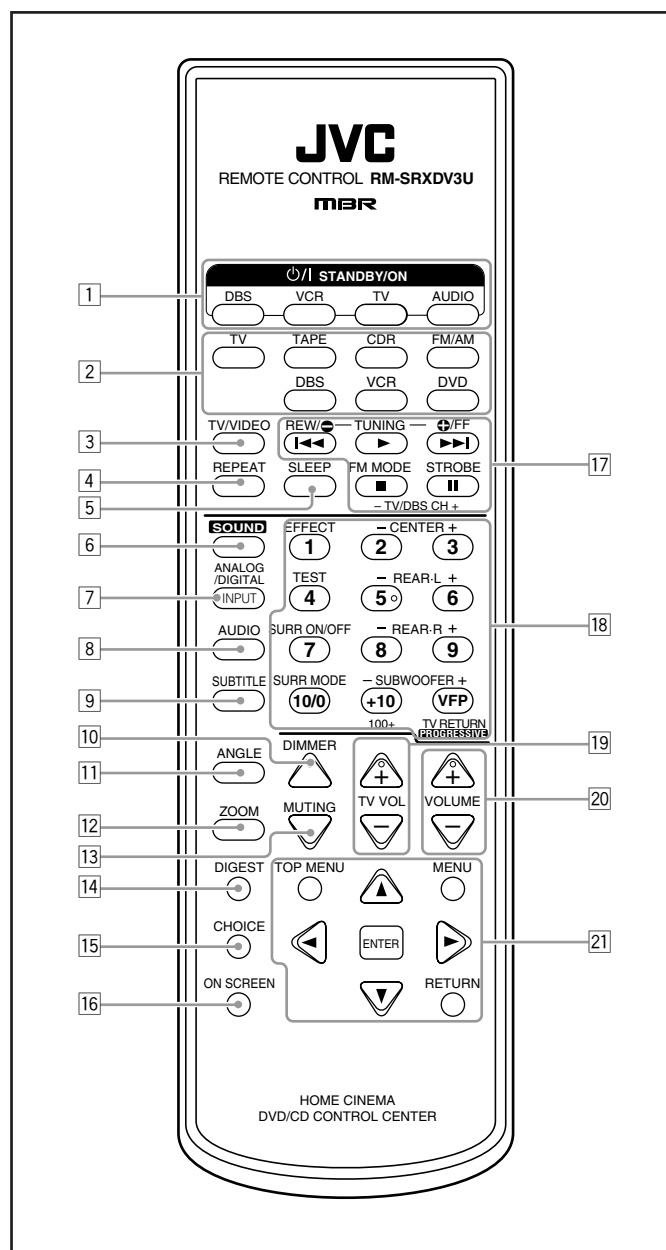
Display



- | | | | |
|---|--|----|---|
| 1 | Input mode indicators (13)
• ANALOG, DIGITAL, AUTO | 8 | Surround indicators (27)
• AUTO SURROUND, SURROUND |
| 2 | Surround mode indicators (25, 26)
• PRO LOGIC II, DSP | 9 | RESUME indicator (16) |
| 3 | Play mode indicators (41, 42, 44, 46)
• PROGRAM, REPEAT 1A-B, RANDOM | 10 | SPK. (speaker) indicator (11) |
| 4 | PROGRESSIVE indicator (14) | 11 | Main display |
| 5 | INPUT ATT indicator (14) | 12 | Tuner mode indicators (17, 18)
• TUNED, STEREO, AUTO, MUTING |
| 6 | Sound signal indicators (13)
• DIGITAL (Dolby Digital), DTS (DTS Digital Surround) | 13 | SLEEP indicator (12) |
| 7 | Signal and speaker indicators (27)
• L, C, R, SUBWFR (Subwoofer), LFE (Low Frequency Effect), LS, S, RS | 14 | Frequency unit indicators
• MHz (for FM station), kHz (for AM station) |
| | | 15 | VOLUME indication |

Parts Identification

Remote Control



See pages in the parentheses for details.

- 1 Φ /I STANDBY/ON buttons (11, 60 – 63)
 - DBS, VCR, TV, AUDIO
- 2 Source selecting buttons (11, 13, 59 – 63)
 - TV, TAPE, CDR, FM/AM, DBS, VCR, DVD
- 3 TV/VIDEO button (15, 60, 61)
- 4 REPEAT button (42, 44, 46)
- 5 SLEEP button (12)
- 6 SOUND button (24, 27, 28)
- 7 ANALOG/DIGITAL INPUT button (13)
- 8 AUDIO button (35, 36)
- 9 SUBTITLE button (35)
- 10 DIMMER button (12)
- 11 ANGLE button (34)
- 12 ZOOM button (39)
- 13 MUTING button (12)
- 14 DIGEST button (38)
- 15 CHOICE button (47, 48)
- 16 ON SCREEN button (31, 32, 34 – 38, 41, 42)
- 17 Multi operation buttons
 - $\lll$, $\ggg$, $\lll$, $\ggg$, $\lll$, $\ggg$, $\lll$, $\ggg$, REW, FF
 - TUNING $\oplus$ and $\ominus$ buttons (17)
 - FM MODE button (18)
 - STROBE button (39)
 - TV/DBS CH (channel) + and – buttons (60, 61)
- 18 Number buttons
 - For selecting preset channels (18)
 - For adjusting sound (24, 28, 59)
 - For operating audio/video components (59 – 63)
 - SURR (surround) ON/OFF button (16, 27)
 - SURR (surround) MODE button (16, 27)
 - VFP button (40)
 - TV RETURN button (60, 61)
 - PROGRESSIVE button (14)
- 19 TV VOL (volume) + and – buttons (60, 61)
- 20 VOLUME + and – buttons (11, 16)
- 21 Menu operation buttons
 - TOP MENU button (33)
 - MENU button (33)
 - RETURN button (33)
 - ENTER button
 - Cursor $\blacktriangle$ / $\blacktriangledown$ / $\blacktriangleright$ / $\blacktriangleleft$ buttons

Before Installation

General Precautions

- DO NOT insert any metal object into the unit.
- DO NOT disassemble the unit or remove screws, covers, or cabinet.
- DO NOT expose the unit to rain or moisture.

Locations

- Install the unit in a location that is level and protected from moisture.
- The temperature around the unit must be between 5°C and 35°C (23°F and 95°F).
- Make sure there is good ventilation around the unit. Poor ventilation could cause overheating and damage the unit.

Handling the unit

- DO NOT touch the power cord with wet hands.
- DO NOT pull on the power cord to unplug it. When unplugging the cord, always grasp the plug so as not to damage the cord.
- Keep the power cord away from the connecting cords and the antenna. The power cord may cause noise or screen interference. It is recommended to use a coaxial cable for antenna connection, since it is well-shielded against interference.
- When a power failure occurs, or when you unplug the power cord, the preset settings such as preset FM or AM channels and sound adjustments may be erased in a few days.

Checking the Supplied Accessories

Check to be sure you have all of the following supplied accessories. The number in the parentheses indicates the quantity of the pieces supplied.

- Remote Control (1)
- Batteries (2)
- AM Loop Antenna (1)
- FM Antenna (1)
- Composite Video Cord (1)
- AC Plug Adaptor (1)

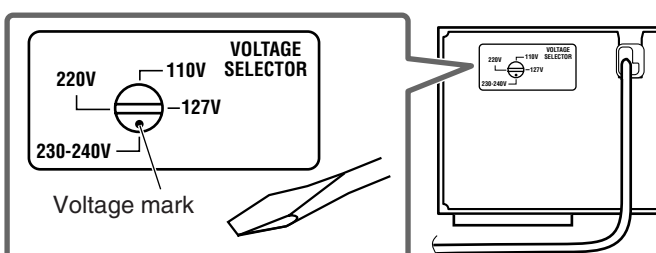
If anything is missing, contact your dealer immediately.

Adjusting the Voltage Selector

Before connections, always do the following first if necessary.

Select the correct voltage in VOLTAGE SELECTOR on the rear by using a screw driver.

Check to be sure if the voltage mark is set to the voltage for the area where you use this unit.

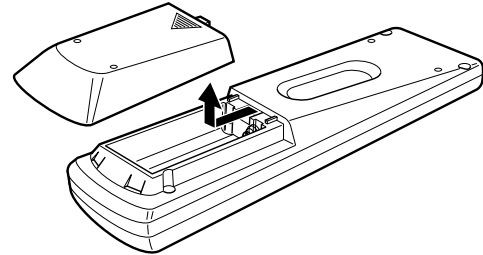


Putting Batteries in the Remote Control

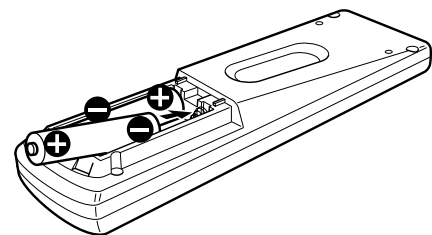
Before using the remote control, put two supplied batteries first.

- When using the remote control, aim the remote control directly at the remote sensor on the unit.

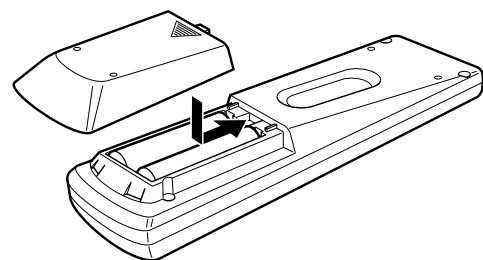
1 On the back of the remote control, remove the battery cover.



2 Insert batteries. Make sure to match the polarity: (+) to (+) and (-) to (-).



3 Replace the cover.



If the range or effectiveness of the remote control decreases, replace the batteries. Use two R6P(SUM-3)/AA(15F) type dry-cell batteries.

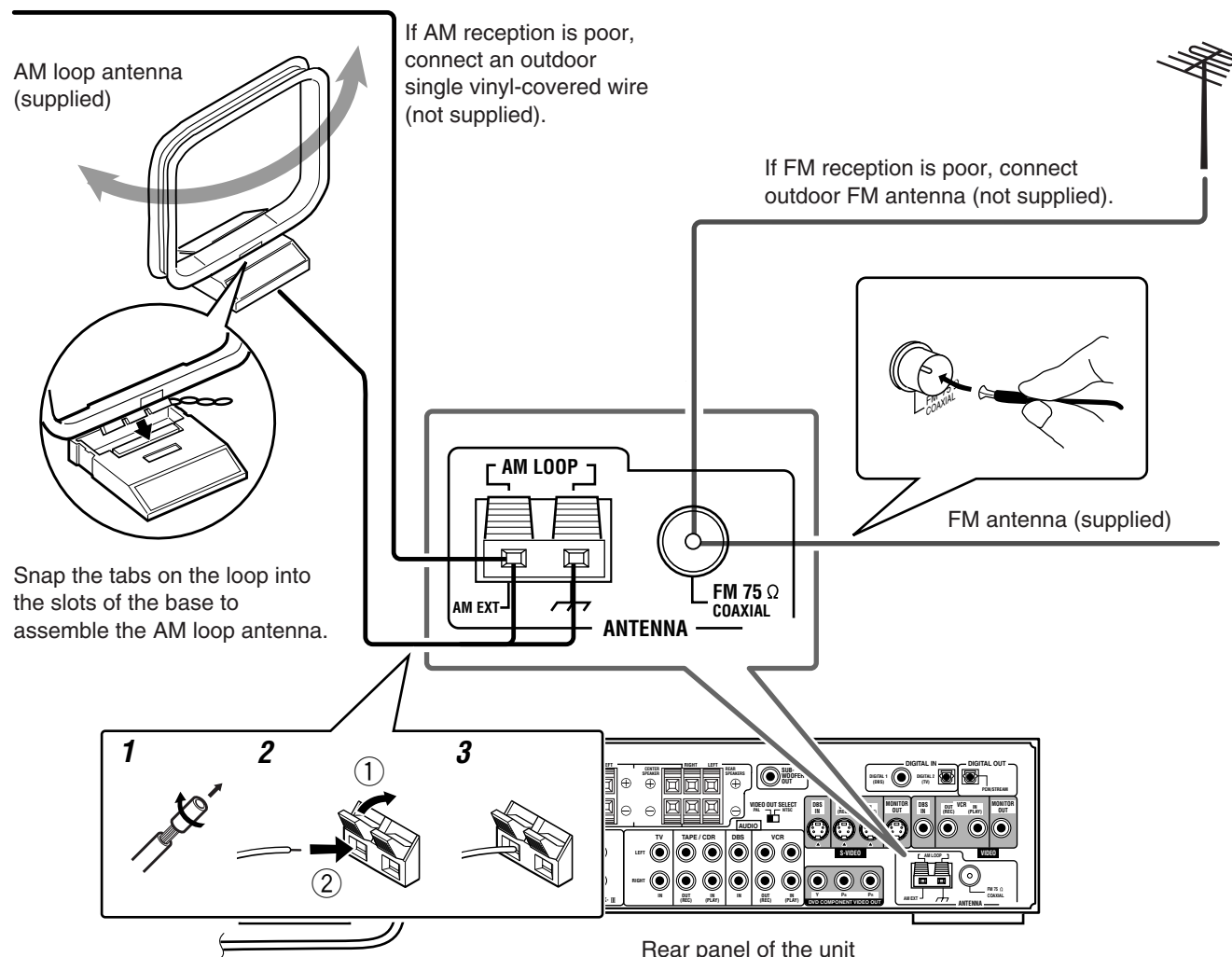
CAUTION:

Follow these precautions to avoid leaking or cracking cells:

- Place batteries in the remote control so they match the polarity: (+) to (+) and (-) to (-).
- Use the correct type of batteries. Batteries that look similar may differ in voltage.
- Always replace both batteries at the same time.
- Do not expose batteries to heat or flame.

Getting Started

Connecting the FM and AM Antennas



AM antenna connection

Connect the AM loop antenna supplied to the AM LOOP terminals.

- 1 Remove the insulation if the AM loop antenna wire is covered with vinyl.
- 2 Press and hold the clamp of the terminal (①), then insert the wire (②).
- 3 Release the clamp.

Turn the loop until you have the best reception.

- If the reception is poor, connect an outdoor single vinyl-covered wire (not supplied) to the AM EXT terminal. Keep the AM loop antenna connected.

FM antenna connection

Connect the FM antenna supplied to the FM 75 Ω COAXIAL terminal as temporary measure.

Extend the supplied FM antenna horizontally.

- If the reception is poor, connect an outdoor FM antenna (not supplied). Before attaching a 75 Ω antenna with a coaxial type connector (IEC or DIN 45325), disconnect the supplied FM antenna.

Note:

- Make sure the antenna conductors do not touch any other terminals, connecting cords and power cord. This could cause poor reception.

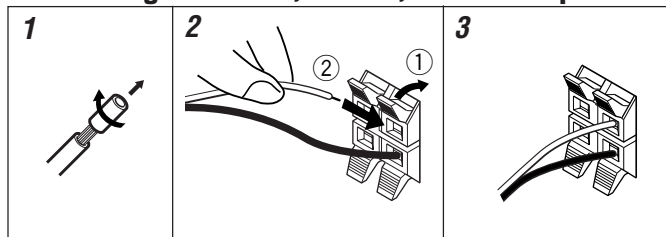
Connecting the Speakers

After connecting the front, center and rear speakers, and/or a subwoofer, set the speaker setting information properly to obtain the best possible Surround effect. For details, see page 20.

CAUTIONS:

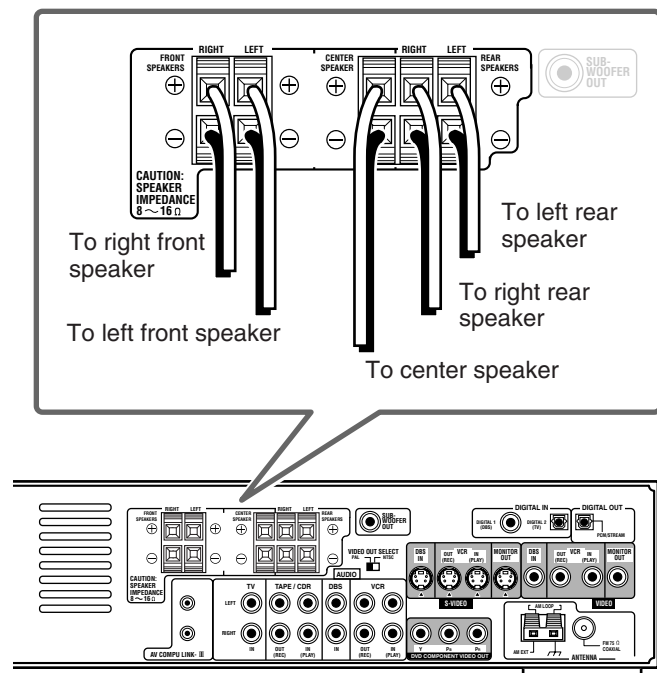
- Use speakers with the **SPEAKER IMPEDANCE** indicated by the speaker terminals (8 – 16 Ω).
- **DO NOT** connect more than one speaker to one speaker terminal.

Connecting the front, center, and rear speakers



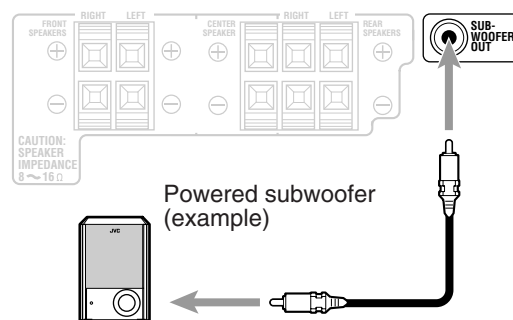
For each speaker, connect the (+) and (–) terminals on the rear panel to the (+) and (–) terminals marked on the speakers respectively.

- 1 Cut, twist and remove the insulation at the end of each speaker cord (not supplied).**
- 2 Press and hold the clamp of the speaker terminal (1), then insert the speaker cord (2).**
- 3 Release the clamp.**



Connecting the subwoofer speaker

By connecting a subwoofer, you can enhance the bass or reproduce the original LFE signals recorded in the digital software.



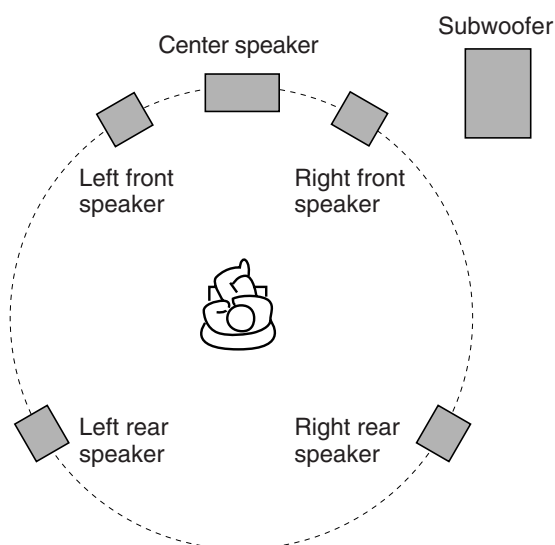
Connect the input jack of a powered subwoofer to the **SUB-WOOFER OUT** jack on the rear panel, using a cable with RCA pin plugs (not supplied).

- Refer also to the manual supplied with your subwoofer.

Note:

- You can place a subwoofer wherever you like since bass sound is non-directional. Normally place it in front of you.

Speaker Layout Diagram



To obtain the best possible sound from this system, place all the speakers except the subwoofer at the same distance from the listening position with each speaker's front faced toward the listener.

Then, change the subwoofer and speaker settings to fit your listening conditions (see page 20).

Getting Started

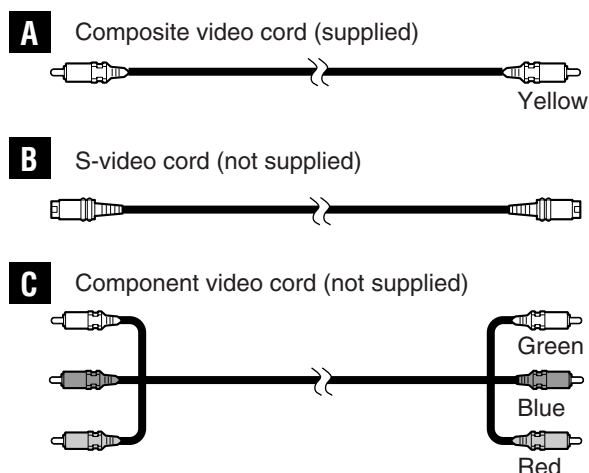
Connecting Audio/Video Components

Turn off all the components and the unit before connection.

About connecting cords

For video connections

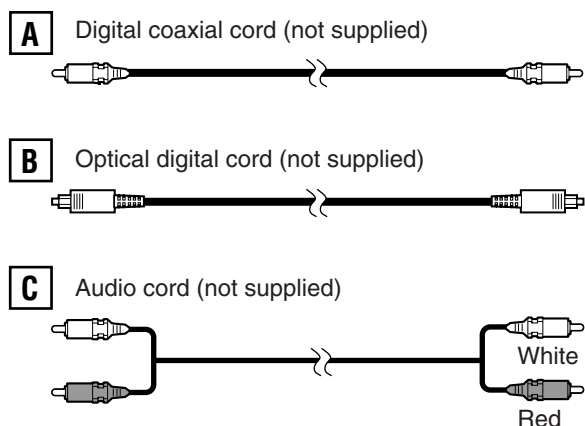
The S-video cords and the component video cord are not supplied with this unit.
Use the cords supplied with the other components or purchase them at your dealer.



- You can use composite video cord (**A**) and/or S-video cord (**B**) for connecting DBS tuner and VCR to this unit.
 - You can use component video cord (**C**) in addition to **A** and **B** for connecting your TV to this unit.
 - By using **B** or **C**, you can get a better picture quality—in the order: **A** < **B** < **C**.
 - To view the picture from DBS tuner or VCR on your TV, connect your TV to this unit using the same type of cord for connecting DBS tuner or VCR to this unit.
 - To view the picture from the built-in DVD player, connect the TV to this unit using **A**, **B**, and/or **C**, then register the video output mode correctly (see “Video output mode” on page 22).
 - To enjoy the progressive video picture, connect the TV compatible with the progressive video input using **C**, then change the scanning mode correctly (see “Changing the Scanning Mode” on page 14).
- You can enjoy the progressive scanning mode only when the color system of your TV is NTSC (see page 8).**

For audio connections

Connect the external components to this unit with the audio cords.
Use the cord supplied with the other components or purchase them at your dealer.



- When the unit is shipped from the factory, the DIGITAL IN terminals are set for use with the following components:
 - DIGITAL 1 (coaxial): For DBS tuner
 - DIGITAL 2 (optical): For TV
- If you connect CDR, change the digital input (DIGITAL IN) terminal setting (see “Digital input (DIGITAL IN) terminals” on page 21) and the source name (see “Changing the Source Name” on page 12) correctly.
- Select the digital input mode correctly (see “Selecting the Analog or Digital Input Mode” on page 13).

Setting the color system

This unit is compatible with both the PAL system and the NTSC system. To match the color system of your TV, you can change the color system of this unit by switching the VIDEO OUT SELECT on the rear.

Set the color system of this unit while the unit is turned off.

- Before you play back a disc, make sure that the color system of the disc matches your TV.



Notes:

- If you change the VIDEO OUT SELECT setting while the unit is turned on, the setting will not take effect until you turn on the unit again.
- When you use a multi color system TV, you can change the color system of this unit automatically by selecting “MULTI” options as the monitor type in the PICTURE menu (see page 49). In this case, the setting of this unit is changed to match the color system of the loaded disc regardless the VIDEO OUT SELECT setting.

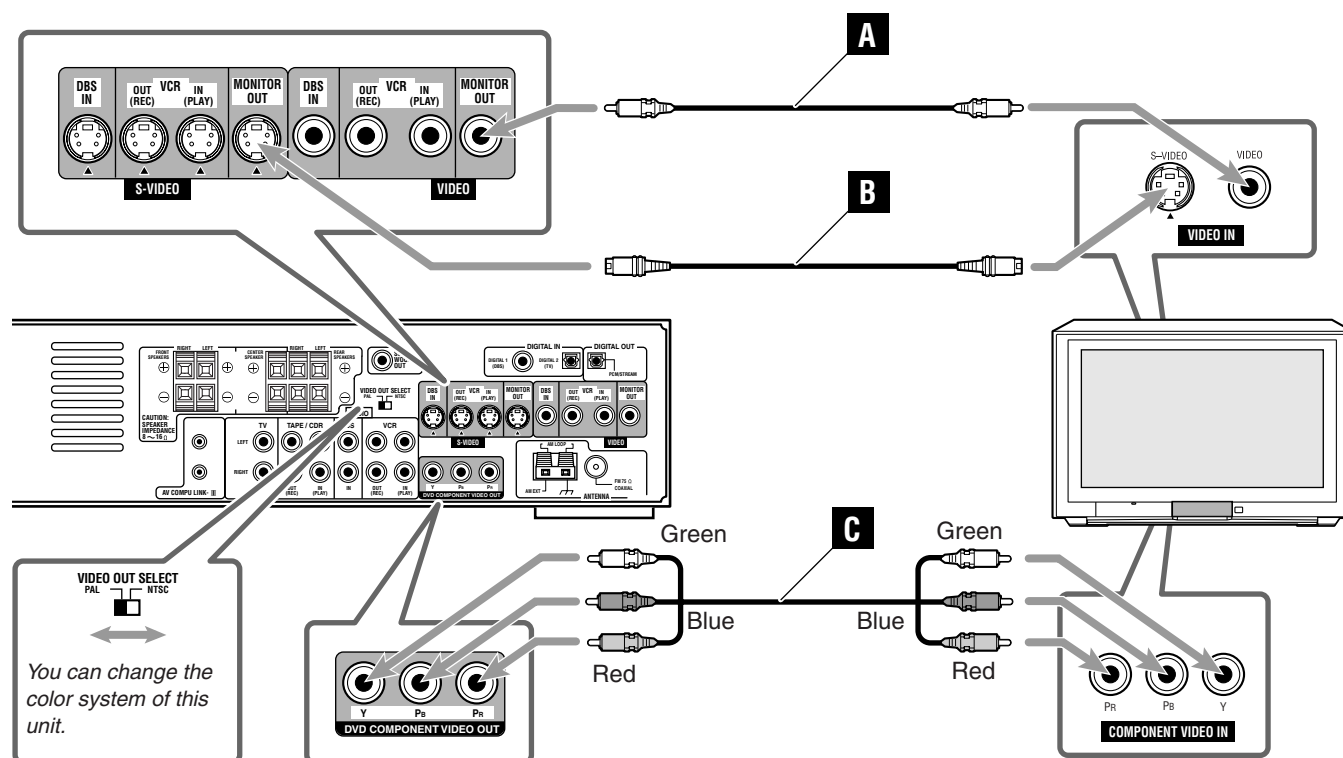
Turn off all the components and the unit before connection.

Illustrations of the input/output terminals are typical examples. When you connect other components, refer also to their manuals since the terminal names actually printed on their rear vary among the components.

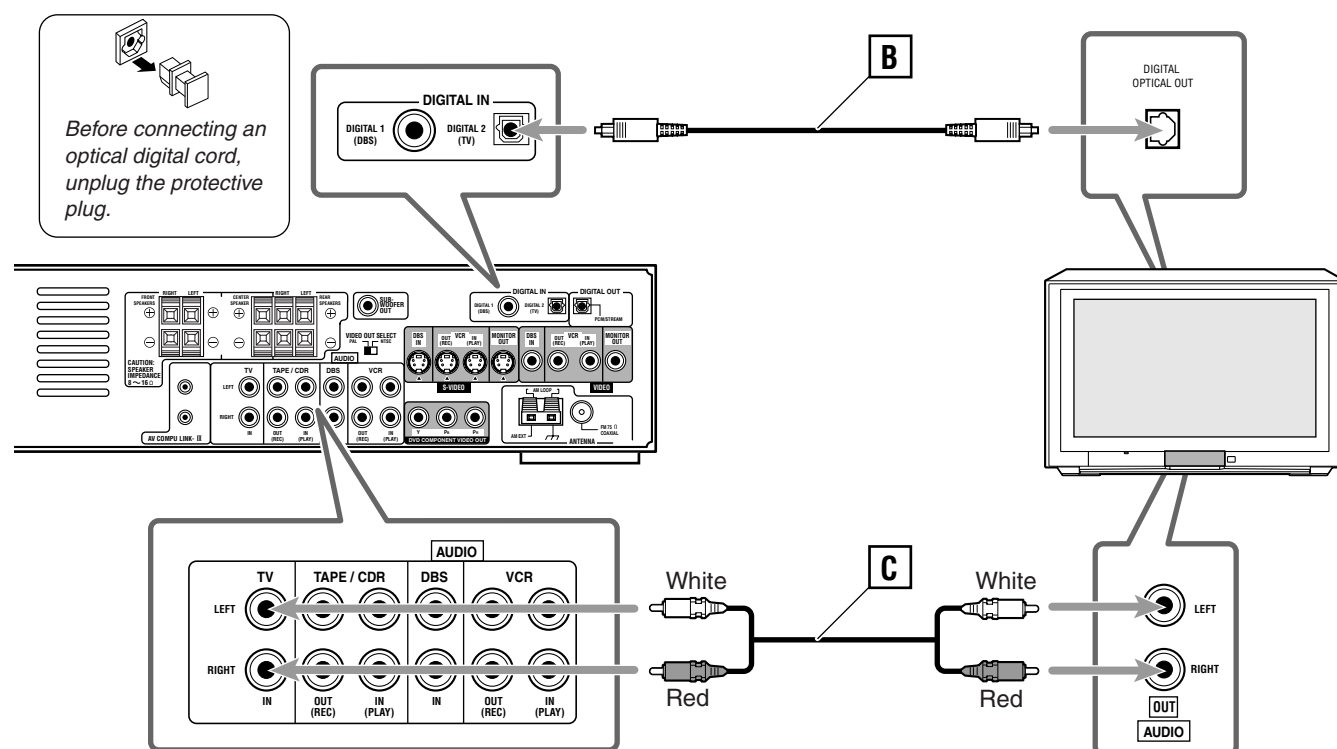
TV connection

Video connections

DO NOT connect a TV through a VCR or a TV with a built-in VCR; Otherwise, the picture may be distorted.



Audio connections

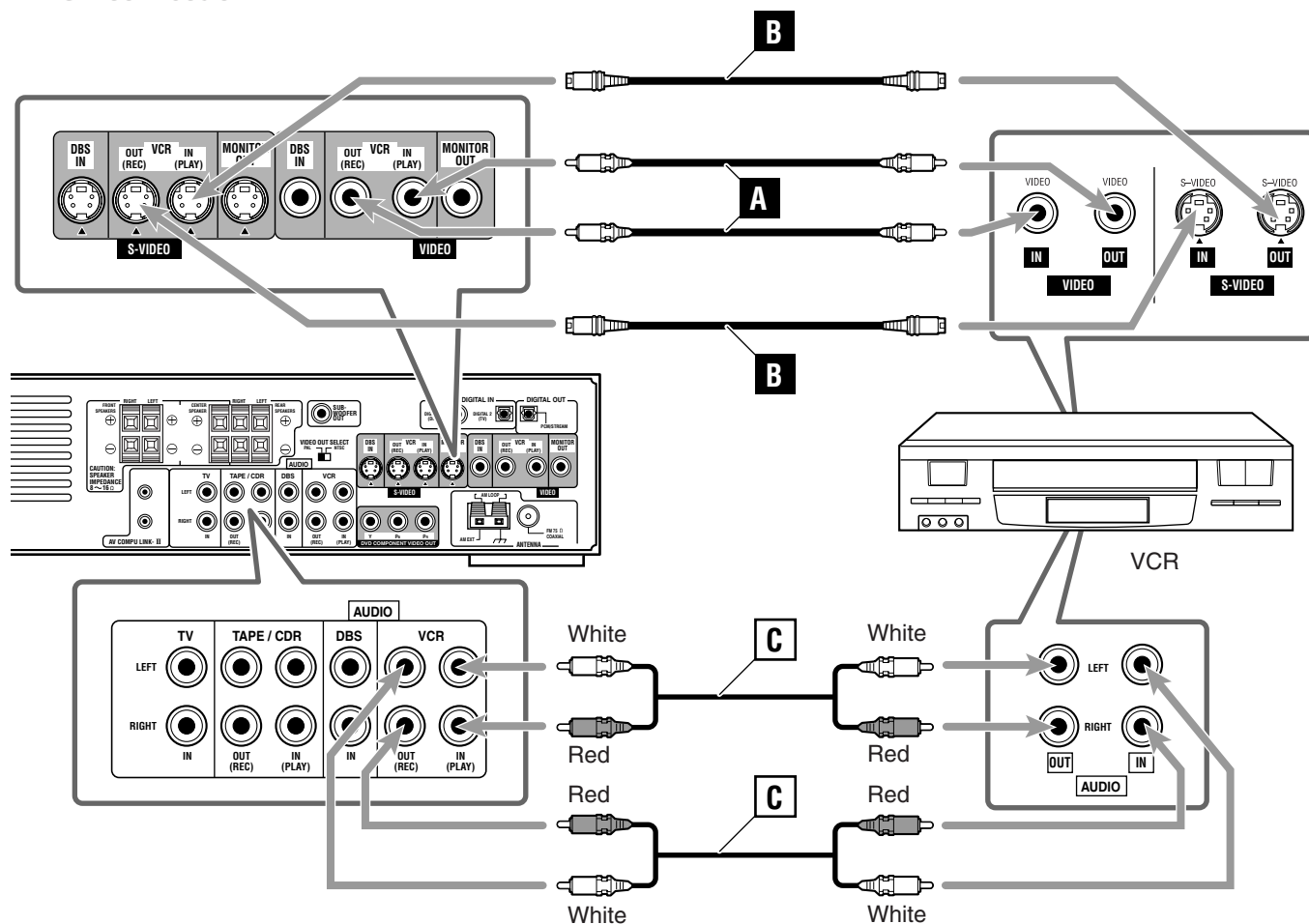


Getting Started

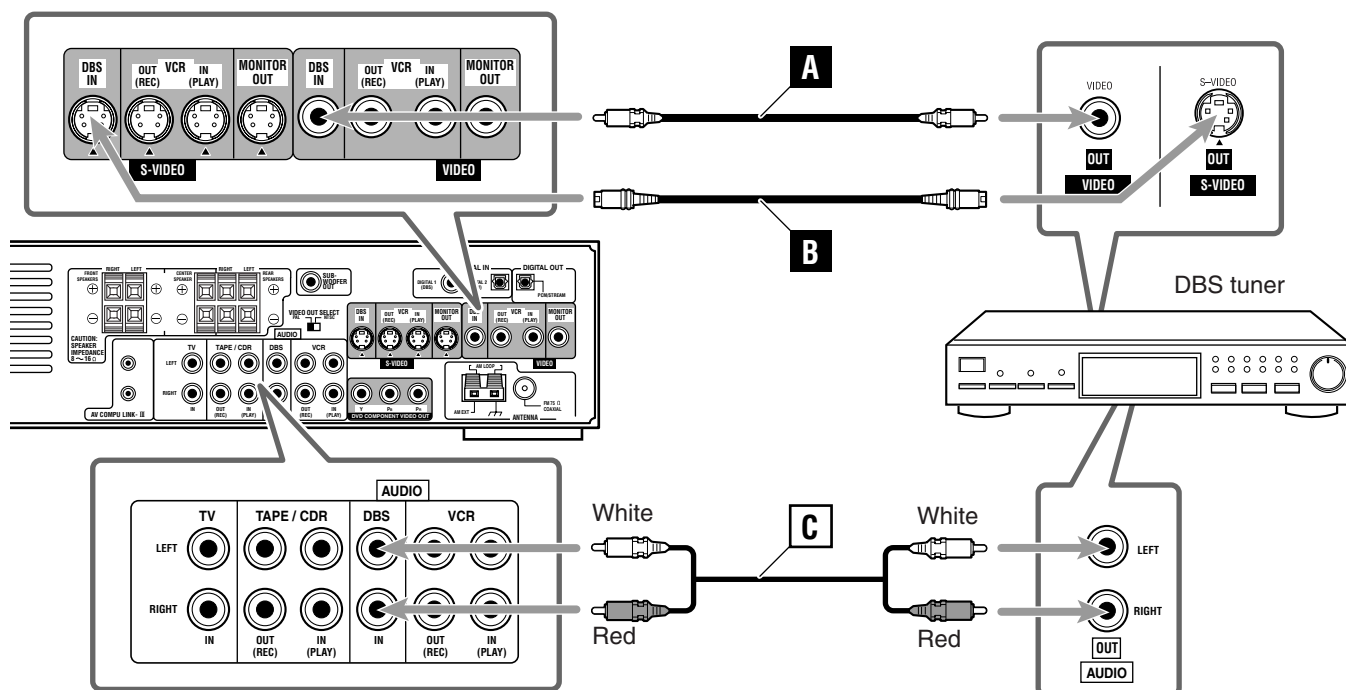
Turn off the TV and the unit before connection.

Illustrations of the input/output terminals are typical examples. When you connect other components, refer also to their manuals since the terminal names actually printed on their rear vary among the components.

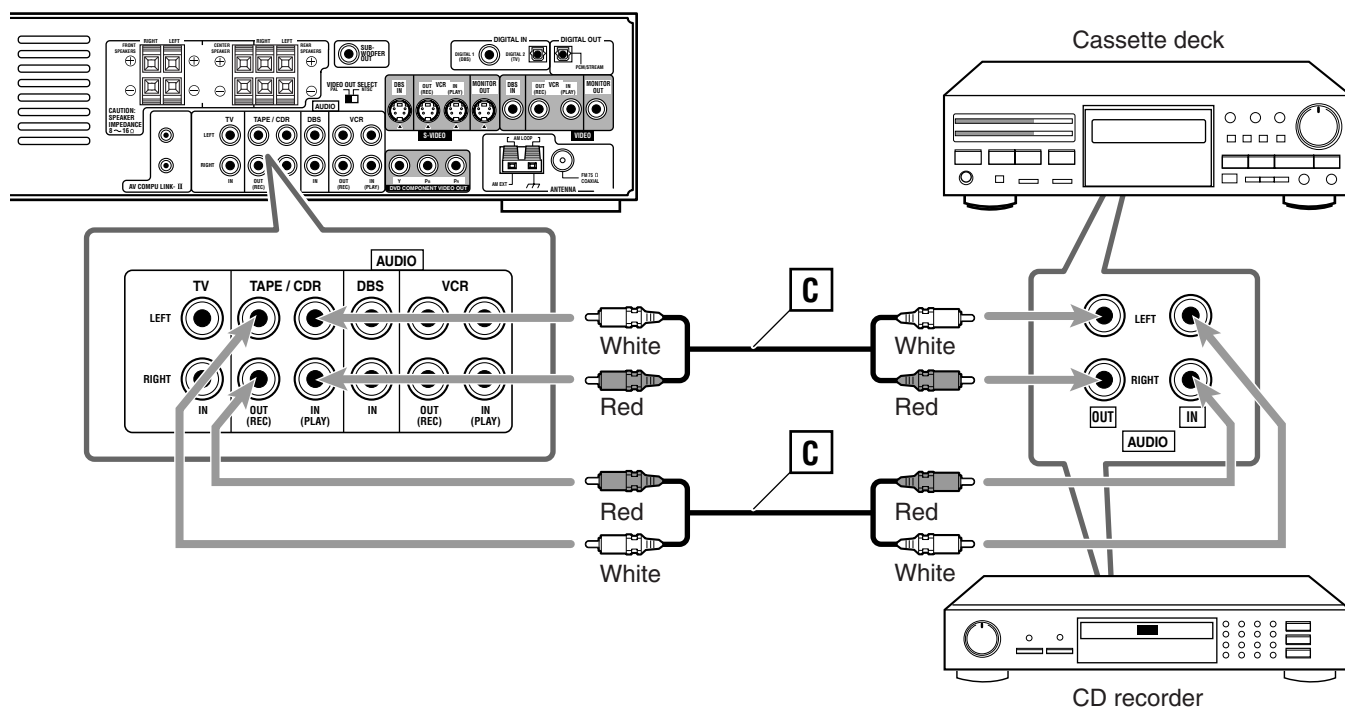
VCR connection



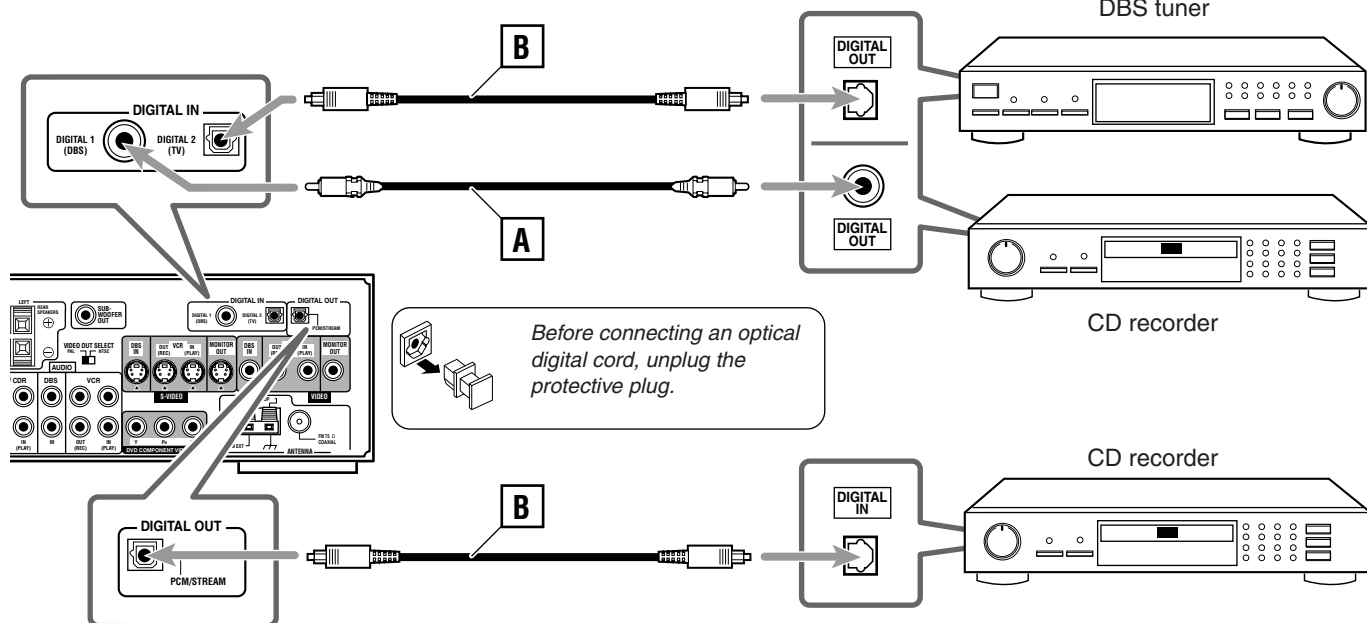
DBS tuner connection



■ Cassette deck/CD recorder connection



■ Digital connection



Now, you can plug the power cord of the unit into the AC outlet.

CAUTIONS:

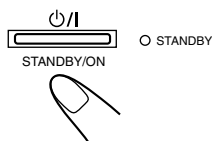
- Do not touch the power cord with wet hands.
- Do not pull on the power cord to unplug the cord. When unplugging the cord, always grasp the plug so as not to damage the cord.

Notes:

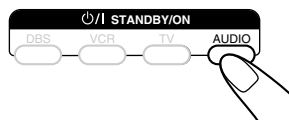
- Keep the power cord away from the connecting cords and the antenna cables. The power cord may cause noise or screen interference.
- The preset settings such as preset channels and sound adjustment may be erased in a few days in the following cases:
 - When you unplug the power cord.
 - When a power failure occurs.

Basic Operations

1 Turn On the Power



On the front panel



From the remote control

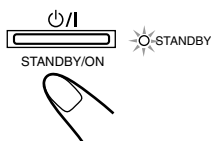
Press **STANDBY/ON** on the front panel or **STANDBY/ON AUDIO** on the remote control.

The STANDBY lamp goes off and the illumination lamp lights up. The current source name appears on the display.

- If the built-in DVD player is the current source, “READING” appears while the unit is detecting the type of the loaded disc (see page 29).
 - Playback starts automatically when you load some DVD VIDEO.
 - “NO DISC” appears on the display when no disc is loaded.

To turn off the power (into standby)

Press **STANDBY/ON** on the front panel or **STANDBY/ON AUDIO** on the remote control again. The illumination lamp goes off and the STANDBY lamp lights up.



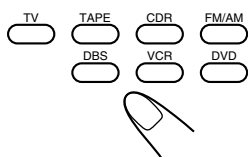
Note:

- A small amount of the power is consumed even in standby mode. To turn the power off completely, unplug the AC power cord.

2 Select the Source to Play



On the front panel



From the remote control

Press one of the source selecting buttons.

- | | |
|-----------|---|
| DVD | : Select the built-in DVD player. |
| DBS* | : Select the DBS tuner. |
| VCR | : Select the VCR. |
| TV* | : Select the TV tuner. |
| TAPE/CDR* | : Select the cassette deck or the CD recorder (front panel ONLY). |
| TAPE | : Select the cassette deck (remote control ONLY**). |
| CDR* | : Select the CD recorder (remote control ONLY**). |
| FM/AM | : Select an FM or AM broadcast. |

Notes:

* Register the digital input terminal setting (see “Digital input (DIGITAL IN) terminals” on page 21) and digital input mode setting correctly (see “Selecting the Analog or Digital Input Mode” on page 13). Source name and “DIGITAL” will be shown on the display when you select the source.

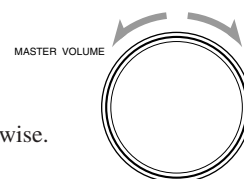
**When the source name is not assigned correctly, these buttons cannot work (see “Changing the Source Name” on page 12).

3 Adjust the Volume

On the front panel:

To increase the volume, turn MASTER VOLUME clockwise.

To decrease the volume, turn MASTER VOLUME counterclockwise.



From the remote control:

To increase the volume, press and hold VOLUME +.

To decrease the volume, press and hold VOLUME -.



CAUTION:

Always set the volume to the minimum before starting any sources. If the volume is set at a high level, the sudden blast of sound energy can permanently damage your hearing and/or ruin your speakers.

Notes:

- The volume level can be adjusted within the range of “0” (minimum) to “50” (maximum).
- When DVD is selected as the source with your TV turned on, the volume level indication appears on the TV.

Listening with headphones

Connect a pair of headphones to the ϕ (phones) jack on the front panel. This cancels the Surround mode currently selected, deactivates speakers, and activates the HEADPHONE mode.



The SPK. indicator goes off from the display.

- Disconnecting a pair of headphone from the ϕ (phones) jack cancels the HEADPHONE mode and activates speakers.

HEADPHONE mode

When using the headphones, the following signals are output regardless of your speaker setting:

- For 2-channel sources, the front left and right channel signals are output directly from the left and right headphones.
- For multichannel sources, the front left and right, center and rear channel signals are down-mixed and then output from the headphones without missing bass element. You can enjoy multichannel sound source using the headphones.

CAUTION:

Be sure to turn down the volume:

- Before connecting or putting on headphones, as high volume can damage both the headphones and your hearing.
- Before removing headphones, as high volume may output from the speakers.

Turning Off the Sounds Temporarily

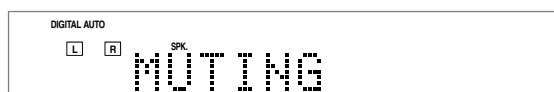
From the remote control ONLY



Press MUTING to mute the sound.

“MUTING” appears on the display and the volume turns off (the VOLUME indication goes off).

- When DVD is selected as the source with your TV turned on, “VOLUME –” appears on the TV.



To restore the sound

Press MUTING again.

- Pressing VOLUME + or – on the remote control (or turn MASTER VOLUME on the front panel) also restores the sound.

Turning Off the Power with the Sleep Timer

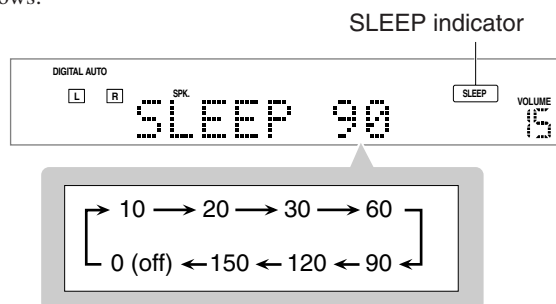
From the remote control ONLY



Press SLEEP repeatedly.

The SLEEP indicator lights up on the display.

- Each time you press the button, the shut-off time changes as follows:



When the shut-off time comes

The unit is turned off automatically.

To check or change the remaining time until the shut-off time

Press SLEEP once.

The remaining time (in minutes) until the shut-off time appears.

- To change the shut-off time, press SLEEP repeatedly.

To cancel the Sleep Timer

Press SLEEP repeatedly until “SLEEP 0” appears on the display. (The SLEEP indicator goes off.)

- Turning off the unit also cancels the Sleep Timer.

Note:

- If Sleep Timer and Auto Standby (see page 52) are used at a time, one with the early shut-off time will turn off the unit.

Changing the Display Brightness

From the remote control ONLY



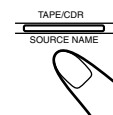
Press DIMMER to dim the display.

- Each time you press the button, the display and illumination lamp dim and brighten alternately.

Changing the Source Name

When you connect an CD recorder to the TAPE/CDR jacks on the rear panel, change the source name which will be shown on the display.

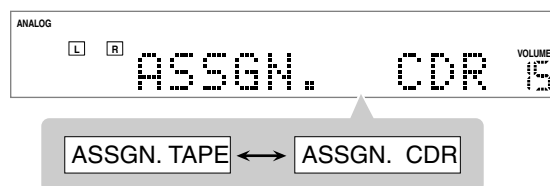
On the front panel ONLY



Ex. : When changing the source name from “TAPE ” to “CDR”

1 Press TAPE/CDR (SOURCE NAME) to select as the source.

2 Press and hold SOURCE NAME (TAPE/CDR) until “ASSGN. CDR” appears on the display.



To change the source name to “TAPE”

Press and hold SOURCE NAME (TAPE/CDR) until “ASSGN. TAPE” appears on the display in step 2.

Note:

- Without changing the source name, you can still use the connected components. However, there may be some inconveniences:
 - The unexpected source name will appear on the display when you press TAPE/CDR (SOURCE NAME) on the front panel.
 - The CDR or TAPE button on the remote control cannot work for selecting the source.
 - You cannot use the digital input (see page 10) for the CD recorder.

Basic Operations

Selecting the Analog or Digital Input Mode

When you have connected digital source components using both the analog connection and the digital connection methods (see pages 7 to 10), you can select the input mode.

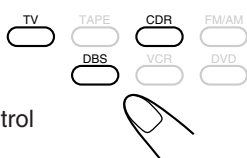
- Before selecting the digital input mode, register the digital input terminal setting correctly (see “Digital input (DIGITAL IN) terminals” on page 21).

1 Press one of the source selecting buttons (DBS, TV, or CDR) for which you want to change the input mode.

On the front panel



From the remote control



Note:

- You cannot change the input mode when selecting DVD as the source. Digital input is always used for the built-in DVD player.

2 Press INPUT ANALOG/DIGITAL (INPUT ATT.) on the front panel or ANALOG/DIGITAL INPUT on the remote control.



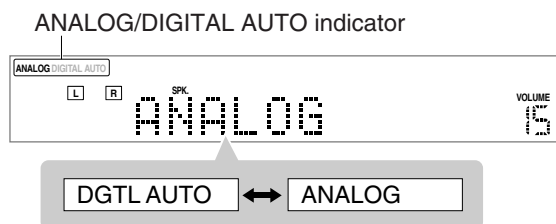
On the front panel



From the remote control

The current input mode appears on the display.

- Each time you press the button, the input mode alternates between the analog input (“ANALOG”*) and the digital input (“DGTL AUTO”).



* “ANALOG” is the initial setting except for the built-in DVD player.

DGTL AUTO : Select this for the digital input mode.
The DIGITAL AUTO indicator lights up.
The unit automatically detects the incoming signal format, then the sound signal indicator for the detected signal—**DIGITAL** or **dts** lights up; otherwise, no sound signal indicators light up.

ANALOG : Select this for the analog input mode.
The ANALOG indicator lights up.

Changing the Digital Input Mode Manually

If the following symptoms occur while Dolby Digital or DTS Digital Surround software is played back, you can change the digital input mode:

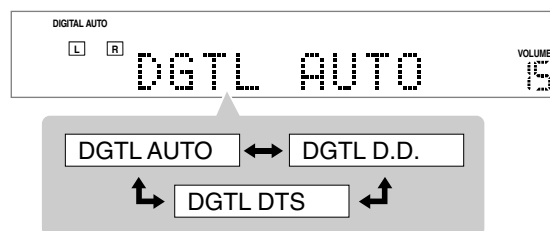
- Sound does not come out at the beginning of playback.
- Noise comes out while searching for or skipping chapters or tracks.

On the front panel



Press **CONTROL** ► (or ◀) to select “DGTL D.D.” or “DGTL DTS” while “DGTL AUTO” still remains on the display.

- Each time you press the button, the digital input mode changes as follows:



DGTL AUTO : Normally select this.

The DIGITAL AUTO indicator lights up.
The unit automatically detects the incoming signal format, then the sound signal indicator for the detected signal lights up.

DGTL D.D. : Select this for playing back software encoded with Dolby Digital.

The **DIGITAL** indicator lights up*.

DGTL DTS : Select this for playing back software encoded with DTS Digital Surround.

The **dts** indicator lights up*.

* These indicators flash when no signal or the signal without the proper format is played back.

When DVD is selected as the source, you can also change the digital input mode by pressing ANALOG/DIGITAL INPUT repeatedly on the remote control.



Notes:

- When “DGTL AUTO” cannot recognize the incoming signals, no sound signal indicators light up on the display.
- When you turn off the unit or select another source, “DGTL DTS” and “DGTL D.D.” are canceled.
The digital input mode is automatically reset to “DGTL AUTO.”

Attenuating the Input Signal

When the input level of the **analog source** is too high, the sounds will be distorted. If this happens, you need to attenuate the input signal level to prevent the sound distortion.

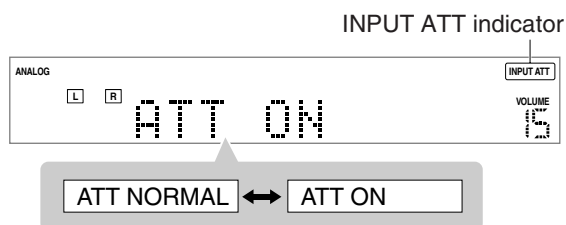
- You have to make this adjustment for each **analog source**.

On the front panel ONLY



Press and hold INPUT ATT. (INPUT ANALOG/DIGITAL) until the INPUT ATT indicator lights up on the display.

- Each time you press and hold the button, the Input Attenuator turns on ("ATT ON") or off ("ATT NORMAL"*)).



- * "ATT NORMAL" is the initial setting.

ATT NORMAL : Normally select this. The analog sound is not attenuated.

ATT ON : Select this when the analog sound is distorted.

Changing the Scanning Mode

This unit supports the progressive scanning system (480p*) as well as the conventional interlaced scanning system (480i*).

If your TV has component video jacks and supports the progressive video input, you can enjoy a high quality picture from the built-in DVD player.

- Refer also to the manuals supplied with your TV.
- You cannot change the scanning mode when "PAL" is selected as the color system of this unit. See pages 7 and 8.**
- You can select the progressive mode according to the original picture type (film or video source). See page 49.
- Do not change the scanning mode to "PROGRESSIVE" in the following cases:
 - When your TV does not support the progressive video input.
 - When you do not connect your TV to the unit using component video cord.

From the remote control ONLY



Press and hold PROGRESSIVE for more than 3 seconds when DVD is selected as the source.

The current scanning mode appears on the display for a while.

- Each time you press and hold the button, the scanning mode changes "INTERLACE"* and "PROGRESSIVE" alternately.
- * "INTERLACE" is the initial setting.

INTERLACE : Select this for conventional TV.

PROGRESSIVE : Select this if your TV with component jacks supports the progressive video input. The PROGRESSIVE indicator lights up.

Notes:

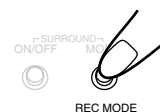
- Some progressive TVs and High-Definition TVs are not fully compatible with this system. When a DVD VIDEO is played back in the progressive scanning mode on those TVs, the unnatural picture may be in a result. In such a case, change the scanning mode to "INTERLACE." To check the compatibility of your TV, contact your dealer. All JVC progressive TVs and High-Definition TVs are fully compatible with this system respectively.
- When you select "PROGRESSIVE" as the scanning mode, the picture does not come out correctly through composite video and S-video jacks.
- * 480p and 480i indicate the number of scanning lines and scanning format of an image signal.
 - 480p indicates 480 scanning lines with progressive format.
 - 480i indicates 480 scanning lines with interlaced format.

Activating the Recording Mode

When you play back the multichannel sources, Recording mode enables you to record the sounds without missing surround elements by down-mixing the center and rear channel signals into the front channel signals.

- When the multichannel software is played back with Recording mode activated, the sounds are down-mixed and come out through the front speakers only.

On the front panel ONLY



Press and hold REC MODE (SURROUND MODE) until "RECMODE ON" appears on the display.

- Each time you press and hold the button, Recording mode is activated ("RECMODE ON") or deactivated ("RECMODE OFF"*) alternately.

- * "RECMODE OFF" is the initial setting.

RECMODE OFF : Normally select this. The down-mixing is canceled.

RECMODE ON : Select this for recording the down-mixed sounds.

When recording with VCR:

You can record the picture on your video tape without the volume level indication when Recording mode is activated.

- When you do not want to record the on-screen guide icons, see page 52.
- The choice menu and on-screen bar are always recorded when they appears on the TV.

CAUTION:

When the front speakers are small, the output sound may be distorted by Recording mode. In this case, decrease the volume until the sound distortion diminishes.

Notes:

- When you turn off the unit or select another source, Recording mode is canceled ("RECMODE OFF").
- Sound adjustments (see pages 23 and 24) and Surround modes (see pages 25 to 28) do not affect the recording.
- The following buttons do not work while Recording mode is activated ("RECMODE ON"):
 - SETTING and ADJUST on the front panel.
 - SURROUND ON/OFF and SURROUND MODE on the front panel.
 - Number buttons for adjusting sound on the remote control.

Basic DVD Player Operations

For details about DVD player operations, see pages 29 to 42.

- You can also play back MP3 and JPEG files. See pages 43 to 46.

- To change the color system of this unit, see page 7.

- When using remote control, press DVD to change the remote control operation mode to the DVD player operation.

1 Open the Disc Tray

Before turning on the unit, turn on your TV and select the correct video input (see the manual supplied with your TV).

- When you use a JVC's TV, you can turn on your TV by pressing $\odot$ /I STANDBY/ON TV on the remote control and select the video input by pressing TV/VIDEO. (If your TV is not a JVC's, see "Operating Other Manufacturers' Equipment" on page 61.)
- For changing the OSD messages—the information on the TV—into the desired language, see pages 47 and 49.

On the front panel ONLY



Press $\blacktriangle$.

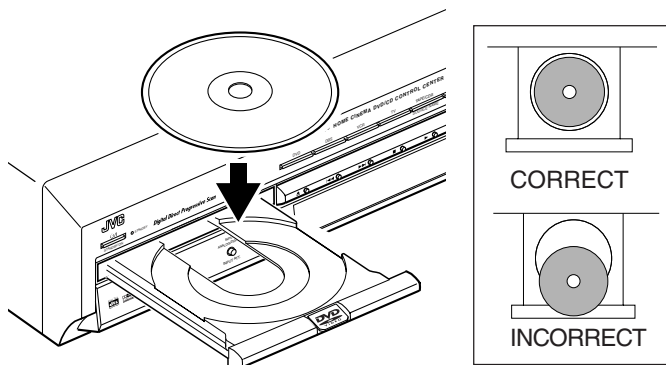
The unit is turned on and the disc tray opens.

The STANDBY lamp goes off and the illumination lamp lights up.

- When a disc is already loaded, pressing $\blacktriangleright$ turns on the unit and starts playing back the loaded disc.

2 Load a Disc

Place a disc correctly with its label side up.



3 Start Playback



On the front panel



From the remote control

Press $\blacktriangleright$.

The disc tray closes and the unit starts playing back the loaded disc.

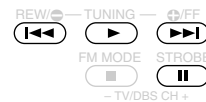
- You can also close the disc tray by pressing $\blacktriangle$ on the front panel.

By pressing the following buttons, you can pause, advance, or reverse playback, and locate the beginning of the title, chapter, or track.



On the front panel

From the remote control



To stop playback temporarily

Press $\square$.

- Pressing $\blacktriangleright$ starts playback again.

To move back the playback position by 10 seconds (for DVD VIDEO only)

Press $\blacktriangleright$ during DVD VIDEO playback.

The unit moves the playback position about 10 seconds before the current position, then resumes playback.

To advance or reverse playback quickly

Press and hold $\blacktriangleright$ or $\blacktriangleleft$.

While you are pressing and holding $\blacktriangleright$ (or $\blacktriangleleft$), the unit advances (or reverses: for DVD VIDEO and audio CD) playback 5 times as fast as the normal speed. When you press and hold $\blacktriangleright$ (or $\blacktriangleleft$) further, the playback speed changes up to 20 times as fast as the normal speed.

- Releasing the button resumes the normal playback.

To locate the beginning of the chapter or track

Press $\blacktriangleright$ or $\blacktriangleleft$.

Press $\blacktriangleright$ (or $\blacktriangleleft$) to locate the beginning of the next (current or previous) chapter or track.

To locate the chapter or track using the number buttons

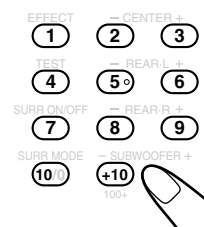
Press the number buttons (1–10, +10) to select the number of the desired chapter or track.

Ex.: To select 3, press 3.

To select 11, press +10, then 1.

To select 20, press +10, then 10.

From the remote control ONLY



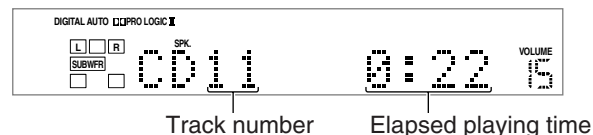
About indication on the display while playing back a disc

While you are playing back a disc, the playback information appears on the display as follows:

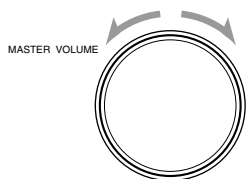
Ex.: When DVD VIDEO is loaded



Ex.: When audio CD is loaded



4 Adjust the Volume



On the front panel



From the remote control

For details, see “Basic Operations” on page 11.

5 Activate Realistic Sound Field

You can activate Surround mode for creating realistic sound fields.

- You can activate Surround mode automatically when the digital multichannel source (Dolby Digital or DTS Digital Surround software) or 2-channel matrix source (Dolby Surround software) is played back—Auto Surround (see page 22).

When you activate or deactivate Surround mode manually, do the following procedures:

On the front panel:
Press **SURROUND ON/OFF**.



From the remote control:
1) Press **SOUND**.



2) Press **SURR ON/OFF**.



- Each time you press SURROUND ON/OFF on the front panel or SURR ON/OFF on the remote control, Surround mode is activated and deactivated alternately.

6 Select Surround Mode

When the **PRO LOGIC II** or **DSP** indicator is lit, you can select various Surround modes (see page 27).



On the front panel



From the remote control

Press SURROUND MODE (REC MODE) on the front panel or SURR MODE on the remote control.

- When you enjoy digital multichannel source such as Dolby Digital or DTS Digital Surround software, you cannot change Surround mode. When you enjoy Dolby Digital or DTS Digital Surround 2-channel including 2-channel matrix source such as Dolby Surround software, you can select Surround mode from between PRO LOGIC II MOVIE and PRO LOGIC II MUSIC (see page 27).

7 Stop Playback



On the front panel



From the remote control

Press ■.

Playback stops.

The unit memorizes the point where you stop playback and the RESUME indicator lights up on the display (except when an audio CD is loaded).

While the RESUME indicator is lit on the display, you can start playback from the memorized point by pressing ►—Resume play.

About Resume play

This unit can memorize the point when you operate the following procedures:

- Pressing ■ during playback—Pressing ► starts Resume play
- Changing the source—Pressing DVD or ► starts Resume play
- Turning off the unit (including Sleep Timer)
—Pressing ► starts Resume play

Once you start Resume play, the RESUME indicator goes off (the unit clears the memorized point).

The unit also clears the memorized point when you operate the following procedures:

- Starting Resume play
- Pressing ■ (while the RESUME indicator is lit on the display)
- Selecting a track by pressing ►| or |◀ for video CD and super VCD when playback stops
- Selecting program or random playback
- Pressing TOP MENU
- Ejecting the loaded disc
- Turning on the unit by pressing **○/I** STANDBY/ON on the front panel or **○/I** STANDBY/ON AUDIO on the remote control.

You can cancel Resume play (see “OTHERS menu” on page 52).

To remove the loaded disc

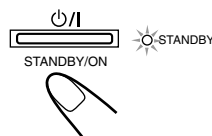
Press **▲**.

The disc tray opens.

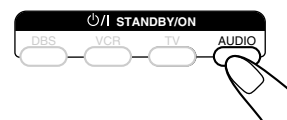
To close the disc tray

Press **▲** again.

8 Turn Off the Power (into Standby)



On the front panel



From the remote control

Press ○/I STANDBY/ON on the front panel or ○/I STANDBY/ON AUDIO on the remote control.

The unit is turned off and the STANDBY lamp lights up on the front panel.

- If you press the button while the disc tray is open, the disc tray closes automatically, then the unit is turned off.
- A small amount of power is consumed even in standby mode. To turn the power off completely, unplug the AC power cord.

Tuner Operations

Setting the AM Tuner Interval Spacing

Some countries space AM stations 9 kHz apart, and other countries use 10 kHz spacing.

- 9 kHz interval spacing is the initial setting.

On the front panel ONLY:

1 Turn off the unit.

- Be sure that the unit is plugged into a wall outlet.

2 Change the interval spacing.

To set the AM tuner to the 9 kHz spacing:

Hold down **CONTROL** ◀ and press **⏻** STANDBY/ON.
“9k STEP” appears on the display for a while.



To set the AM tuner to the 10 kHz spacing:

Hold down **CONTROL** ▶ and press **⏻** STANDBY/ON.
“10k STEP” appears on the display for a while.



The unit is turned on with the interval spacing changed.

Tuning into Stations Manually

On the front panel:

1 Press FM/AM to select the band.

The last received station of the selected band is tuned in.

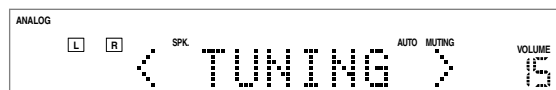
The **CONTROL** buttons now work for tuner operations.

- Each time you press the button, the band alternates between FM and AM.



Ex.: When selecting the FM band

2 Press **CONTROL** ▼ (or ▲) repeatedly until “< TUNING >” appears on the display.



3 While “< TUNING >” still remains on the display, press repeatedly or hold **CONTROL** ▶ (or ◀) until you find the frequency you want.



- Pressing (or holding) **CONTROL** ▶ increases the frequencies.
- Pressing (or holding) **CONTROL** ◀ decreases the frequencies.

From the remote control:

1 Press FM/AM.

2 Press repeatedly or hold **TUNING** ⊕ or ⊖ until you find the frequency you want.

- Pressing (or holding) **TUNING** ⊕ increases the frequencies.
- Pressing (or holding) **TUNING** ⊖ decreases the frequencies.

Notes:

- When you hold and release **CONTROL** ▶ (or **TUNING** ⊕ on the remote control) or **CONTROL** ◀ (or **TUNING** ⊖ on the remote control), the frequency keeps changing until a certain station is tuned in.
- When a station of sufficient signal strength is tuned in, the **TUNED** indicator lights up on the display.
- When an FM stereo program is received, the **STEREO** indicator also lights up.

Using Preset Tuning

Once a station is assigned to a channel number, the station can be quickly tuned. You can preset up to 30 FM and 15 AM stations.

To store the preset stations

Before you start, remember...

There is a time limit in doing the following steps.

If the setting is canceled before you finish, start from step 2 again.

On the front panel ONLY:

1 Tune into the station you want to preset (see “Tuning into Stations Manually”).

- If you want to store the FM reception mode for this station, select the FM reception mode you want. See “Selecting the FM Reception Mode” on page 18.



Ex.: When selecting the FM band

2 Press **MEMORY**.

The channel number position starts flashing on the display for about 5 seconds.



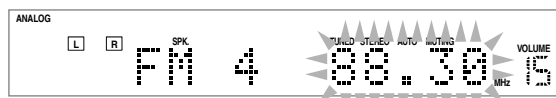
3 Press **CONTROL** ▶ (or ◀) to select a channel number while the channel number position is flashing.



4 Press MEMORY again while the selected channel number is flashing on the display.

The station is assigned to the selected channel number.

- The selected channel number stops flashing and then the frequency starts flashing.



5 Press CONTROL ► (or ◀) to select another frequency you want to store while the frequency is flashing on the display.

6 Repeat steps 2 to 5 until you store all the stations you want.

To erase a stored preset station

Storing a new station on a used channel number erases the previously stored one.

■ To tune in a preset station

On the front panel:

1 Press FM/AM to select the band.

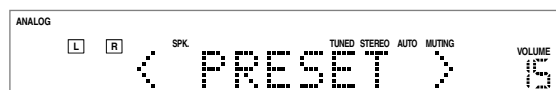
The last received station of the selected band is tuned in.

The CONTROL buttons now work for tuner operations.



Ex.: When selecting the FM band

2 Press CONTROL ▼ (or ▲) repeatedly until "< PRESET >" appears on the display.



3 While "< PRESET >" still remains on the display, press CONTROL ► (or ◀) to select a preset channel number you want.



- Pressing (or holding) CONTROL ► increases the preset channel numbers.
- Pressing (or holding) CONTROL ◀ decreases the preset channel numbers.

From the remote control:

- Press FM/AM.
The last received station of the selected band is tuned in.
The number buttons now work for tuner operations.
- Press the number buttons to select a preset channel number.
 - For channel number 5, press 5.
 - For channel number 15, press +10 then 5.
 - For channel number 30, press +10, +10, then 10.

Selecting the FM Reception Mode

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive or noisy, you can change the FM reception mode while receiving an FM broadcast.

- You can store the FM reception mode for each preset station.

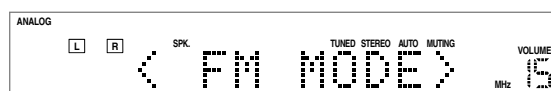
Before you start, remember...

There is a time limit in doing the following steps.

If the setting is canceled before you finish, start from step 1 again.

On the front panel:

1 While listening to an FM station, press CONTROL ▼ (or ▲) repeatedly until "< FM MODE >" appears on the display.



2 While "< FM MODE >" still remains on the display, press CONTROL ► (or ◀) to select "MONO."

- Each time you press the button, the FM reception mode alternates between "AUTO MUTING"* and "MONO."



AUTO MUTING ↔ MONO

* "AUTO MUTING" is the initial setting. If you have already changed the setting, "MONO" will be shown.

AUTO MUTING: Normally select this.

When a program is broadcasted in stereo, you will hear stereo sound; when in monaural, you will hear monaural sounds. This mode is also useful to suppress static noise between stations. The AUTO MUTING indicator lights up on the display.

MONO

: Select this to improve the reception (but stereo effect will be lost). In this mode, you will hear noise while tuning into the stations. The AUTO MUTING indicator goes off from the display. (The STEREO indicator also goes off.)

To restore the stereo effect

Repeat step 1, then select "AUTO MUTING" in step 2.

From the remote control:

- Press FM/AM to select an FM station.
Number buttons now work for tuner operations.
- Press FM MODE.
 - Each time you press the button, the FM reception mode alternates between "AUTO MUTING" and "MONO."

Basic Settings

Some of the following settings are required after connecting and positioning your speakers, while others will make operations easier. You can set the items by using the SETTING button and CONTROL ▲/▼/◀/▶ buttons on the front panel.

Setting items:

- Speaker information for front, center, rear speakers, and subwoofer*
- Crossover frequency*
- Digital input (DIGITAL IN) terminals
- Speaker distance for front, center, and rear speakers*
- Low frequency effect attenuator*
- Auto surround
- Dynamic range compression*
- Video output mode

Note:

* You can also set these items using the Choice menu (see pages 47 to 52).

Operation Buttons

To do the basic settings for this unit, use the buttons on the front panel.

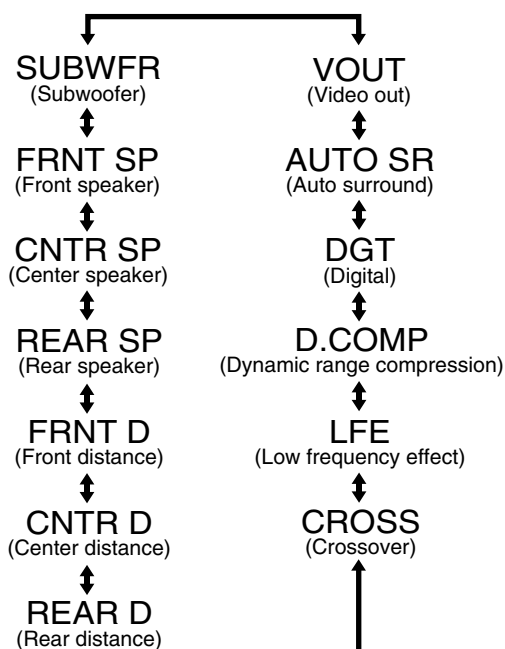


Button	To do
SETTING	Display the setting indications on the display*.
CONTROL ▲/▼	Select an item on the display. Each time you press the button, the indication changes as illustrated below.
CONTROL ▶/◀	Adjust the selected item.

- When no operation is done for about 5 seconds, the indications on the display will disappear.

* Pressing SETTING repeatedly also changes the indication.

Configuration of the indications on the display



Operating Procedure

Ex. : When setting the digital input (DIGITAL IN) terminals.

Before you start, remember...

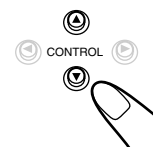
There is a time limit in doing the following steps. If the setting is canceled before you finish, start from step 1 again.

1 Press SETTING.

The CONTROL buttons now work for basic settings. The setting item selected previously appears on the display.



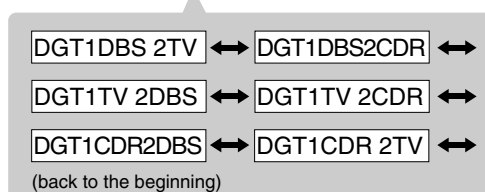
2 Press CONTROL ▼ (or ▲) repeatedly until “DGT (Digital)” (with the current setting)* appears on the display.



* “1DBS 2TV” is the initial setting. If you have already changed the setting, another combination will be shown.

3 Press CONTROL ▶ (or ◀) to select the appropriate digital terminal setting.

- Each time you press the button, the indication changes as follows:



■ Speaker information—"SUBWFR (subwoofer)," "FRNT SP (front speaker)," "CNTR SP (center speaker)," and "REAR SP (rear speaker)"

To obtain the best possible effect from the Surround modes (see pages 25 to 28), register the following information after all connections are completed.

● For subwoofer:



Select one of the following settings:

YES : Select this when a subwoofer is connected.

NO : Select this when no subwoofer is used.

Notes:

- "NO" is the initial setting.
- If you have selected "NO" for the subwoofer, you can only select "LARGE" for the front speakers.

● For front speakers, center speaker, and rear speakers:



Select one of the following settings for each speaker:

LRG (large) : Select this when the speaker size is relatively large.

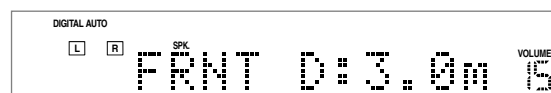
SML (small) : Select this when the speaker size is relatively small.

NO : Select this when you have not connected a speaker. (Not selectable for the front speakers)

Notes:

- "LRG (large)" is the initial setting for the front speakers, "SML (small)" for the center and rear speakers.
- Keep the following comment in mind as reference when adjusting the settings.
 - If the size of the cone speaker unit built in your speaker is greater than 12 cm, select "LRG (large)," and if it is smaller than 12 cm, select "SML (small)."
- If you have selected "SML (small)" for the front speakers, you cannot select "LRG (large)" for the center and rear speakers.

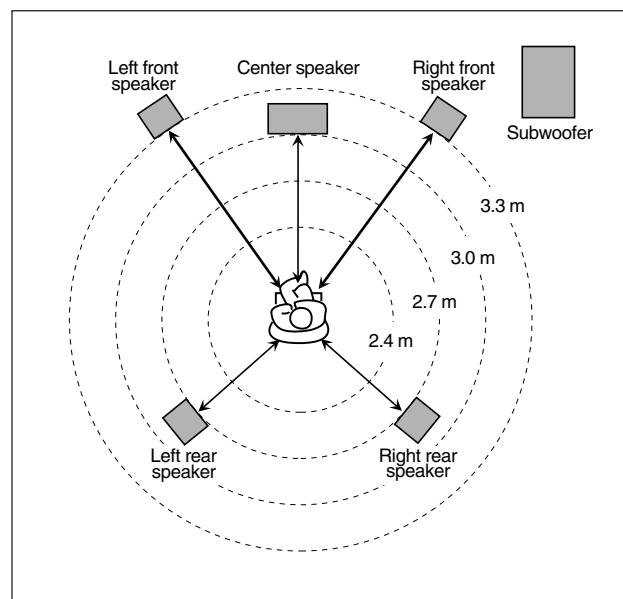
■ Speaker distance—"FRNT D (front distance)," "CNTR D (center distance)," and "REAR D (rear distance)"



The distance from your listening point to the speakers is another important element to obtain the best possible surround sound of the Surround modes.

You need to set the distance from your listening point to the speakers. By referring to the speaker distance setting, this unit automatically sets the delay time of the sound through each speaker so that sounds through all the speakers can reach you at the same time.

Set the distance from the listening point within the range of 0.3 m to 9.0 m, in 0.3 m interval.



Ex. : In this case,
 set "FRNT D" to "3.3m,"
 set "CNTR D" to "3.0m" and
 set "REAR D" to "2.7m."

Notes:

- "3.0m" is the initial setting. If you have already changed the setting, another setting will be shown.
- If you have selected "NO" for the center and rear speakers setting, you cannot set the speaker distance for the center and rear speakers.

Basic Settings

■ Crossover frequency—"CROSS (crossover)"



Small speakers cannot reproduce the bass sounds efficiently. If you use a small speaker in any position, this unit automatically reallocates the bass sound elements assigned to the small speaker to the large speakers.

To use this function properly, set the crossover frequency level according to the size of the small speaker connected.

- If you have selected "LRG (large)" for all speakers, this function will not take effect.

Select one of the following settings:

80Hz	: Select this frequency when the cone speaker unit built in the speaker is about 12 cm.
100Hz	: Select this frequency when the cone speaker unit built in the speaker is about 10 cm.
120Hz	: Select this frequency when the cone speaker unit built in the speaker is about 8 cm.
150Hz	: Select this frequency when the cone speaker unit built in the speaker is about 6 cm.
200Hz	: Select this frequency when the cone speaker unit built in the speaker is less than 5 cm.

Notes:

- "100Hz" is the initial setting. If you have already changed the setting, another frequency will be shown.
- Crossover frequency is not valid for the HEADPHONE mode.

■ Low frequency effect attenuator—"LFE"



If the bass sound is distorted while playing back software encoded with **Dolby Digital** or **DTS Digital Surround**, set the LFE level to eliminate distortion.

- This function takes effect only when the LFE signals come in.

Select one of the following settings:

0dB	: Normally select this.
-10dB	: Select this when the bass sound is distorted.

Note:

- "0dB" is the initial setting. If you have already changed the setting, "-10dB" will be shown.

■ Dynamic range compression—"D.COMP"



You can compress the dynamic range (difference between maximum sound and minimum sound) of the reproduced sound. This is useful when enjoying surround sound at night.

- This function takes effect only when playing back a source encoded with **Dolby Digital**.

Select one of the following settings:

OFF	: Select this when you want to enjoy surround with its full dynamic range. (No effect applied.)
MID	: Select this when you want to reduce the dynamic range a little.
MAX	: Select this when you want to apply the compression effect fully. (Useful at night.)

Note:

- "MID" is the initial setting. If you have already changed the setting, another setting will be shown.

■ Digital input (DIGITAL IN) terminals—"DGT"



When you use the digital input terminals, register what components are connected to which terminals (DIGITAL IN 1/ DIGITAL IN 2). So, the correct source name will appear when you select the digital source.

Set the appropriate digital terminal setting.

- Each time you press CONTROL ► or ◀, the display changes as follows:

1 DBS 2 TV ⇄ 1 DBS 2 CDR ⇄ 1 TV 2 DBS ⇄
1 TV 2 CDR ⇄ 1 CDR 2 DBS ⇄ 1 CDR 2 TV ⇄
(back to the beginning)

Notes:

- "1DBS 2TV" is the initial setting. If you have already changed the setting, another combination will be shown.
- If you want to connect a CD recorder to the digital input terminal, change the source name to "CDR" from "TAPE." For details, see "Changing the Source Name" on page 12.

■ Auto surround—"AUTO SR"



Surround mode is automatically activated when the digital multichannel source such as Dolby Digital or DTS Digital Surround software or 2-channel matrix source such as Dolby Surround is played back.

You can enjoy Surround mode simply by selecting the source (with digital input selected for that source)—Auto Surround.

Select one of the following settings:

- ON** : The AUTO SURROUND indicator always lights up on the display.
- If multichannel signals come in, an appropriate Surround mode will be turned on.
 - If Dolby Digital 2-channel or DTS 2-channel including surround signals come in, "PL II MOVIE" will be selected.
 - If Dolby Digital 2-channel or DTS 2-channel signals without surround signals come in, "STEREO" will be selected.
 - If the other signals come in, nothing will change.
- OFF** : Select this to deactivate Auto Surround.

Notes:

- "ON" is the initial setting. If you have already changed the setting, "OFF" will be shown.
- This function does not take effect in the following cases:
 - While playing an analog source.
 - While selecting "DGTL D.D." or "DGTL DTS" as the fixed digital input mode (see page 13).
- If you press SURROUND ON/OFF (SURR ON/OFF on the remote control) with Auto Surround activated, Auto Surround will be canceled temporarily for the currently selected source. Auto Surround setting will be restored in the following cases:
 - When you turn off and on the unit,
 - When you change the source,
 - When you change the analog/digital input, and
 - When you reset "AUTO SR" to "ON" again.

■ Video output mode—"VOUT"



After connecting your TV to the unit, register the type of the connected output terminal—VIDEO, S-VIDEO, or DVD COMPONENT VIDEO OUT.

Without setting this, AV COMPU LINK does not work appropriately when DVD is selected as the source (see "AV COMPU LINK Remote Control System" on pages 57 and 58).

Set the output terminal appropriately.

- VIDEO** : Select this when you connect your TV to VIDEO jack by using a composite video cord.
- S** : Select this when you connect your TV to S-VIDEO jack by using an S-video cord.
- COMPNT** : Select this when you connect your TV to DVD COMPONENT VIDEO OUT jacks by using component video cord.

Note:

- "VIDEO" is the initial setting. If you have already changed the setting, another setting will be shown.

Sound Adjustments

The following settings are required after connecting and positioning your speakers.

You can adjust the items by using the ADJUST button and CONTROL ▲/▼/◀/▶ buttons on the front panel.

Adjustment items:

- Front speaker output balance*
- DAP effect level
- Tone*
- Speaker output levels*

Notes:

- The setting contents of adjustment items are memorized for each source.
- * You can also set these items using the Choice menu (see pages 47 to 52).

Operation Buttons

To do the basic settings for this unit, use the buttons on the front panel.

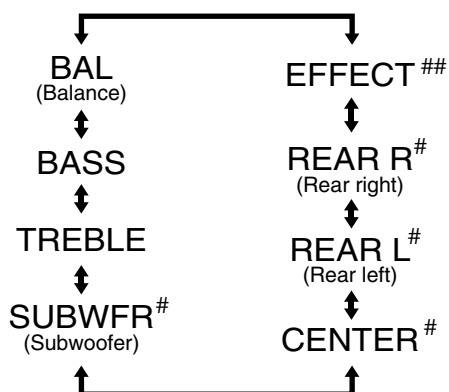


On the front panel ONLY*

Button	To do
ADJUST	Display the adjustment indications on the display**.
CONTROL ▲/▼	Select an item on the display. Each time you press the button, the indication changes as illustrated below.
CONTROL ▶/◀	Adjust the selected item.

- When no operation is done for about 5 seconds, the indications on the display will disappear.
- * You can also make sound adjustment except for front speakers output balance from the remote control.
- ** Pressing ADJUST repeatedly also changes the indication.

Configuration of the indications on the display



These indications appear only when the corresponding speakers information for each speaker is set to other than "NO."

"EFFECT" appears only when one of DAP modes (see pages 25 to 28) is activated.

Operating Procedure

Ex. : When setting the front speaker output balance.

Before you start, remember...

There is a time limit in doing the following steps. If the setting is canceled before you finish, start from step 1 again.

1 Press ADJUST.

The CONTROL buttons now work for sound adjustments. The setting item selected previously appears on the display.



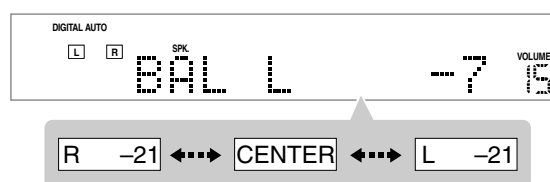
2 Press CONTROL ▼ (or ▲) repeatedly until "BAL (Balance)" (with the current setting)* appears on the display.



* "CENTER" is the initial setting. If you have already changed the setting, another setting will be shown.

3 Press CONTROL ▶ (or ◀) to adjust the front speaker balance.

- Each time you press the button, the indication changes as follows:



■ Front speaker output balance —“BAL (balance)”



If the sounds you hear from the front right and left speakers are unequal, you can adjust the speaker output balance.

Adjust the output balance appropriately from the listening point within the range of R (Right) –21 to CENTER (0) or CENTER (0) to L (Left) –21.

Note:

- “CENTER” is the initial setting. If you have already changed the setting, another setting will be shown.

■ Tone—“BASS” and “TREBLE”



You can adjust the bass and treble sounds as you like.

Adjust the tone within the range of –10 to +10 in 2 steps intervals.

Note:

- “0” is the initial setting. If you have already changed the setting, another setting will be shown.

Adjusting sound from the remote control

1 Press SOUND.

Number buttons now work for sound adjustments.

2 Adjust the level as follows:

- To adjust subwoofer, press SUBWOOFER + or –.
- To adjust center speaker, press CENTER + or –.
- To adjust left rear speaker, press REAR•L + or –.
- To adjust right rear speaker, press REAR•R + or –.
- To adjust the effect level (for DAP mode), press EFFECT.

■ Speaker output levels—“SUBWFR (subwoofer),” “CENTER,” “REAR L (left),” and “REAR R (right)”



You can adjust the speaker output levels if you have set the speaker information appropriately.

- You can adjust the output level for center and/or rear speakers only when one of proper Surround modes is activated (see page 27).

Adjust the speaker output level within the range of –10 to +10 in 1 step interval.

Note:

- “0” is the initial setting. If you have already changed the setting, another setting will be shown.

■ DAP effect level—“EFFECT”



While one of DAP modes is activated (the DSP indicator lights up on the display), you can adjust the effect level. For details about DAP modes, see pages 25 to 28.

Adjust the effect level within the range of 1 to 5.

Note:

- “3” is the initial setting. If you have already changed the setting, another setting will be shown.

About auto memory

This unit memorizes the settings for each source:

- when you turn off the power (see page 11),
- when you change the source (see page 11),
- when you change the source name (see page 12), and
- when you change the analog/digital input mode (see page 13).

When you change the source, the memorized settings for the newly selected source are automatically recalled.

The following can be stored for each source:

- Analog/digital input mode (see page 13)
- Input attenuator mode (see page 14)
- Front speaker output balance (see above or page 50)
- Speaker output level (see above or page 51)
- Tone adjustment (see above or page 50)
- DAP effect level (see above)
- Surround mode selection (see page 27)

Note:

- If the source is FM or AM, you can assign a different setting for each band.

Creating Realistic Sound Fields

You can use the following Surround modes to reproduce a realistic sound field:

- **Dolby Surround**
 - Dolby Pro Logic II
 - Dolby Digital
- **DTS Digital Surround**
- **DAP (Digital Acoustic Processor) modes**
- **All Channel Stereo**

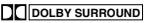
■ Dolby Surround

Dolby Pro Logic II*

Dolby Pro Logic II has newly developed multichannel playback format to decode into 5.1-channel from all 2-channel sources—stereo source and Dolby Digital encoded source.

Matrix-based encoding/decoding method for Dolby Pro Logic II makes no limitation for the cutoff frequency of the rear treble and enables stereo rear sound compared to conventional Dolby Pro Logic.

Dolby Pro Logic II enables to reproduce spacious sound from original sound without adding any new sounds and tonal colorations. Dolby Pro Logic II has two modes—**Movie mode** and **Music mode**:

Pro Logic II Movie (PL II MOVIE)—suitable for reproduction of Dolby Surround encoded sources bearing the mark  and stereo television sources. You can enjoy sound field very close to the one created with discrete 5.1-channel sounds.

Pro Logic II Music (PL II MUSIC)—suitable for reproduction of any 2-channel stereo music sources. You can enjoy wide and deep sound by using this mode.

- When Dolby Pro Logic II is activated, the  PRO LOGIC II indicator lights up on the display.

Dolby Digital*

Used to reproduce multichannel sound tracks of the software encoded with Dolby Digital ().

- To enjoy the software encoded with Dolby Digital, connect the source component using the digital terminal on the rear of this unit. (See page 10.)

Dolby Digital 5.1-channel encoding method (so-called discrete multichannel digital audio format) records and digitally compresses the left front channel, right front channel, center channel, left rear channel, right rear channel, and LFE channel signals. Since each channel is completely independent from the other channel signals to avoid interference, you can obtain much better sound quality with much stereo and surround effects.

Note:

- *Dolby Digital or DTS software can be roughly grouped into two categories—multichannel (up to 5.1-channel) and 2-channel software. To enjoy surround sounds while playing Dolby Digital 2-channel or DTS software, you can use Dolby Pro Logic II.*

■ DTS Digital Surround**

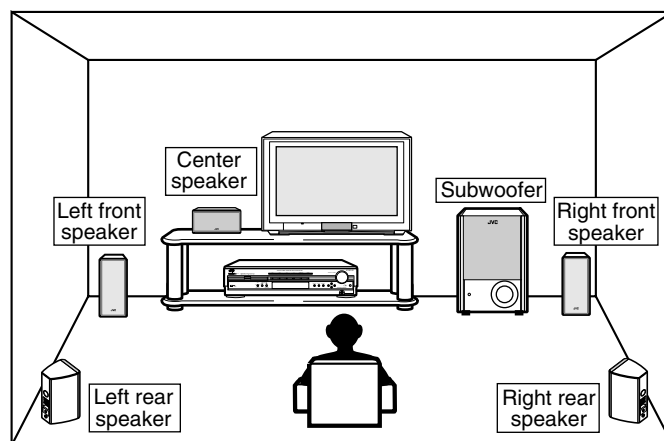
Used to reproduce multichannel sound tracks of the software encoded with DTS Digital Surround ().

- To enjoy the software encoded with DTS Digital Surround, connect the source component using the digital terminal on the rear of this unit. (See page 10.)

DTS Digital Surround is another discrete multichannel digital audio format available on CD, LD, and DVD software.

Compared to Dolby Digital, audio compression ratio is relatively low. This fact allows DTS Digital Surround format to add breadth and depth to the reproduced sounds. As a result, DTS Digital Surround features natural, solid and clear sound.

Typical Multichannel (5.1-channel) reproduction



■ DAP (Digital Acoustic Processor) modes

DAP modes have been designed to create important acoustic surround elements.

The sound heard in a live club, dance club, hall or pavilion consists of direct sound and indirect sound—early reflections and reflections from behind. Direct sounds reach the listener directly without any reflection. On the other hand, indirect sounds are delayed by the distances of the ceiling and walls (see the diagram on the next page). These indirect sounds are important elements of the acoustic surround effects. The DAP mode can reproduce a realistic sound field by adding these indirect sounds.

DAP modes can be used when the front and rear speakers are connected to this unit (without respect to the center speaker connection: no sound comes out of the center speaker even if it is connected).

* Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. "Dolby," "Pro Logic," and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

** Manufactured under license from Digital Theater Systems, Inc. US PAT. No. 5,451,942 and other world-wide patents issued and pending. "DTS" and "DTS Digital Surround" are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc. Copyright 1996 Digital Theater Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.

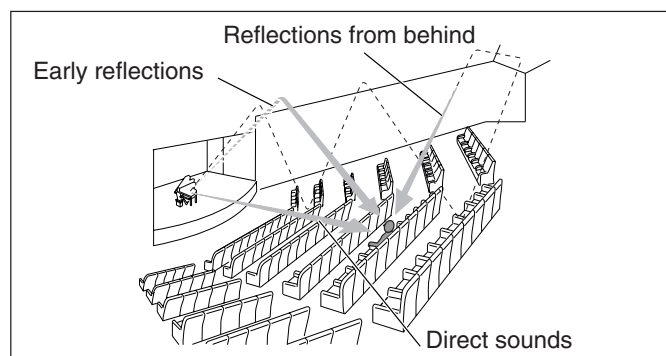
The following DAP modes are provided for this unit:

LIVE CLUB	: Gives the feeling of a live music club with a low ceiling.
DANCE CLUB	: Gives a throbbing bass beat.
HALL	: Gives clear vocal and the feeling of a concert hall.
PAVILION	: Gives the spacious feeling of a pavilion with a high ceiling.

These DAP modes can be used to add the acoustic surround effects while reproducing 2-channel stereo software, either analog or Linear PCM digital signal, and can give you a real “being there” feeling.

- When one of the DAP modes is selected, the DSP indicator lights up on the display.

Creating sound field



■ All Channel Stereo

This mode can reproduce a larger stereo sound field using all the connected (and activated) speakers.

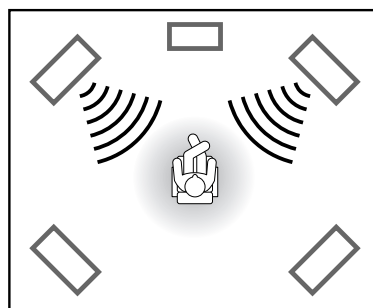
All Channel Stereo can be used when the front and rear speakers are connected to this receiver without respect to the center speaker connection.

If the center speaker is connected and activated, the same phases of the front left and right signals are mixed and output through the center speaker.

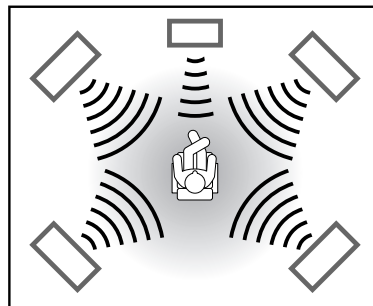
All Channel Stereo can be used while reproducing 2-channel stereo software, either analog or Linear PCM digital signal.

- When All Channel Stereo is selected, the DSP indicator lights up on the display.

All Channel Stereo reproduction



Sound reproduced from normal stereo



Sound reproduced from All Channel Stereo

Available Surround modes for each input signal

○: Possible ×: Impossible

Modes Signals	STEREO	DOLBY DIGITAL	DTS SURROUND	PL II MOVIE	PL II MUSIC	LIVE CLUB	DANCE CLUB	HALL	PAVILION	ALL CH ST.
Dolby Digital (Multichannel)	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
Dolby Digital (2-channel)	○	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	×
Dolby Surround (matrix 2-ch)	○	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	×
DTS Digital Surround (Multichannel)	○	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
DTS Digital Surround (2-channel)	○	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	×
Linear PCM	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Analog	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

Creating Realistic Sound Fields

Activating Surround Mode

When Auto Surround is set to “OFF” or 2-channel source other than Dolby Surround software is played back, activate Surround mode manually.

Make sure that you have set the speakers information correctly (see page 20 or 51).

- If only front speakers are connected, you cannot activate any Surround mode.

On the front panel:

Press SURROUND ON/OFF.

The SURROUND indicator lights up on the display (when Auto Surround is set to “OFF”).

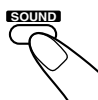
- Each time you press the button, Surround mode is activated or deactivated alternately.



From the remote control:

1 Press SOUND.

Number buttons now work for sound adjustments.



2 Press SURR ON/OFF.

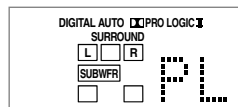
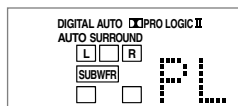
The SURROUND indicator lights up on the display (when Auto Surround is set to “OFF”).

- Each time you press the button, Surround mode is activated or deactivated alternately.



About SURROUND indicators

- When Auto Surround is set to “ON,” the AUTO SURROUND indicator always lights up on the display.
- When you activate Surround mode manually with Auto Surround set to “OFF,” the SURROUND indicator lights up on the display.



Selecting Surround Modes

When 2-channel source is played back with Surround mode activated, you can select another Surround mode.

Available Surround modes will vary depending on the number of the connected speakers and the playback sound.

Make sure that you have set the speaker information correctly (see page 20 or 51).

- If rear speakers are not connected, you cannot use DAP modes and the All Channel Stereo.

On the front panel:

Press SURROUND MODE.

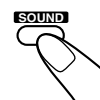
- Each time you press the button, Surround mode is changed as illustrated below:



From the remote control:

1 Press SOUND.

Number buttons now work for sound adjustments.

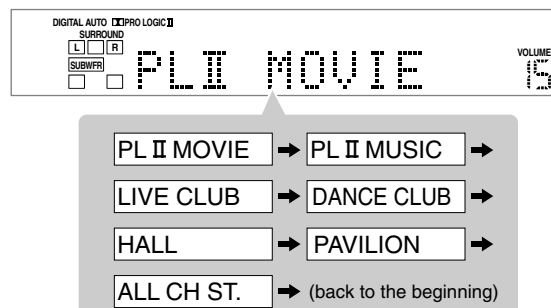


2 Press SURR MODE.

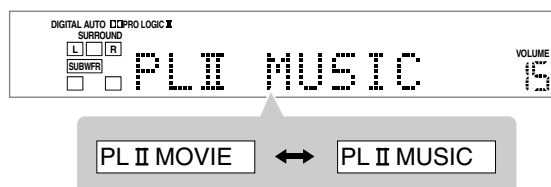
- Each time you press the button, Surround mode is changed as illustrated below:



When 5 or 4 (except center speaker) speakers are connected:



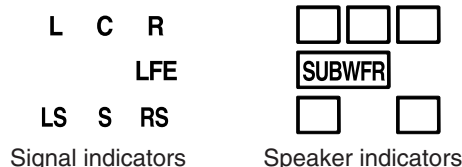
When 3 (except rear speakers) speakers are connected or Dolby Digital including matrix source is played back:



Signal and speaker indicators on the display

The following signal indicators light up —:

- L, R : • When digital input is selected: Light up when the signals corresponding to each channel come in.
• When analog input is selected: Always light up.
- C, LS, RS : Light up when the signals corresponding to each channel come in.
- S : Lights up when the monaural rear channel signal or Dolby Surround encoded signal comes in.
- LFE : Lights up when the LFE channel signal comes in.



The speaker indicators light up as follows:

- The subwoofer speaker indicator (SUBWFR) lights up when “SUBWFR” is set to “YES” (see page 20) or “USE” (see page 51).
- The other speaker indicators light up only when the corresponding speaker is activated, and also when required for the current playback.

Adjusting Surround Mode Using Remote Control

When playing back the source with Surround mode, you can adjust the speaker output levels for Surround modes.

Once you have adjusted the Surround modes, the adjustment is memorized for each source.

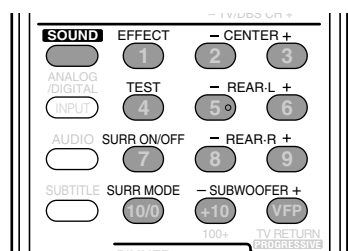
- You can also adjust Surround modes using the Choice menu (see pages 47 to 52) or buttons on the front panel (see page 24).
- When using test tone, you can adjust the speaker output levels without playback sounds.

1 Select and play back software you like.

2 Activate and select Surround mode.

- When 2-channel source is played back, you can select Surround modes.

3 Adjust the sound.



1) Press SOUND.

Number buttons now work for the sound adjustment.

2) Adjust the speaker output levels as follows:

- To adjust center speaker, press CENTER +/-.*
- To adjust left rear speaker, press REAR•L +/-.
- To adjust right rear speaker, press REAR•R +/-.
- To adjust subwoofer, press SUBWOOFER +/-.
- To adjust the effect level, press EFFECT.**

The name for the item currently adjusted appears on the display. For details, see the illustrations of "Speaker output levels" on page 24.

Notes:

- You can adjust the speaker output levels for the activated speakers ONLY (the speaker indicators are lit on the display).
- You cannot adjust the output levels of center speaker when one of DAP modes is activated.
- ** You can adjust the effect level only when one of DAP modes is activated.
- Before operating the DVD player using remote control, press DVD to change the remote control operation mode to DVD.

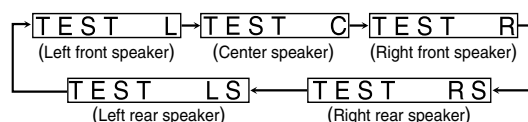
For using test tone

1) Press SOUND.

2) Press TEST.

The playback sound stops during playback.

"TEST L" starts flashing on the display and a test tone comes out of the speakers in the following order:



3) Adjust the speaker output level as follows:

To adjust center speaker, press CENTER +/-.

To adjust left rear speaker, press REAR•L +/-.

To adjust right rear speaker, press REAR•R +/-.

Notes:

- You cannot adjust the speaker output levels if you have set the speaker information to "NO."
- No test tone comes out of the speaker when its speaker information is set to "NO."
- When you press EFFECT or SUBWOOFER +/-, the test tone stops.

4) Press TEST to stop the test tone.

The test tone stops.

- When no operation is done, the test tone stops automatically in about 1 minute.

Relation between Surround modes and adjustable items

○: Possible ×: Impossible

Mode \ Item	TEST	CENTER	REAR•L	REAR•R	SUBWOOFER	EFFECT
Dolby Digital	○	○	○	○	○	×
DTS Digital Surround	○	○	○	○	○	×
Dolby Pro Logic II	○	○	○	○	○	×
DAP	○	×	○	○	○	○
All Channel Stereo	○	○	○	○	○	×

Note:

- You cannot adjust the speakers which are not used by the selected Surround mode.

DVD Player Operations

Disc Information

■ Playable Disc Types

This unit has been designed to play back the following discs:

DVD VIDEO, Video CD (VCD), Super Video CD (SVCD), audio CD, CD-R, and CD-RW.

- This unit can also play back MP3 and JPEG files recorded on CD-R and CD-RW. For details about MP3, see “MP3 Disc Playback” on pages 43 and 44 and about JPEG, see “JPEG Disc Playback” on pages 45 and 46.
- This instruction refers to Video CD as VCD, Super Video CD as SVCD, and audio CD as CD.

Discs you can play:

Disc Type	DVD VIDEO	VCD	SVCD	CD	CD-R	CD-RW
Mark (Logo)		 Video CD	 VIDEO CD			

• The following discs cannot be played back:

DVD AUDIO, DVD-ROM, DVD-RAM, DVD-RW, CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD, etc.

Playing back these discs will generate noise and damage the speakers.

- On some DVD VIDEO, VCD, or SVCD, their actual operations may be different from what is explained in this manual. This is due to the disc programming and disc structure, but not a malfunction of this unit.
- You can play back DVD-R recorded with the DVD VIDEO format, but some may not be played back because of the disc characteristics or recording conditions.

Note on Region Code

DVD players and DVD VIDEO have their own Region Code numbers. This unit can play back DVD VIDEO recorded with the color system of NTSC/PAL whose Region Code numbers include “3.”



If a DVD VIDEO with the wrong Region Code numbers is loaded, “REGION CODE ERROR!” appears on the TV and playback cannot start.

IMPORTANT : Before playing a disc, make sure of the following...

- Check the connection with the TV.
- Turn on the TV and select the correct input mode on the TV to view the pictures or on-screen indications on the TV screen.
- For disc playback, you can change the initial setting to your preference. (See pages 47 to 55.)

If “⊗” appears on the TV screen when you press a button, the disc cannot accept an operation you have tried to do, or data required for that operation is not recorded on the disc.

NOTICE : In some cases, without showing “⊗”, operations will not be accepted.

Notes on CD-R and CD-RW

- User-edited CD-R (Recordable) and CD-RW (ReWritable) can be played back only if they are already “**finalized**.”
- The unit can play back CD-R or CD-RW recorded on a personal computer if they have been recorded in the **audio CD format**.

The unit can also play back CD-R or CD-RW if MP3 files or JPEG files are recorded on them.

However, they may not be played back because of their disc characteristics, recording conditions, or damage or stain on them. Especially, the configuration and characteristics of an MP3 disc or a JPEG disc is determined by the writing (encoding) software and hardware used for recording. Therefore, due to the software and hardware used, the following symptoms may occur:

- Some discs may not be played back.
- Some tracks on an MP3 disc are skipped and may not be played back normally.
- Some files on a JPEG disc may be played back distortedly.
- Before playing back CD-R or CD-RW, read their instructions or cautions carefully.
- CD-RW may require a longer readout time. It is caused by the fact that the reflectance of CD-RW is lower than for regular audio CD.

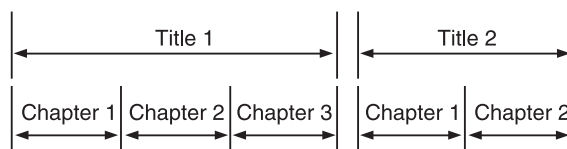
To change the color system of this unit, see page 7.

■ Disc structure

DVD VIDEO consists of “**titles**,” and each title may be divided into some “**chapters**” (see Example 1).

For example, if DVD VIDEO contains some movies, each movie may have its own **title** number and it may be further divided into some **chapters**. In DVD VIDEO Karaoke, each song may have its own **title** number, but it may not be further divided into **chapters**.

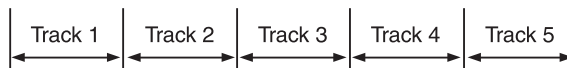
Example 1: DVD VIDEO



VCD, SVCD, and CD consist of “**tracks**” (see Example 2).

In general, each track has its own **track** number. (On some discs, each track may also be divided by Indexes. This unit is not compatible with Index function.)

Example 2 : VCD/SVCD/CD



■ Playback Control function (PBC)

The Playback Control function allows you to enjoy menu-driven operation.

Menu-driven playback

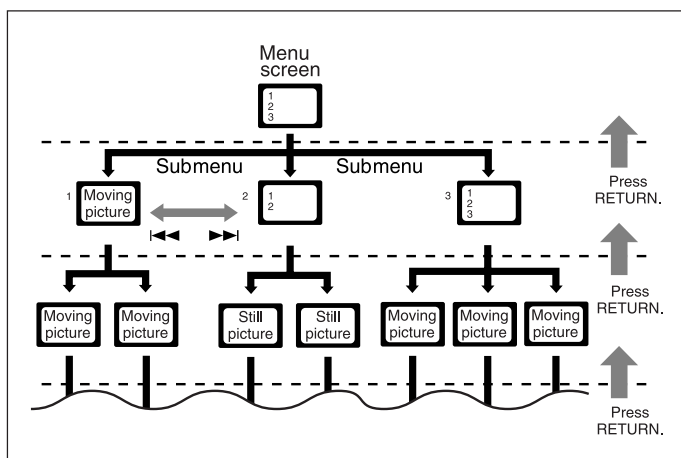
A selection menu is displayed when you start playing VCD and SVCD with the Playback Control feature. The selection menu shows a list of numbers for selection. Some discs may show moving pictures or a divided screen.

You can interact with the screen using a menu display to select and play an entry.

See the example illustration on the right about basic feature of menu-driven playback (for details about the operation through the menu, see also page 33).

Note:

- While operating VCD or SVCD using the menu, some of the functions such as repeat play may not work.



DVD Player Operations

This section explains advanced operations of the built-in DVD player using the remote control. For MP3 playback, see pages 43 and 44, and for JPEG playback, see pages 45 and 46.

Before using the remote control, press DVD to change the remote control operation mode.

- See also "Basic DVD Player Operations" on pages 15 and 16.
- show which types of disc are available for the operation.
- Turn on your TV and select the correct input mode on the TV.

If "⊘" appears on the TV when you press a button, the disc cannot accept an operation you have tried to do, or data required for that operation is not recorded on the disc.

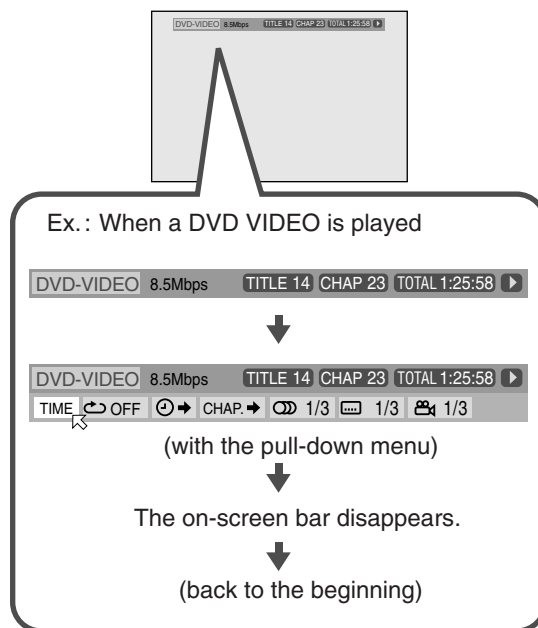
Using the On-screen Bar

You can check the information of a disc while the disc is loaded and use some functions through the on-screen bar.

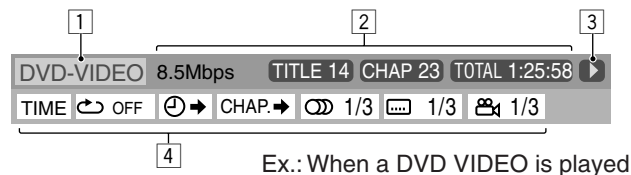


Press ON SCREEN.

- Each time you press the button, the on-screen bar changes as shown to the right:



Contents of the on-screen bar with the pull-down menu



Ex.: When a DVD VIDEO is played

- 1 Disc type
- 2 Playback information

Indications	Meanings	Available discs
Mbps	shows the current transfer rate (Megabits per second).	
TITLE 14	shows the current title.	
CHAP 23	shows the current chapter.	
TRACK 14	shows the current track.	
TOTAL 1:25:58	shows the elapsed playing time.	All discs

- 3 Playback conditions for all types of disc

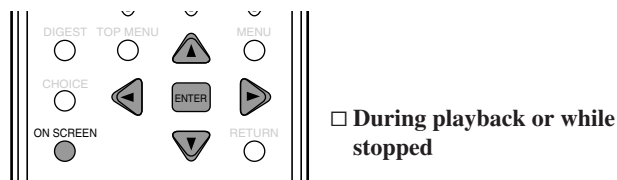
Indications	Meanings
	Playback
	Fast forward/Fast reverse
	Forward/reverse slow-motion
	Pause
	Stop

- 4 Operation icons (on the pull-down menu)

Indications	Meanings	Available discs
TIME	Select this to change the time indication. See page 32.	All discs
	Select this to repeat playback. See page 42.	
	Select this for time search. See page 37.	
CHAP. →	Select this for chapter search. See page 37.	
	Select this to change the audio language or channel. See pages 35 and 36.	
	Select this to change subtitle language. See page 35.	
	Select this to change the view angle. See page 34.	
PROG.	Select this for the program play. See page 41.	
RND.	Select this for the random play. See page 41.	

Basic Operation through the On-screen Bar

Ex. : When selecting the repeat mode for DVD VIDEO



1 Press ON SCREEN twice.

The on-screen bar with pull-down menu appears on the TV.



2 Press cursor ► (or ◀) repeatedly to move to **TIME** on the pull-down menu.



3 Press ENTER.

The pop-up window appears under the pull-down menu.



4 Press cursor ▼ (or ▲) to select the desired option in the pop-up window.

- Each time you press the button, the options change.



5 Press ENTER.

The setting changes and the pop-up window goes off.



To turn off the on-screen bar

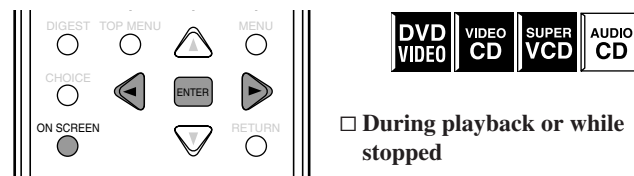
Press ON SCREEN.

Note:

- See the pages for the detail of each function.

Changing the Time Indication

You can change the time information in the on-screen bar and the display window on the center unit.



1 Press ON SCREEN twice.

The on-screen bar appears on the TV.

2 Press cursor ► (or ◀) to move to **TIME**.

3 Press ENTER.

- Each time you press the button, the time indication changes as follows:

TOTAL ⇒ **T. (total) REM** ⇒ **TIME** ⇒ **REM** ⇒
(back to the beginning)

TOTAL : Elapsed time of the disc

T. REM : Remaining time of the disc

TIME : Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track

REM : Remaining time of the current chapter/track

To turn off the on-screen bar

Press ON SCREEN.

Notes:

- The time indication in the on-screen bar changes as follows:
EX. :

TOTAL 1:25:58 ⇒ T.REM 0:45:41 ⇒ TIME 0:25:58 ⇒
REM 0:18:14 ⇒ (back to the beginning)

The indication on the display also changes.

- While playing VCD, SVCD, or CD, the indication of the hour digit does not appear.

DVD Player Operations

Locating a Desired Scene from the Disc Menu

Using the disc menu, you can start playing a title, chapter, or track you specify.

If the on-screen bar is shown on the TV, press ON SCREEN repeatedly to turn off the on-screen bar.

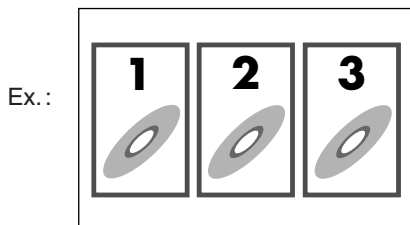
From the DVD menu

DVD VIDEO generally have their own menus which show the disc contents. These menus contain various items such as titles of movies, names of songs, or artist information, and display them on the TV screen. You can locate a desired scene by using these menus.



1 Press TOP MENU or MENU.

The DVD menu appears on the TV. (The menu usually appears on the TV automatically after loading DVD VIDEO.)



DVD VIDEO normally has a "title" menu when it contains more than one title. In this case, press TOP MENU to show the title menu.

Some DVD VIDEO may also have a different menu which is shown by pressing the MENU button.

See the instructions of each DVD VIDEO for its particular menu.

2 Use cursor ▲/▼/►/◄ to select a desired item, then press ENTER.

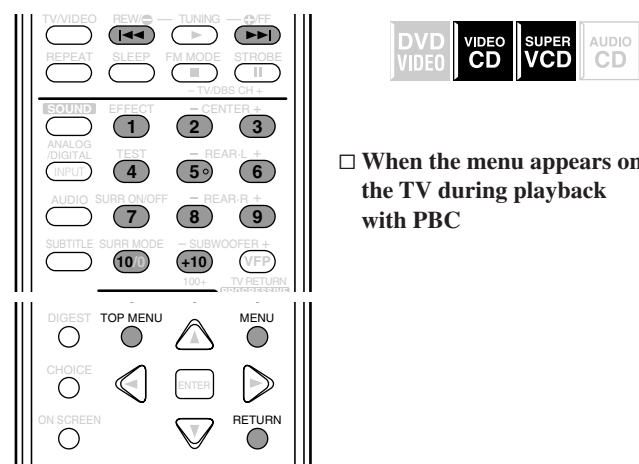
The unit starts playback of the selected item.

- With some discs, you can also select items by entering the corresponding number using number buttons.

From the VCD/SVCD menu with PBC

VCD or SVCD recorded with PBC has its own menus such as a list of the tracks. (After loading such a disc, "PBC" appears on the display.) You can locate the specific track by using the menu (see also page 30).

- Before using the remote control, press DVD to change the remote control operation mode.

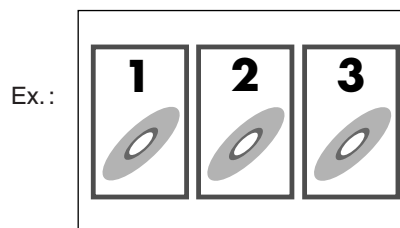


Press number buttons (1–10, +10) to select the number of the desired item.

The unit starts playback from the selected item.

Ex. : To select 3, press 3.

To select 11, press +10, then 1.



To return to the menu

Press RETURN.

When "NEXT" or "PREVIOUS" is shown on the TV screen:

To go to the next page, press ►►.

To return to the previous page, press ◄◄.

To play back PBC-compatible VCD/SVCD without PBC

Start playback by pressing the number buttons while playback is stopped.

The elapsed playing time appears on the display instead of "PBC."

To restore PBC

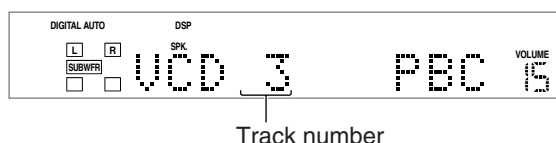
Press TOP MENU or MENU.

"PBC" appears again on the display.

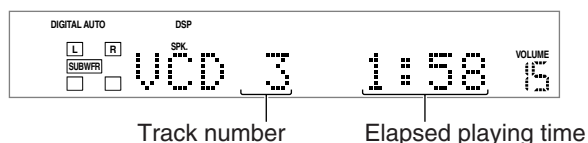
About indication on the display while playing back a VCD/SVCD

While you are playing back a VCD/SVCD recorded with PBC, playback information appears on the display as follows:

Ex. : When VCD is played back using PBC



Ex. : When VCD is played back without using PBC



Selecting a View Angle—ANGLE

While playing back DVD VIDEO containing multi-view angles, you can enjoy the same scene in different angles.

The  icon appears at the beginning of playback when the current scene has multi-view angles.

Selecting a view angle

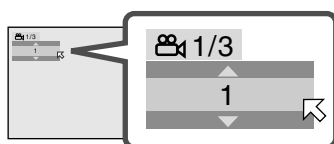


□ During playback

1 Press ANGLE.

The following pop-up window appears on the TV.

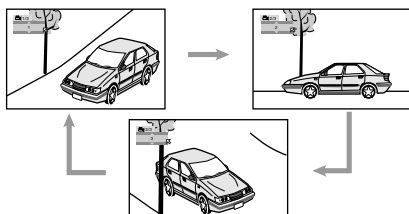
Ex.: The first view angle is selected out of 3 view angles recorded.



2 Press ANGLE repeatedly to select the desired view angle.

- Each time you press the button, the angle of the scene changes.

Ex.: 1/3 ⇒ 2/3 ⇒ 3/3 ⇒ (back to the beginning)



The pop-up window goes off if no operation is done for about 5 seconds.

Using the on-screen bar:

1 Press ON SCREEN repeatedly until the on-screen bar with pull-down menu appears on the TV.

2 Press cursor ► (or ◀) repeatedly to move to in the pull-down menu, then press ENTER.

The following pop-up window appears under the pull-down menu.

Ex.: The first view angle is selected out of 3 view angles recorded.



3 Press cursor ▼ (or ▲) repeatedly to select the desired view angle.

- Each time you press the button, the angle of the scene changes.

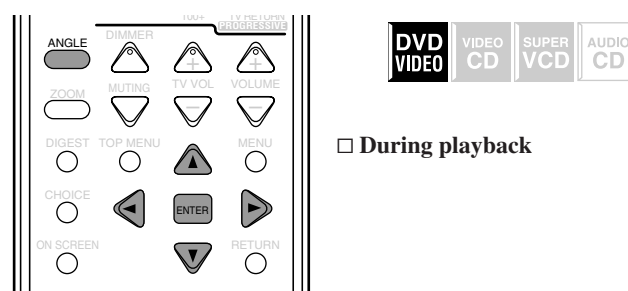
4 Press ENTER.

The pop-up window goes off.

To turn off the on-screen bar

Press ON SCREEN.

Showing all view angles on the TV

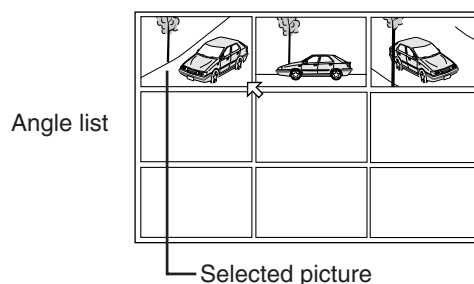


□ During playback

1 Press and hold ANGLE for a few seconds.

Up to 9 pictures of the different camera angles recorded on a disc appear on the TV screen.

Ex.: When 3 view angles are recorded.



2 Press cursor ▲/▼/►/◀ repeatedly to move to the desired view.

3 Press ENTER.

The angle list goes off, and playback starts at the selected view angle.

Notes:

- While the angle list is shown on the TV, you cannot listen to the sound.
- If "⊘" appears on the TV, the current scene does not contain multi-view angles.

DVD Player Operations

Changing the Languages—SUBTITLE and AUDIO

While playing back DVD VIDEO or SVCD containing subtitles in different languages, you can select the subtitle language to be displayed on the TV.

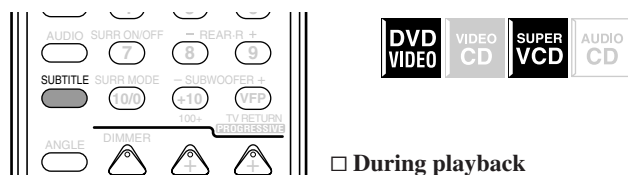
The  icon appears at the beginning of playback when the current scene has plural subtitles.

When DVD VIDEO contains audio languages (soundtrack), you can select the language (soundtrack) to listen to.

The  icon appears at the beginning of playback when the current scene has plural audio languages.

- You can also select the audio channel(s) of VCD or SVCD.

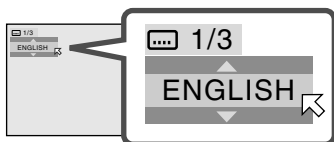
Selecting the subtitle language



1 Press SUBTITLE.

The following pop-up window appears on the TV.

Ex.: "ENGLISH" is selected among 3 subtitle languages recorded.



2 Press SUBTITLE repeatedly to select the desired subtitle language.

- Each time you press the button, the subtitle language changes.

The pop-up window goes off if no operation is done for about 5 seconds.

Using the on-screen bar:

1 Press ON SCREEN repeatedly until the on-screen bar with pull-down menu appears on the TV.

2 Press cursor ► (or ◀) repeatedly to move to in the pull-down menu, then press ENTER.

The following pop-up window appears under the pull-down menu.

Ex.: "ENGLISH" is selected among 3 subtitle languages recorded.



3 Press cursor ▼ (or ▲) repeatedly to select the desired subtitle language.

- Each time you press the button, the subtitle language changes.

4 Press ENTER.

The pop-up window goes off.

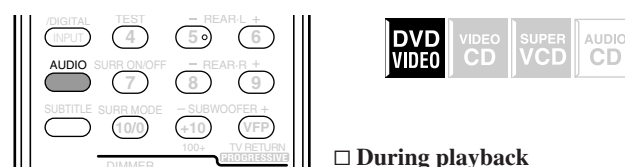
To turn off the on-screen bar

Press ON SCREEN.

Notes:

- For DVD VIDEO: Some subtitle languages are abbreviated in the pop-up window. See "Language code list" on page 50.
- For SVCD: SVCD can contain up to four subtitles. Pressing SUBTITLE changes the subtitles regardless of whether the subtitles are recorded or not. (Subtitles will not change if no subtitle is recorded.)
- If  appears on the TV, the current scene does not contain plural subtitles.

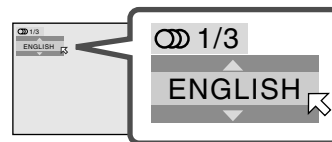
Selecting the audio language



1 Press AUDIO.

The following pop-up window appears on the TV.

Ex.: "ENGLISH" is selected among 3 audio languages recorded.



2 Press AUDIO repeatedly to select the desired audio language.

- Each time you press the button, the audio language changes.

The pop-up window goes off if no operation is done for about 5 seconds.

Using the on-screen bar:

1 Press ON SCREEN repeatedly until the on-screen bar with pull-down menu appears on the TV.

2 Press cursor ► (or ◀) repeatedly to move to in the pull-down menu, then press ENTER.

The following pop-up window appears under the pull-down menu.

Ex.: "ENGLISH" is selected among 3 audio languages recorded.



3 Press cursor ▼ (or ▲) repeatedly to select the desired audio language.

- Each time you press the button, the audio language changes.

4 Press ENTER.

The pop-up window goes off.

To turn off the on-screen bar

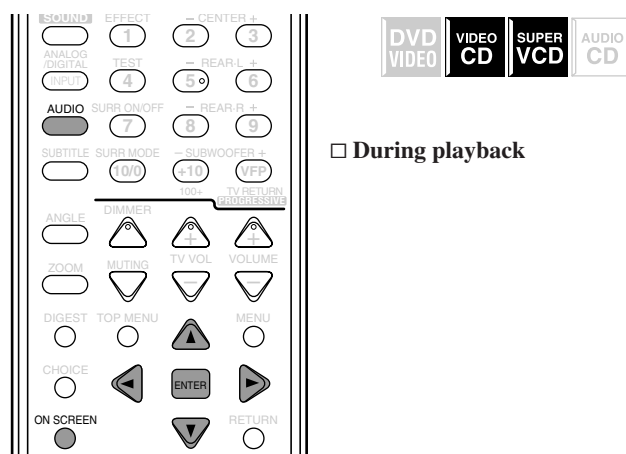
Press ON SCREEN.

Notes:

- Some audio languages are abbreviated in the pop-up window. See "Language code list" on page 50.
- If "⊗" appears on the TV, the current scene does not contain plural audio languages.

■ Selecting the audio channel

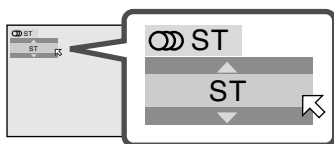
When playing back some Karaoke VCDs or SVCDs, you can enjoy Karaoke by selecting the audio channel to play.



1 Press AUDIO.

The following pop-up window appears on the TV.

Ex. : "ST" (stereo) is selected.



2 Press AUDIO repeatedly to select the desired audio channel.

- Each time you press the button, the audio channel changes.

For VCD :

Ex. :

ST ⇒ L ⇒ R ⇒ (back to the beginning)

ST : To listen to normal stereo playback.

L : To listen to the L (left) audio channel.

R : To listen to the R (right) audio channel.

For SVCD :

Ex. :

ST 1 ⇒ ST 2 ⇒ L 1 ⇒ R 1 ⇒ L 2 ⇒ R 2 ⇒
(back to the beginning)

ST 1/ST 2 : To listen to normal stereo playback of ST 1 or ST 2 channel.

L 1/L 2 : To listen to the L (left) 1 or 2 audio channel.

R 1/R 2 : To listen to the R (right) 1 or 2 audio channel.

The pop-up window goes off if no operation is done for about 5 seconds.

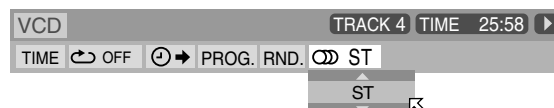
Using the on-screen bar:

1 Press ON SCREEN repeatedly until the on-screen bar with pull-down menu appears on the TV.

2 Press cursor ► (or ◀) repeatedly to move to ⊞ in the pull-down menu, then press ENTER.

The following pop-up window appears under the pull-down menu.

Ex. : "ST" (stereo) is selected.



3 Press cursor ▼ (or ▲) repeatedly to select the desired audio channel(s).

- Each time you press the button, the audio channels change.

4 Press ENTER.

The pop-up window goes off.

To turn off the on-screen bar

Press ON SCREEN.

DVD Player Operations

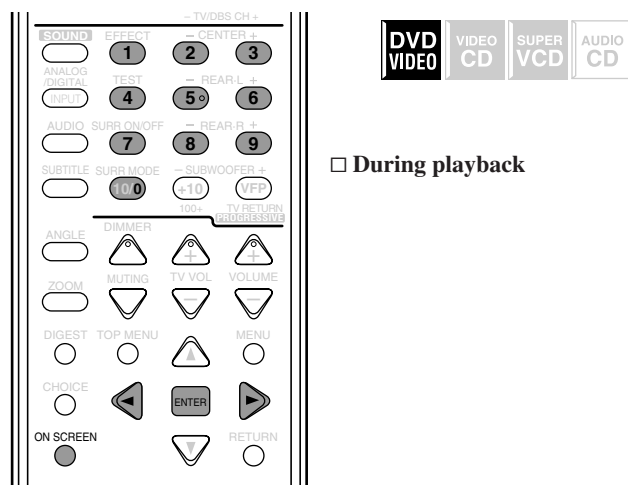
Playing from a Specified Position on a Disc

You can start playing a title, chapter, or track you specify.
You can also play a disc from the specified time.

Locating a desired chapter—Chapter Search

When playing back DVD VIDEO, you can search for the chapter number to be played.

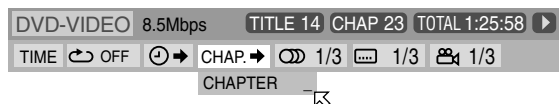
- Before using the remote control, press DVD to change the remote control operation mode.



- Press ON SCREEN repeatedly until the on-screen bar with pull-down menu appears on the TV.

- Press cursor ► (or ◀) repeatedly to move to CHAP.► in the pull-down menu, then press ENTER.

The following pop-up window appears under the pull-down menu.



- Press the number buttons (0–9) to enter the desired chapter number.

Ex. : To select chapter number 8, press 8.
To select chapter number 10, press 1 then 0.
To select chapter number 37, press 3 then 7.

- To correct a misentry
Repeat step 3 until the desired number appears in the pop-up window.

- Press ENTER.

The unit starts playback from the selected chapter.

To turn off the on-screen bar

Press ON SCREEN.

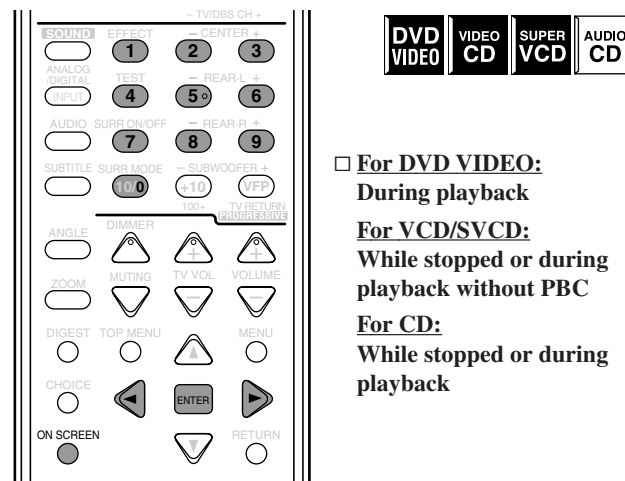
Notes:

- The 10/0 button works only as “0” in this function.
- The +10 button is not used in this function.
- You can select up to the 99th chapter.

Locating a desired position—Time Search

You can start playing at your desired position by specifying the elapsed playing time from the beginning of the current title up to “9:59:59” (for DVD VIDEO), or from the beginning of the disc up to “99:59” (for VCD/SVCD/CD).

- Before using the remote control, press DVD to change the remote control operation mode.



For DVD VIDEO:

During playback

For VCD/SVCD:

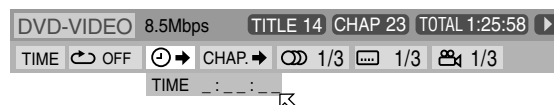
While stopped or during playback without PBC

For CD:

While stopped or during playback

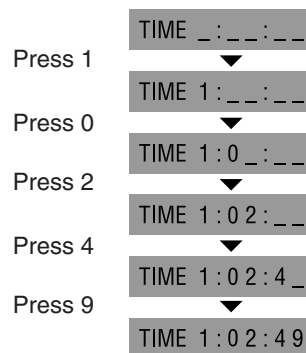
- Press ON SCREEN repeatedly until the on-screen bar with pull-down menu appears on the TV.

- Press cursor ► (or ◀) repeatedly to move to in the pull-down menu, then press ENTER.
The following pop-up window appears under the pull-down menu.



- Use the number buttons (0–9) to enter the time.

Ex. : To play back from a point of 1 (hours): 02 (minutes): 49 (seconds) from the beginning



- To correct a misentry

Press cursor ◀ repeatedly until the wrong number is erased, then press the number buttons to enter the correct number.

- Press ENTER.

The unit starts playback from the specified time.

To turn off the on-screen bar
Press ON SCREEN.

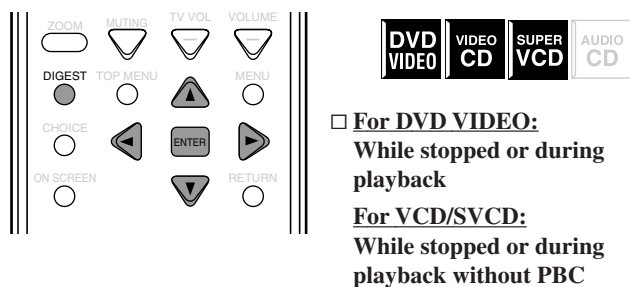
Notes:

- The 10/0 button works only as "0" in this function.
- The +10 button is not used in this function.
- You can specify the time in hours/minutes/seconds for DVD VIDEO, and in minutes/seconds for VCD/SVCD/CD.

■ Locating a desired scene—DIGEST

The unit can display the opening scenes of each title or chapter on DVD VIDEO or each track of VCD/SVCD.

You can select a desired title, chapter, or track from the opening scenes shown on the TV screen.



1 Press DIGEST.

Up to 9 opening scenes are displayed.

Selected scene



- **While DVD VIDEO is stopped :**
The opening scenes of each title appear on the TV screen.
- **During DVD VIDEO playback :**
The opening scenes of each chapter in the current title appear on the TV screen.
- **When VCD or SVCD is loaded :**
The opening scenes of each track appear on the TV screen.

2 Press cursor ▲/▼/▶/◀ to move to the desired scene.

- If there are more than 9 scenes, the digest screen will have more than one page.

To show other pages of the digest screen

To display the previous page, select the left top scene, then press cursor ◀.



To display the next page, select the right bottom scene, then press cursor ▶.

OR

Press ▶▶ to display the next page.

Press ◀◀ to display the previous page.

3 Press ENTER.

The unit starts playback from the selected scene.

Note:

- For some discs, it may take some time before all the scenes appear on the TV screen.

DVD Player Operations

Special Picture Playback

This unit provides special picture playback functions including frame-by-frame, strobe, slow-motion, and zoom.

■ Frame-by-frame playback

- Before using the remote control, press DVD to change the remote control operation mode.



□ During playback

Press **II** (STROBE) repeatedly.

- Each time you press the button, the still picture advances to the next frame.

To return to normal playback

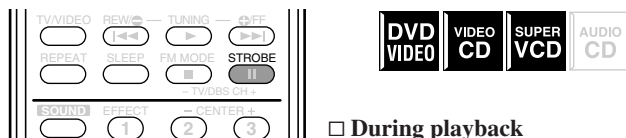
Press **▶**.

Note:

- You can also perform the above operation using **II** on the front panel.

■ Showing continuous still pictures—STROBE

- Before using the remote control, press DVD to change the remote control operation mode.



□ During playback

1 Press **STROBE (II)** at the point you want to view as continuous pictures.

Playback pauses.

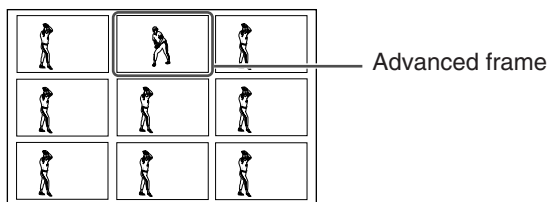
2 Press and hold **STROBE (II)** for a few seconds.

The same 9 frames (still pictures) appear on the TV screen.

You can advance the frames one by one in the following step.

3 Press **STROBE (II)** once.

The picture in the middle on the top row shows an advanced frame from the one on the left.



- Pressing the button repeatedly advances the frames one by one.
- Pressing **▶** instead of **STROBE (II)** advances each frame at normal playback speed with a time delay over the all 9 frames. (The sound is muted.)

To return to the normal screen

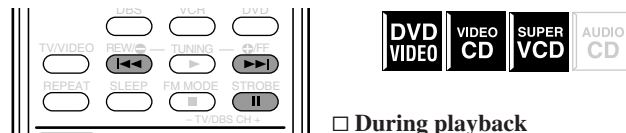
Press and hold **STROBE (II)** for a few seconds.

Notes:

- If you press and hold **STROBE (II)** for a few seconds during playback, 9 still pictures also appear but they advance in normal playback speed with a time delay. (The sound is muted.)
- You can also perform the above operation using **II** on the front panel.

■ Playing back in slow-motion

- Before using the remote control, press DVD to change the remote control operation mode.



□ During playback

1 Press **II** (STROBE) at the point where you want to start playback in slow-motion.

Playback pauses.

2 Press and hold **▶▶▶** or **◀◀◀**.

To play back in forward slow-motion, press and hold **▶▶▶**.

To play back in reverse slow-motion (for DVD VIDEO only), press and hold **◀◀◀**.

- Each time you press and hold the button, the playback speed changes as follows:

Forward:



Reverse (for DVD VIDEO only):



To pause slow-motion playback

Press **II** (STROBE).

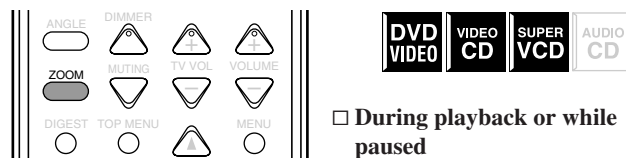
To return to normal playback

Press **▶**.

Note:

- You cannot listen to the sound during slow-motion playback.

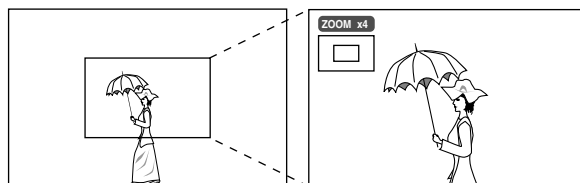
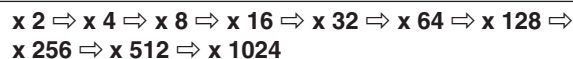
■ Zooming in—ZOOM



□ During playback or while paused

Press **ZOOM**.

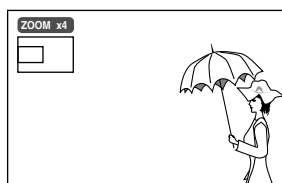
- Each time you press the button, the magnification changes as follows:



Ex.: When x4 zoom is selected

To move the zoomed-in position

Press cursor ▲/▼/►/◄.



To return to normal playback

Press ENTER.

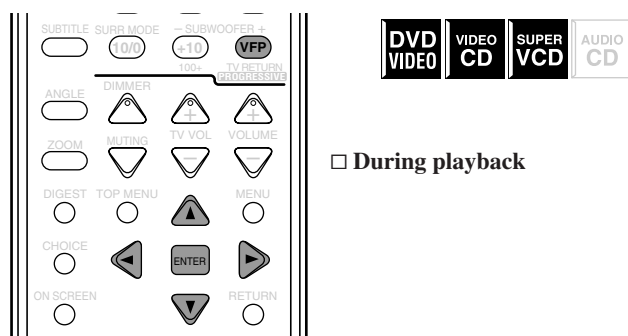
Note:

- While being zoomed in, the picture may look coarse.

■ Changing the VFP setting—VFP

The VFP (Video Fine Processor) function enables you to adjust the picture based on the picture tone, or personal preference.

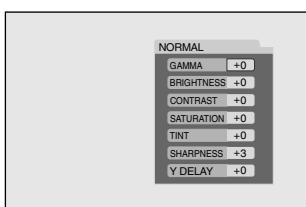
- There is a time limit in doing the following steps. If the setting is canceled before you finish, start from step 1 again.
- Before using the remote control, press DVD to change the remote control operation mode.



□ During playback

1 Press VFP.

The current VFP setting screen appears on the TV.



Ex.: When "NORMAL" is selected

2 Press cursor ► (or ◄) repeatedly to select the VFP mode.

- Each time you press the button, the VFP mode changes as follows.

NORMAL ⇄ CINEMA ⇄ USER1 ⇄ USER2 ⇄
(back to the beginning)

- NORMAL** : Normally select this.
- CINEMA** : Suitable for a movie source.
- USER1 and USER2** : You can adjust parameters that affect the appearance of picture and store the settings (see the right).

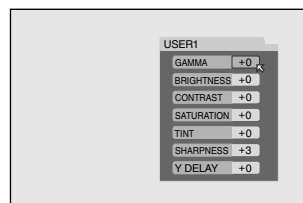
To turn off the VFP setting screen

Press VFP.

To adjust the appearance of the picture

When selecting "USER1" or "USER2," you can adjust the appearance of picture.

1 Press VFP, then press cursor ► (or ◄) repeatedly to select "USER1" or "USER2."



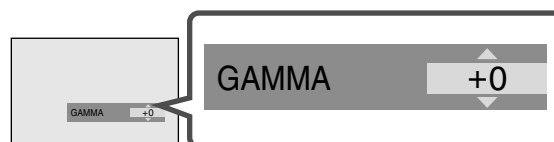
2 Press cursor ▼ (or ▲) repeatedly to select a parameter you want to adjust.

Adjust gradually to show preferable appearance by confirming the picture.

- GAMMA** : Controls the brightness of neutral tints while maintaining the brightness of dark and bright portions (−4 to +4).
- BRIGHTNESS** : Controls the brightness of the screen (−16 to +16).
- CONTRAST** : Controls the contrast of the screen (−16 to +16).
- SATURATION** : Controls the color depth of the screen (−16 to +16).
- TINT** : Controls the tint of the screen (−16 to +16).
- SHARPNESS** : Controls the sharpness of the screen (+0 to +3).
- Y DELAY** : Controls the color gap of the screen (−2 to +2).

3 Press ENTER.

The VFP setting screen disappears and the following pop-up window appears on the TV.



Ex.: When "GAMMA" is selected

4 Press cursor ▼ (or ▲) repeatedly to change the setting, then press ENTER.

The current VFP setting screen appears again.

5 Repeat steps 2 to 4 to adjust other parameters.

To turn off the VFP setting screen

Press VFP.

To activate your setting

Press VFP, then press cursor ► (or ◄) repeatedly to select "USER1" or "USER2."

Note:

- The VFP setting screen disappears if no operations are done for more than about 10 seconds.

DVD Player Operations

Program Playback and Random Playback

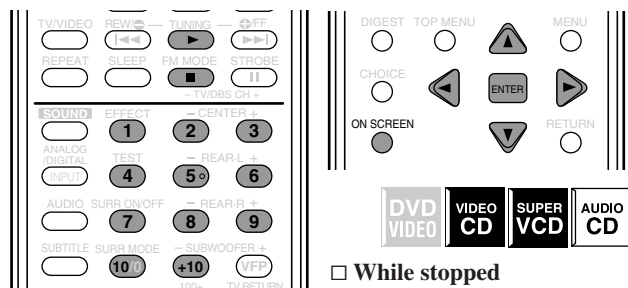
You can play tracks on VCD, SVCD or CD in the desired order or in the random order.

- You cannot use Resume play for the program or random playback.

■ Playing back in the desired order

You can play up to 99 tracks in the desired order.

- You may program the same tracks more than once.
- Before using the remote control, press DVD to change the remote control operation mode.

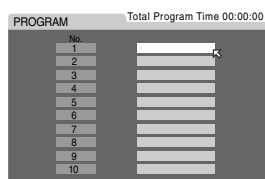


1 Press ON SCREEN repeatedly until the on-screen bar with pull-down menu appears on the TV.

2 Press cursor ► (or ◀) repeatedly to move **PROG.** in the on-screen bar, then press ENTER.

The program screen appears on the TV and the PROGRAM indicator lights up on the display.

- 10 steps appear at a time on the program screen.



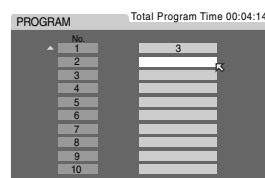
3 Press the number buttons (1–10, +10) to enter a track number you want to program.

Ex. : To select the track number 3, press 3.

To select the track number 14, press +10 then 4.

To select the track number 40, press +10, +10, +10 then 10.

- When you enter a track number that does not exist on the loaded disc, your entry is ignored.
- The total program time is shown at the top of the program screen on the display.



4 Repeat step 3 to program the next steps.

- Each time you enter a track number in the step at the bottom of the program screen, the next steps appear.

To erase a step

Press cursor ▲ (or ▼) to move **PROG.** to the desired step, then press ■.

- To program the next steps again, press cursor ▼ repeatedly to move **PROG.** to the blank step, then repeat step 3.

5 Press ►.

Playback starts in the programmed order.

To stop the program playback

Press ■.

- When VCD or SVCD is played back, the program screen appears again.
- To edit your program, repeat steps 3 and 4.

To cancel the program playback mode

Clear the program you made as follows:

- Press ■ to stop playback.
 - Press ON SCREEN to turn on the on-screen bar.
 - Press ■.
- You can also clear the program by ejecting the disc or turning off the unit.

To turn off the on-screen bar

Press ON SCREEN.

Note:

- When all the programmed tracks have been played, the program playback stops.

■ Playing back tracks in random order



1 Press ON SCREEN repeatedly until the on-screen bar with pull-down menu appears on the TV.

2 Press cursor ► (or ◀) repeatedly to move **RND.** in the on-screen bar, then press ENTER.

The RANDOM indicator lights up on the display and playback starts in random order.

To stop the random playback

Press ■.

The random playback is canceled.

- When all tracks have been played once, the random playback is also canceled.

Notes:

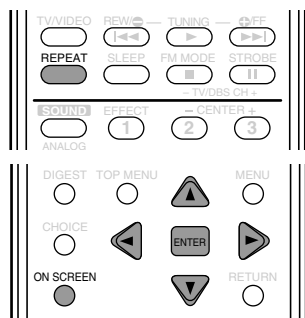
- The same track will not be played more than once during the random playback.
- During the random playback, you can skip back to the beginning of the current track by pressing ◀◀, but cannot skip back to the tracks that have been played.
- During the random playback, pressing ENTER with **RND.** selected in the on-screen bar cancels the random playback and continues playback in the normal order.

Repeat Playback

You can repeat playback of the current title or chapter (for DVD VIDEO) or track (for VCD/SVCD/CD).

You can also repeat playback of a desired portion.

Repeating a current title, chapter, or all tracks



- ☐ **For DVD VIDEO:**
During playback
- ☐ **For VCD/SVCD:**
During playback or while stopped without PBC
- ☐ **For CD:**
During playback or while stopped

1 Press ON SCREEN repeatedly until the on-screen bar with pull-down menu appears on the TV.

2 Press cursor ► (or ◀) repeatedly to move to in the on-screen bar, then press ENTER.
The following pop-up window appears under the on-screen bar.



3 Press cursor ▼ (or ▲) repeatedly to select the repeat mode, then press ENTER.

- Each time you press cursor ▼ (or ▲), the repeat mode changes as follows:

For DVD VIDEO:

CHAPTER ◀ TITLE ◀ A-B ◀ OFF ◀
(back to the beginning)

For VCD/SVCD/CD:

TRACK ◀ ALL ◀ A-B ◀ OFF ◀
(back to the beginning)

- CHAPTER** : Repeats the current chapter (the REPEAT 1 indicator lights up on the display)
- TRACK** : Repeats the current track (the REPEAT 1 indicator lights up on the display)
- TITLE** : Repeats the current title (the REPEAT indicator lights up on the display)
- ALL** : Repeats all the tracks on the disc or of the program (the REPEAT indicator lights up on the display)
- A-B** : Repeats a desired portion (see the right column)
- OFF** : Select this to cancel the repeat mode

- You can directly change the repeat mode (except A-B) for the current chapter, title, track, or disc by pressing REPEAT on the remote control.



Notes:

- If you select "ALL" during random playback, the all tracks of the disc are played repeatedly in random order.
- "A-B" cannot be selected during the program and random playback or while a disc is not played back.

To turn off the on-screen bar

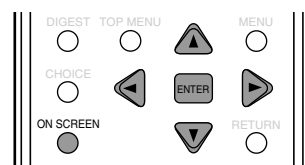
Press ON SCREEN.

To cancel the repeat playback

Select "OFF" in step **3**, then press ENTER.

Repeating a desired part

You can repeat playback of a desired portion by specifying the beginning (point A) and the ending (point B).



☐ **During playback**

1 Press ON SCREEN repeatedly until the on-screen bar with pull-down menu appears on the TV.

2 Press cursor ► (or ◀) repeatedly to move to in the on-screen bar, then press ENTER.
The following pop-up window appears under the on-screen bar.



3 Press cursor ▼ (or ▲) repeatedly to select "A-B."

4 Press ENTER at the beginning of the portion you want to repeat (point A).

The following display appears in the on-screen bar.

The REPEAT A indicator also lights up on the display.



5 Press ENTER at the end of the portion you want to repeat (point B).

A-B repeat playback starts. The selected part of the disc (between point A and B) is played repeatedly.

During repeat A-B playback, the REPEAT A-B indicator lights up on the display.



To turn off the on-screen bar

Press ON SCREEN.

To cancel the A-B repeat playback

Select "OFF" in step **3**, then press ENTER.

Note:

- While playing back DVD VIDEO, A-B repeat playback is possible only within the same title.

MP3 Disc Playback

This unit can play back MP3 files on a CD-R or CD-RW. We call such a disc “MP3 disc” in this instruction.

- Before using the remote control, press DVD to change the remote control operation mode for the MP3 disc operations.
- Turn on your TV and select the correct input mode on the TV.

If “⊗” appears on the TV when you press a button, the disc cannot accept an operation you have tried to do.

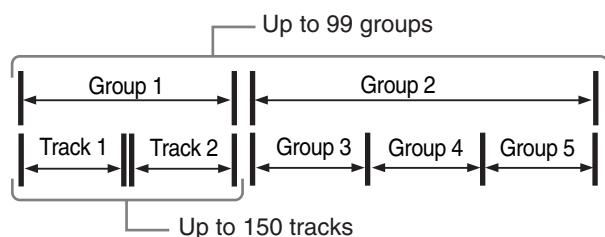
What is MP3?

MP3 is an abbreviation of Motion Picture Experts Group 1 (or MPEG-1) Audio Layer 3. MP3 is simply a file format with a data compression. By using MP3 format, one CD-R or CD-RW can contain about 10 times as many songs as a regular CD can.

Disc structure

On an MP3 disc, each song (material) is recorded as a file. Files are usually grouped into a folder. Folders can also include other folders, creating hierarchical folder layers.

This unit simplifies the hierarchical construction of a disc and manages files and folders by “tracks” and “groups.”



This unit can recognize up to 150 tracks per group and up to 99 groups per disc (up to 14,850 tracks in total). Since the unit ignores the tracks whose numbers are exceeding 150 and the groups whose numbers are exceeding 99, they cannot be played back.

- If there are any type of files other than MP3 files in a folder, those files are also counted in the total file number.

Notes:

- MP3 discs (either CD-R or CD-RW) require a longer readout time than normal discs. (It depends on the complexity of the folder/file configuration.)
- When making an MP3 disc, select ISO 9660 Level 1 or Level 2 as the disc format.
- This unit supports “multi-session” discs (up to 5 sessions).
- This unit cannot play “packet write” discs.
- This unit can play MP3 files only with the following file extensions: “.MP3,” “.Mp3,” “.mP3,” and “.mp3.”
- ID3* tags cannot be shown on the display.
 - * An MP3 file can contain file information called “ID3 Tag” where its album name, performer, track title, etc. are recorded. There are two versions—ID3v1 (ID3 Tag version 1) and ID3v2 (ID3 Tag version 2).
- It is recommended that you make each MP3 file at sampling rate of 44.1 kHz and at bit rate of 128 kbps. The unit cannot play back the files made at bit rate of under 64 kbps.
- If both MP3 files and JPEG files are recorded on a disc, set the MP3/JPEG setting in the PICTURE menu to “MP3.” (See page 50.)
- Some MP3 discs may not be played back because of their disc characteristics or recording conditions.

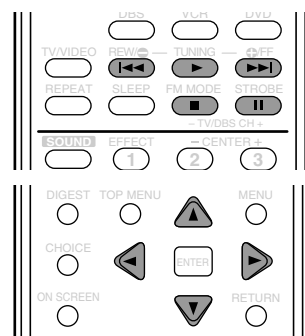
Notes:

- The following functions are not available to MP3 disc playback: Program playback, random playback, fast-forward/reverse playback, on-screen bar, and choice menus
- Some tracks on an MP3 disc are skipped and may not be played back normally.

Basic Operations

You can also use the buttons on the front panel if they have the similar names as those on the remote control.

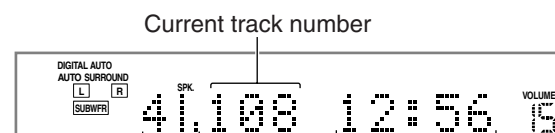
- Before using the remote control, press DVD to change the remote control operation mode.



Starting playback

Load an MP3 disc, then press ►.

The unit starts playback. The MP3 CONTROL screen appears on the TV (see page 44).



Current group number

Elapsed playing time (minutes:seconds) of the current track during playback

When all tracks in a group have been played, the unit plays tracks in the next group.

Stopping playback temporarily

Press II.

To start playback again

Press ►.

Selecting groups or tracks

To skip groups forward

Press cursor ►.

To skip groups backward

Press cursor ◀.

To skip tracks forward

Press ►► or cursor ▼ as many times as required.

To skip to the beginning of the current track

Press I◀◀ once.

To skip tracks backward

Press I◀◀ or cursor ▲ as many times as required.

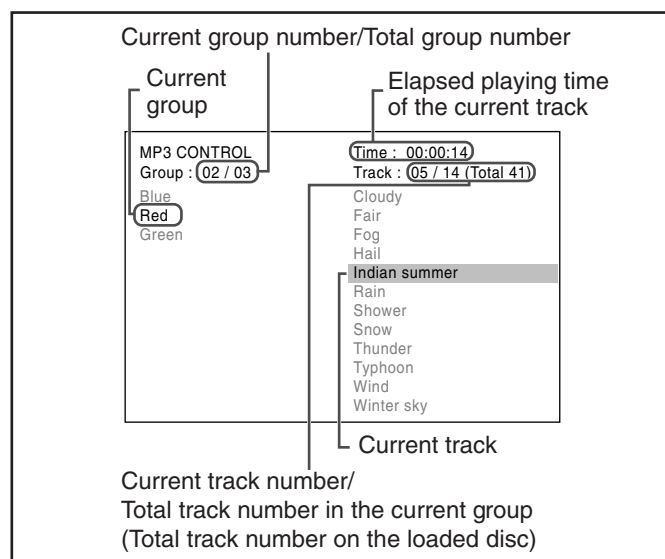
Stopping playback completely

Press ■.

Operations through the MP3 CONTROL Screen

You can search for and play the desired groups and tracks through the MP3 CONTROL screen shown on TV.

■ MP3 CONTROL screen

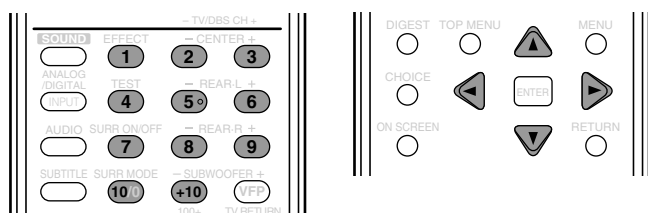


Notes:

- Some group and track names may not be displayed correctly because of their recording conditions.
- The order of groups and tracks on an MP3 disc may be displayed differently from the order displayed on your personal computer.
- Up to 12 groups and tracks are displayed on the TV at a time. Pressing cursor $\blacktriangle/\blacktriangledown/\blacktriangleright/\blacktriangleleft$ repeatedly shows the hidden groups and tracks one by one.

■ Operations

- Before using the remote control, press DVD to change the remote control operation mode.



To select or skip groups during playback

To select the next groups (or skip groups forward)

Press cursor $\blacktriangleright$ repeatedly.

To select the previous groups (or skip groups backward)

Press cursor $\blacktriangleleft$ repeatedly.

To select or skip tracks during playback

To select the next tracks (or skip tracks forward)

Press cursor $\blacktriangledown$ repeatedly.

To select the previous tracks (or skip tracks backward)

Press cursor $\blacktriangleup$ repeatedly.

To start playback by specifying a track number

Press the number buttons (1 – 10, +10) to enter the track number.

Ex. : To select the track number 3, press 3.

To select the track number 14, press +10 then 4.

To select the track number 24, press +10, +10, then 4.

To select the track number 110, press +10 ten times, then 10.

The entered number appears in the track number indication, then playback starts from the specified track.

Repeat Playback

You can repeat playback of the current track, group, or all the tracks on the loaded disc.



☐ During playback or while stopped

From the remote control ONLY:

Press REPEAT.

The repeat indication appears on the MP3 CONTROL screen and the REPEAT indicator lights up on the display.

- Each time you press the button, the repeat mode changes as follows:

REPEAT TRACK $\rightleftarrows$ REPEAT GROUP $\rightleftarrows$ REPEAT ALL $\rightleftarrows$ the indication goes off $\rightleftarrows$ (back to the beginning)

REPEAT TRACK : Repeats the current track

REPEAT GROUP : Repeats the current group

REPEAT ALL : Repeats all the tracks on the disc

To cancel repeat mode

Press REPEAT repeatedly until the repeat indication goes off from the MP3 CONTROL screen (the REPEAT indicator also goes off from the display).

JPEG Disc Playback

This unit can play back JPEG files on a CD-R or CD-RW. We call such a disc “JPEG disc” in this instruction.

- Before using the remote control, press DVD to change the remote control operation mode for the JPEG disc operations.
- Turn on your TV and select the correct input mode on the TV.

If “⊗” appears on the TV when you press a button, the disc cannot accept an operation you have tried to do.

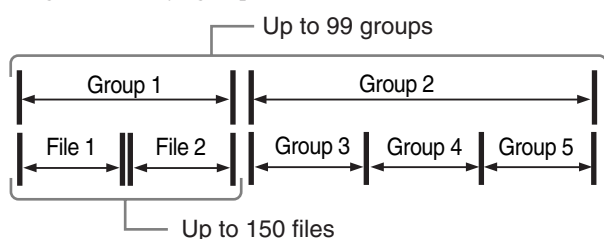
What is JPEG?

A still-picture data compression system proposed by the Joint Photographic Expert Group, which features little distortion in image quality in spite of its high compression ratio.

Disc structure

On a JPEG disc, each still picture (material) is recorded as a file. Files are usually grouped into a folder. Folders can also include other folders, creating hierarchical folder layers.

This unit simplifies the hierarchical construction of a disc and manages folders by “groups.”



This unit can recognize up to 150 files per group, and up to 99 groups per disc (up to 14,850 files in total). Since the unit ignores the files whose numbers are exceeding 150 and the groups whose numbers are exceeding 99, they cannot be played back.

- If there are any type files other than JPEG files in a folder, those files are also counted in the total file number.

Notes:

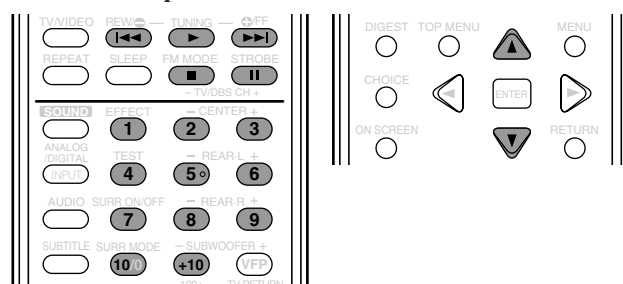
- JPEG discs (either CD-R or CD-RW) require a longer readout time than normal discs. (It depends on the complexity of the folder/file configuration.)
- When making a JPEG disc, select ISO 9660 Level 1 or Level 2 as the disc format.
- This unit supports “multi-session” discs (up to 5 sessions).
- This unit cannot play “packet write” discs.
- The unit can play JPEG files only with the following file extensions: “.jpg,” “.jpeg,” “.JPG,” “.JPEG” and any uppercase and lowercase combinations (such as “.Jpg”).
- It is recommended you to record a file at 640 x 480 resolution. (If a file has been recorded at a resolution of more than 640 x 480, it will take a longer time to be shown.)
- If both JPEG files and MP3 files are recorded on a disc, set the MP3/JPEG setting in the PICTURE menu to “JPEG.” (See page 50.)
- This system can play only baseline JPEG files*. Progressive JPEG files* or lossless JPEG files* cannot be played.
 - * – Baseline JPEG format: Used for digital cameras, web, etc.
 - Progressive JPEG format: Used for web.
 - Lossless JPEG format: An old type and rarely used now.
- Some JPEG discs may not be played back because of their disc characteristics or recording conditions.

Slide-show Playback

You can play back the still pictures one after another automatically—slide-show playback.

You can also use the buttons on the front panel if they have the similar names as those on the remote control.

- Before using the remote control, press DVD to change the remote control operation mode.



Starting slide-show playback

Load a JPEG disc, then press ►.

The slide-show playback starts. Each file (still picture) is shown on the TV for about 3 seconds, then changed to the next file one after another.

When all files in a group have been played back, the unit plays back files in the next group.

Stopping slide-show playback temporarily

Press II.

You can zoom in on the still picture (see page 46).

To start slide-show playback again

Press ►.

To start the slide-show playback by specifying a file number

Press the number buttons (1 – 10, +10) to enter the file number.

Ex. : To select the file number 3, press 3.

To select the file number 14, press +10 then 4.

To select the file number 24, press +10, +10, then 4.

To select the file number 110, press +10 ten times, then 10.

The selected file number appears in the file number indication, then the slide-show playback starts from the file you have specified.

Selecting files or groups

To skip pictures (files) forward

Press ►► or cursor ▼ as many times as required.

To skip pictures (files) backward

Press ◀◀ or cursor ▲ as many times as required.

Stopping slide-show playback completely

Press ■.

The JPEG CONTROL screen appears on the TV.

- For how to operate through the JPEG CONTROL screen, see “Operations through the JPEG CONTROL Screen” on page 46.

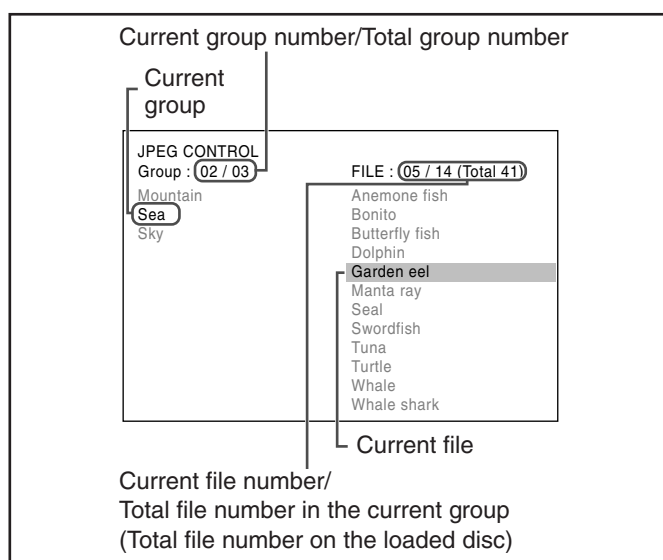
Notes:

- The following functions are not available to the slide-show playback: program playback, random playback, repeat playback, fast-forward/reverse playback, on-screen bar, and choice menus.
- If a black screen continuously appears in the slide-show playback: the file currently played may be non-baseline JPEG file. In this case, select a playable file (a baseline JPEG file) again (e.g., pressing ■ or MENU to open the JPEG CONTROL screen, etc.). Note that it may take a long time to select another file.
- Some files on a JPEG disc may be distorted during playback.

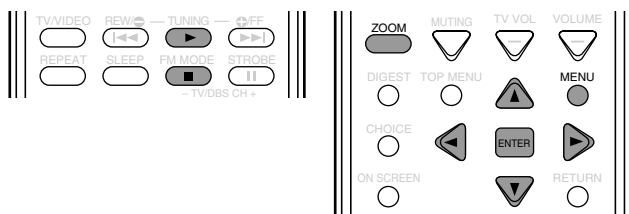
Operations through the JPEG CONTROL Screen

You can search for and show the desired groups and files through the JPEG CONTROL screen.

■ JPEG CONTROL screen

**Notes:**

- You can check the group number and the file number on the display window.
- Some group and file names may not be displayed correctly because of the recording condition.
- The order of groups and files on a JPEG disc may be displayed differently from the order displayed on your personal computer.
- Up to 12 groups and files are displayed on the TV at a time. Pressing cursor ▲/▼/►/◄ repeatedly shows the hidden groups and files one by one.
- Before using the remote control, press DVD to change the remote control operation mode.



■ To select a group

Press cursor ► (or ◄) repeatedly.

■ To select a file

Press cursor ▼ (or ▲) repeatedly.

■ To show the selected file

Press ENTER.

- When the still picture has been shown on the TV thoroughly, you can zoom in or out the still picture (see pages 39 and 40).
- If you press ►, the slide-show playback starts from the selected file.

■ Zooming in on the still picture

Press ZOOM.

To move the zoomed-in position

Press cursor ▲/▼/►/◄.

To return to normal playback

Press ENTER.

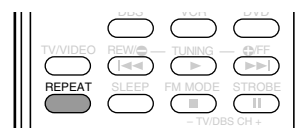
See also pages 39 and 40.

■ To return to the JPEG CONTROL screen

Press MENU or ■.

Repeat Playback

You can repeat playback of the current group or all the files on the loaded disc.



□ During playback or while stopped

From the remote control ONLY:

Press REPEAT.

The repeat indication appears on the JPEG CONTROL screen and the REPEAT indicator lights up on the display.

- Each time you press the button, the repeat mode changes as follows:

REPEAT GROUP ⇌ REPEAT ALL ⇌ the indication goes off ⇌ (back to the beginning)

REPEAT GROUP : Repeats the current group

REPEAT ALL : Repeats all the files on the disc

To cancel repeat mode

Press REPEAT repeatedly until the repeat indication goes off from the JPEG CONTROL screen (the REPEAT indicator also goes off from the display).

Choice Menu Operations

You can adjust the initial settings through the choice menu on the TV.

Before operating the choice menu, select the source you want to adjust by pressing source selecting button.

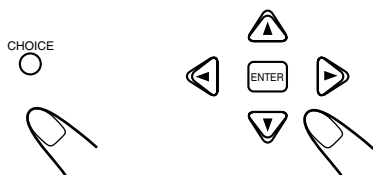
- When selecting FM or AM as the source, you cannot use the choice menu.
- When selecting the source other than DVD, FM, and AM, you can use the AUDIO and SPK. SETTING menus. The audio adjustments are memorized for each source.

Notes:

- You need to turn on your TV and select the correct input mode on the TV.
- You can only use the remote control for the choice menu operations.
- You can change the language used in the choice menu. See page 49.
- You cannot show the choice menu when an MP3 disc or a JPEG disc is loaded.

Operation Buttons

To do the operations in this choice menu, use the buttons on the remote control.



From the remote control ONLY

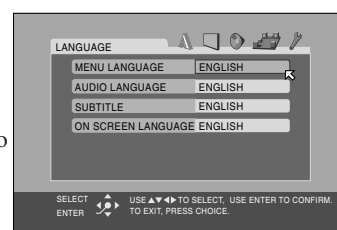
Button	To do
CHOICE	display the choice menu on the TV. Each time you press the button, the choice menu is turned on and off alternately.
▲/▼	select an item.
▶/◀	adjust the selected item on the choice menu.
ENTER	move to the submenu of the selected item or decide the setting.

Configuration of Choice Menu

The choice menu has the following menus:

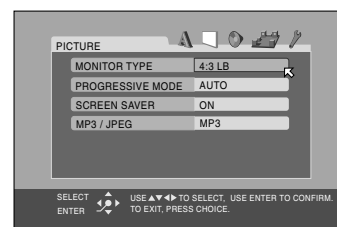
LANGUAGE menu (see page 49)

You can select the initial language for the disc menu, audio, and subtitle. You can also select the language used on the TV screen while operating this unit.



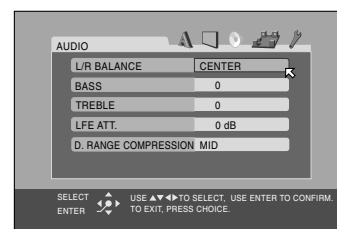
PICTURE menu (see page 49)

You can select the desired options concerning a picture or monitor screen.



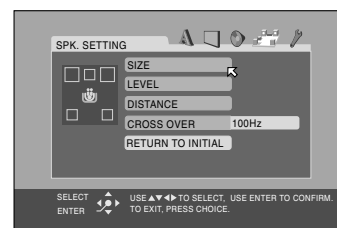
AUDIO menu (see page 50)

You can adjust the sound settings of this unit through this menu.



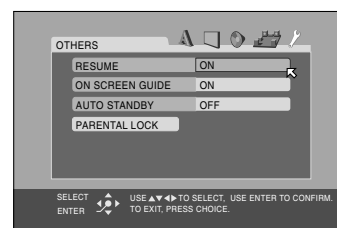
SPK. SETTING menu (see page 51)

You can adjust the speaker settings. You can also adjust the output level of the speakers.



OTHERS menu (see page 52)

You can change the settings for some of the functions. To set Parental Lock, use this menu.



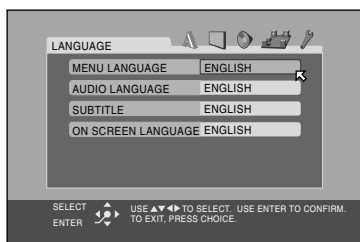
Operating Procedure

Ex.: When setting the progressive mode.

Before operating the choice menu, press DVD to change the source to DVD.

1 Press CHOICE.

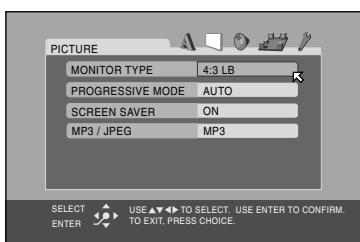
The LANGUAGE menu appears on the TV.



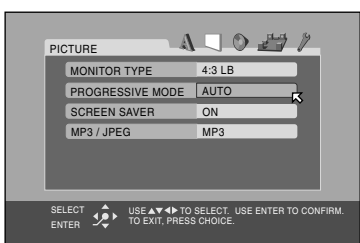
- Each time you press cursor ► (or ◀), the menu changes.

2 Press cursor ► (or ◀) repeatedly to display PICTURE menu.

- Each time you press the button, the menu changes.

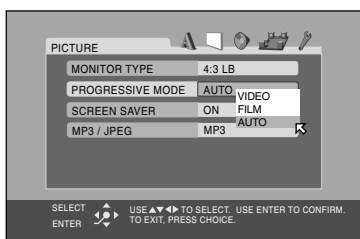


3 Press cursor ▼ (or ▲) repeatedly to move to "PROGRESSIVE MODE."

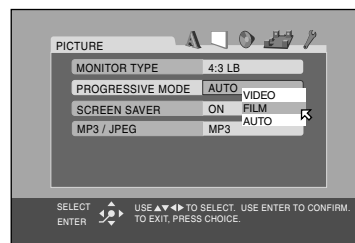


4 Press ENTER.

The pop-up window appears, listing the selectable options.

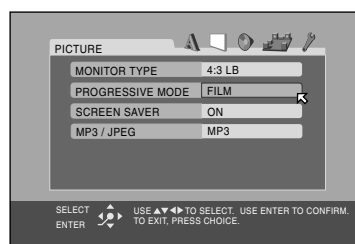


5 Press cursor ▼ (or ▲) repeatedly to select the desired option.



Ex.: When "FILM" is selected.

6 Press ENTER to finish the setting.



To set other items on the same choice menu

Repeat steps 3 to 6.

To move to another choice menu

Press cursor ► (or ◀) repeatedly to select a choice menu you want to set up.

To return to the normal screen

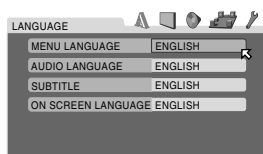
Press CHOICE.

Note:

- Some items in the choice menu consist of submenus for setting up various options. Pressing ENTER makes the submenus for the selected item appear on the TV. You can set the items using cursor ▲/▼ and ENTER (as explained in steps 5 and 6 above).

Choice Menu Operations

■ LANGUAGE menu



You can select “MENU LANGUAGE,” “AUDIO LANGUAGE,” and “SUBTITLE” only before playback.

● MENU LANGUAGE

Some discs have multiple languages.

Select one of the languages or language codes from AA to ZU (see “Language code list” on page 50) as the menu language.

● AUDIO LANGUAGE

Some discs have multiple audio languages.

Select one of the languages or language codes from AA to ZU (see “Language code list” on page 50).

● SUBTITLE

Some discs have multiple subtitle languages.

Select one of the languages or language codes from AA to ZU (see “Language code list” on page 50) or “OFF (no subtitle).”

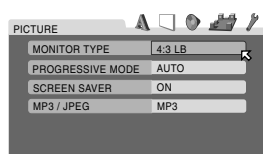
Note:

- When the language you have selected for MENU LANGUAGE, AUDIO LANGUAGE, or SUBTITLE is not recorded on a disc, the original language is used as the initial language automatically.

● ON SCREEN LANGUAGE

Select one of the languages shown on the TV.

■ PICTURE menu



● MONITOR TYPE

You can select the monitor type to match your TV when you play DVD VIDEO recorded in the picture’s width/height ratio of 16:9.

For the multi color system TV

When you use a multi color system TV, you can change the color system of this unit automatically by selecting “MULTI” options as the monitor type. In this case, the setting of this unit is changed to match the color system of the loaded disc regardless the VIDEO OUT SELECT setting.

Select one of the following settings:

16:9 NORMAL / 16:9 MULTI NORMAL

(Wide television conversion) :

Select this when the aspect ratio of your TV is fixed to 16:9 (wide TV). The unit automatically adjusts the screen width of the output signal correctly when playing back a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3.

16:9 AUTO / 16:9 MULTI AUTO

(Wide television conversion) :

Select this when the aspect ratio of your TV is 16:9 (wide TV).

4:3 LB / 4:3 MULTI LB (Letter Box conversion) :

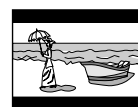
Select this when the aspect ratio of your TV is 4:3 (conventional TV). While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars appear on the top and the bottom of the screen.

4:3 PS / 4:3 MULTI PS (Pan Scan conversion) :

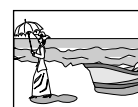
Select this when the aspect ratio of your TV is 4:3 (conventional TV). While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars do not appear; however, the left and right edges of the pictures will not be shown on the screen.



Ex.: 16:9



Ex.: 4:3 LB



Ex.: 4:3 PS

- Even if “4:3 PS” or “4:3 MULTI PS” is selected, the screen size may become “4:3 LB” or “4:3 MULTI LB” with some DVD VIDEO. This depends on how they are recorded.
- When you select “16:9 NORMAL” or “16:9 MULTI NORMAL” for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.

● PROGRESSIVE MODE

You can select the progressive mode according to the picture type (film or video source). This takes effect only when “PROGRESSIVE” is selected as the scanning mode. (See page 14.)

Normally, set to “AUTO.”

Select one of the following settings:

VIDEO : Suitable for playing back a video source disc.

FILM : Suitable for playing back a film or progressive source disc.

AUTO : Used to play a disc containing both video and film source materials. This unit recognizes the picture type (film or video source) of the current disc according to the disc information.

- If the playback picture is unclear or noisy, or the oblique lines of the picture are rough, try to change to other modes.

● SCREEN SAVER

You can activate or deactivate the screen saver function.

Select one of the following settings:

ON	: The picture on the TV becomes dark when no operation is done for 5 minutes.
OFF	: The screen saver function does not work.

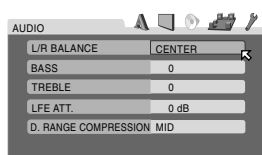
● MP3/JPEG

If both MP3 files and JPEG files are recorded on a disc, you can select which files to play.

Select one of the following settings:

MP3	: Select this for playing MP3 files.
JPEG	: Select this for playing JPEG files.

■ AUDIO menu



You can also adjust the following items using the front panel or remote control (see pages 19 to 24).

● L/R BALANCE

Adjust the output balance between the left front speaker and right front speaker within the range of “R-21” to “CENTER” or “CENTER” to “L-21.”

● BASS

Adjust the bass tone level from the front speakers within the range of -10 to +10 in 2 step intervals.

● TREBLE

Adjust the treble tone level from the front speakers within the range of -10 to +10 in 2 step intervals.

● LFE ATT.

The Low Frequency Effect attenuator diminishes the distortion of the bass sound from the subwoofer while playing back a disc with Dolby Digital or DTS Digital Surround.

Select one of the following settings:

-10 dB	: Select this to diminish the distortion of the bass sound from the subwoofer.
0 dB	: Select this to cancel this function.

● D. RANGE COMPRESSION

You can enjoy a powerful sound at night even at a low volume level when listening to the sound with Dolby Digital.

Select one of the following settings:

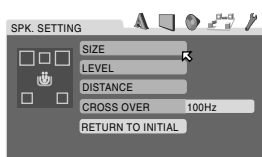
MAX	: Select this when you want to apply the compression effect fully (useful at midnight).
MID	: Select this when you want to reduce the dynamic range a little.
OFF	: Select this when you want to enjoy surround with its full dynamic range (no effect applied).

Language code list

AA	Afar	FA	Persian	KM	Cambodian	OM	(Afan) Oromo	SU	Sundanese
AB	Abkhazian	FI	Finnish	KN	Kannada	OR	Oriya	SV	Swedish
AF	Afrikaans	FJ	Fiji	KO	Korean (KOR)	PA	Panjabi	SW	Swahili
AM	Ameharic	FO	Faroese	KS	Kashmiri	PL	Polish	TA	Tamil
AR	Arabic	FY	Frisian	KU	Kurdish	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TE	Telugu
AS	Assamese	GA	Irish	KY	Kirghiz	PT	Portuguese	TG	Tajik
AY	Aymara	GD	Scots Gaelic	LA	Latin	QU	Quechua	TH	Thai
AZ	Azerbaijani	GL	Galician	LN	Lingala	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TI	Tigrinya
BA	Bashkir	GN	Guarani	LO	Laothian	RN	Kirundi	TK	Turkmen
BE	Byelorussian	GU	Gujarati	LT	Lithuanian	RO	Rumanian	TL	Tagalog
BG	Bulgarian	HA	Hausa	LV	Latvian, Lettish	RU	Russian	TN	Setswana
BH	Bihari	HI	Hindi	MG	Malagasy	RW	Kinyarwanda	TO	Tonga
BI	Bislama	HR	Croatian	MI	Maori	SA	Sanskrit	TR	Turkish
BN	Bengali, Bangla	HU	Hungarian	MK	Macedonian	SD	Sindhi	TS	Tsonga
BO	Tibetan	HY	Armenian	ML	Malayalam	SG	Sangho	TT	Tatar
BR	Breton	IA	Interlingua	MN	Mongolian	SH	Serbo-Croatian	TW	Twi
CA	Catalan	IE	Interlingue	MO	Moldavian	SI	Singhalese	UK	Ukrainian
CO	Corsican	IK	Inupiak	MR	Marathi	SK	Slovak	UR	Urdu
CS	Czech	IN	Indonesian	MS	Malay (MAY)	SL	Slovenian	UZ	Uzbek
CY	Welsh	IS	Icelandic	MT	Maltese	SM	Samoan	VI	Vietnamese
DA	Danish	IW	Hebrew	MY	Burmese	SN	Shona	VO	Volapuk
DZ	Bhutani	JI	Yiddish	NA	Nauru	SO	Somali	WO	Wolof
EL	Greek	JW	Javanese	NE	Nepali	SQ	Albanian	XH	Xhosa
EO	Esperanto	KA	Georgian	NL	Dutch	SR	Serbian	YO	Yoruba
ET	Estonian	KK	Kazakh	NO	Norwegian	SS	Siswati	ZU	Zulu
EU	Basque	KL	Greenlandic	OC	Occitan	ST	Sesotho		

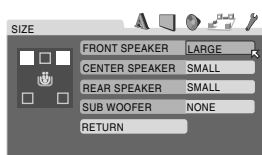
Choice Menu Operations

■ SPK. SETTING menu



● SIZE

Select this to enter the SIZE submenu.



FRONT SPEAKER, CENTER SPEAKER, and REAR SPEAKER

Select one of the following settings for each speaker:

LARGE (LRG) : Select this when the speaker size is relatively large.

SMALL (SML) : Select this when the speaker size is relatively small.

NONE (NO) : Select this when you have not connected a speaker. (Not selectable for the front speakers)

SUBWOOFER

Select one of the following settings:

USE (YES) : Select this when a subwoofer is connected.

NONE (NO) : Select this when no subwoofer is used.

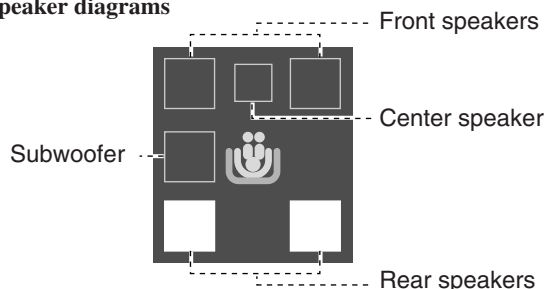
RETURN

Select this to return to SPK. SETTING menu.

Notes:

- Keep the following comment in mind as reference when adjusting speaker settings.
 - If the size of the cone speaker unit built in your speaker is greater than 12 cm, select "LARGE," and if it is smaller than 12 cm, select "SMALL."
- If you have selected "SMALL" for the front speakers, you cannot select "LARGE" for the center and rear speakers.
- If you have selected "NONE" for subwoofer, you cannot select "SMALL" for the front speakers.
- You can take advantage of the speaker diagrams on the left part of the SPK. SETTING menu to set the speaker.
 - The speaker diagram for the selected speaker is highlighted.
 - The size of the speaker diagram is changed according to your setting.

Speaker diagrams



● LEVEL

Select this to enter the LEVEL submenu.



CENTER SPEAKER, LEFT REAR SPEAKER, RIGHT REAR SPEAKER, and SUB WOOFER

Adjust the speaker output level within the range of -10 dB to +10 dB for each speaker in 1 step interval.

TEST TONE

Select this to start or stop test tone.

RETURN

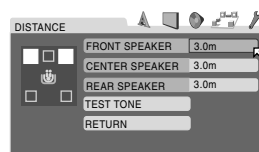
Select this to return to SPK. SETTING menu.

Notes:

- When "NONE" is selected for the center speaker, rear speakers and/or subwoofer on the SIZE menu, "-" appears instead of the current setting. In this case, you cannot adjust the output level of those speakers.
- You can adjust the output level for center speaker and/or rear speakers only when one of proper Surround modes are activated (see page 27).
- When "NONE" is selected for the center and/or rear speakers, the test tone does not come out of those speakers.

● DISTANCE

Select this to enter the DISTANCE submenu.



FRONT SPEAKER, CENTER SPEAKER, and REAR SPEAKER

For each speaker, set the distance from the listening point within the range of 0.3 m to 9.0 m, in 0.3 m interval.

TEST TONE

Select this to start or stop test tone.

RETURN

Select this to return to SPK. SETTING menu.

Notes:

- When "NONE" is selected for the center speaker and rear speakers on the SIZE menu, "-" appears instead of the current setting. In this case, you cannot adjust the speaker distance of those speakers.
- When "NONE" is selected for the center speaker and/or rear speakers on the SIZE menu, the test tone does not come out of those speakers.

● CROSS OVER

When you use a small speaker in any position, this unit automatically reallocates the bass sound elements assigned to the small speaker to the large speakers.

To use this function properly, set this crossover frequency level according to the size of the smallest speaker connected.

- If you have selected “LRG (large)” or “LARGE” for all speakers, this function will not take effect.

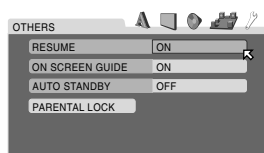
Select one of the following settings:

200Hz	: Select this frequency when the cone speaker unit built in the speaker is less than 5 cm.
150Hz	: Select this frequency when the cone speaker unit built in the speaker is about 6 cm.
120Hz	: Select this frequency when the cone speaker unit built in the speaker is about 8 cm.
100Hz	: Select this frequency when the cone speaker unit built in the speaker is about 10 cm.
80Hz	: Select this frequency when the cone speaker unit built in the speaker is about 12 cm.

● RETURN TO INITIAL

Select this to reset all speaker settings to the initial settings.

■ OTHERS menu



● RESUME

You can activate or deactivate the resume play function of the built-in DVD player.

Select one of the following settings:

ON	: Select this to activate this function.
OFF	: Select this to deactivate it.

● ON SCREEN GUIDE

You can activate or deactivate the following on-screen guide icons:

- For multi-view angles :
- For plural subtitles :
- For plural audio languages :
- For playback status : , , , , etc.

The on-screen guide icons appear on the TV at the beginning of the playback with this function turned on.

When recording the picture with VCR, set “OFF” to avoid recording the indications above on your video tape.

- The choice menu and on-screen bar can be recorded even though this function is set to “OFF.”

Select one of the following settings:

ON	: Select this to activate this function.
OFF	: Select this to deactivate it.

- Subtitles (see page 35) and the information for zooming in (see pages 39 and 40) appear on the display even though this setting is “OFF.”

● AUTO STANDBY

When the playback of the disc on the built-in DVD player ends and no operation is done for more than the selected time, the unit is turned off automatically.

- This function takes effect only when DVD is selected as the source.

Select one of the following settings:

60	: Turns off the unit if no operation is done within 60 minutes.
30	: Turns off the unit if no operation is done within 30 minutes.
OFF	: Select this to deactivate it.

- If Sleep Timer (see page 12) and Auto Standby are used at a time, one with the early shut-off time will turn off the unit.

● PARENTAL LOCK

You can restrict playback of DVD VIDEO containing violent scenes and those not suitable for your family members.

- You can select “PARENTAL LOCK” only before playback.

Select this to enter the PARENTAL LOCK submenu.
(See pages 53 and 54.)

Choice Menu Operations

Restricting Playback by Parental Lock

You can restrict playback of DVD VIDEO containing violent scenes and those not suitable for your family members. Nobody can play such a disc unless this function is canceled.

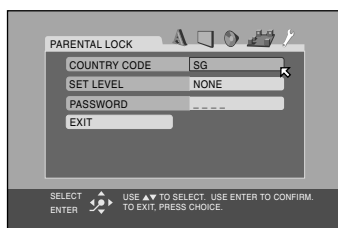
- This setting takes effect only for the DVD VIDEO containing the Parental Lock level information—Level 1 (most restrictive) to Level 8 (least restrictive).
- You can set the Parental Lock only while playback is stopped.

■ Setting Parental Lock

1 Press **CHOICE**, then press cursor **▶** (or **◀**) to display the **OTHERS** menu.

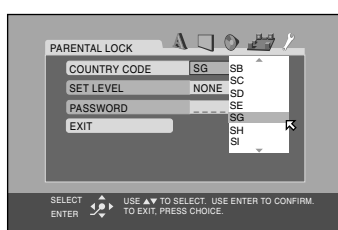
2 Press cursor **▼** (or **▲**) repeatedly to move **↖** to “**PARENTAL LOCK**,” then press **ENTER**.

The **PARENTAL LOCK** submenu appears on the TV.



3 Press cursor **▼** (or **▲**) repeatedly to move **↖** to “**COUNTRY CODE**,” then press **ENTER**.

The submenu for setting the country code appears.



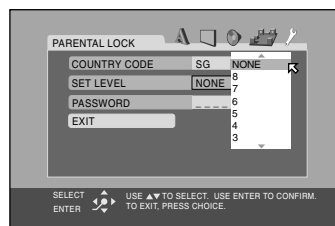
4 Press cursor **▼** (or **▲**) repeatedly to select the country code, then press **ENTER**.

See “Country/Area codes list for Parental Lock” on page 55.

↖ moves to “**SET LEVEL**.”

5 Press **ENTER**.

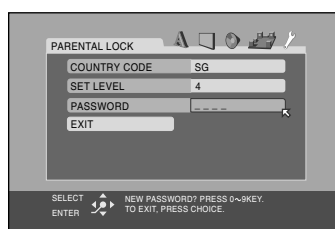
The pop-up window for setting level appears.



6 Press cursor **▼** (or **▲**) repeatedly to select the level of restriction, then press **ENTER**.

↖ moves to “**PASSWORD**.”

- The smaller the value of level is, the more restrictive the Parental Lock level is.
- Select “**NONE**” to cancel this function.



7 Press the number buttons (0–9) to enter a four digit number as your password, then press **ENTER**.

↖ moves to “**EXIT**.”

8 Press **ENTER**.

OTHERS menu resumes.

To return to the normal screen

Press **CHOICE**.

Note:

- Remember your password or make a note of it. You need to enter your password to change the setting or release the lock. To change the setting, see page 54.

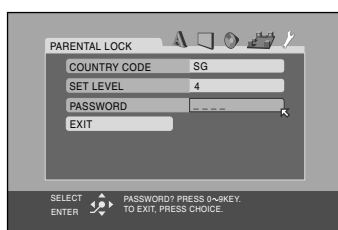
■ Changing the setting of Parental Lock

1 Press **CHOICE**, then press cursor **▶** (or **◀**) to display the **OTHERS** menu.

2 Press cursor **▼** (or **▲**) repeatedly to move **↔** to **“PARENTAL LOCK,”** then press **ENTER**.

The **PARENTAL LOCK** submenu appears on the TV.

- You can only move **↔** to **“PASSWORD”** or to **“EXIT”** before you enter your password.



3 Press the number buttons (0–9) to enter your password, then press **ENTER**.

- If you enter a wrong password, **“WRONG! RETRY... PRESS 0~9KEY”** appears on the **PARENTAL LOCK** submenu. You cannot go to next steps before you enter the correct password.

4 Press cursor **▼** (or **▲**) repeatedly to move **↔** to the item you want to change, then press **ENTER**.

5 Press cursor **▼** (or **▲**) repeatedly to change the setting, then press **ENTER**.

6 Press the number buttons (0–9) to enter your password, then press **ENTER**.

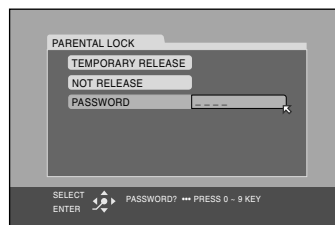
The new setting is stored.

Notes:

- You cannot set the Parental Lock before you set your password.
- If you exit from the **PARENTAL LOCK** submenu before setting your password in step **6**, the new country code and parental level will not become effective, and the old country code and parental level remain effective.
- When you enter wrong passwords more than three times, **↔** moves to **“EXIT”** automatically and cursor **▼** (or **▲**) does not work. Press **ENTER** to exit from the **PARENTAL LOCK** submenu, then start from step **1** again.
- If you forget your password, enter **“8888.”**

■ Releasing Parental Lock temporarily

When you set a strict parental level, some discs may not be played back at all. When you load such a disc and try to play it, the following display appears on the TV. You can release Parental Lock temporarily.



1 Press cursor **▼** (or **▲**) repeatedly to move **↔** to **“TEMPORARY RELEASE,”** then press **ENTER**.

↔ moves to **“PASSWORD.”**

- If you do not want to release Parental Lock temporarily, select **“NOT RELEASE”** by pressing cursor **▼** (or **▲**), then press **ENTER**. To eject the disc, press **▲**.

2 Press number buttons (0–9) to enter your password, then press **ENTER**.

Playback starts.

- If you enter a wrong password, **“WRONG! RETRY... PRESS 0~9KEY”** appears on the **PARENTAL LOCK** submenu. You cannot play the disc before you enter the correct password.

Note:

- When you enter wrong passwords more than three times, **↔** moves to **“NOT RELEASE”** automatically and cursor **▼** (or **▲**) does not work. Press **▲** to remove the disc.

Choice Menu Operations

Country/Area codes list for Parental Lock

AD	Andorra	ER	Eritrea	LA	Lao People's Democratic Republic	RW	Rwanda
AE	United Arab Emirates	ES	Spain			SA	Saudi Arabia
AF	Afghanistan	ET	Ethiopia	LB	Lebanon	SB	Solomon Islands
AG	Antigua and Barbuda	FI	Finland	LC	Saint Lucia	SC	Seychelles
AI	Anguilla	FJ	Fiji	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan
AL	Albania	FK	Falkland Islands (Malvinas)	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden
AM	Armenia	FM	Micronesia (Federated States of)	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore
AN	Netherlands Antilles			LS	Lesotho	SH	Saint Helena
AO	Angola	FO	Faroe Islands	LT	Lithuania	SI	Slovenia
AQ	Antarctica	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SJ	Svalbard and Jan Mayen
AR	Argentina	FX	France, Metropolitan	LV	Latvia	SK	Slovakia
AS	American Samoa	GA	Gabon	LY	Libyan Arab Jamahiriya	SL	Sierra Leone
AT	Austria	GB	United Kingdom	MA	Morocco	SM	San Marino
AU	Australia	GD	Grenada	MC	Monaco	SN	Senegal
AW	Aruba	GE	Georgia	MD	Moldova, Republic of	SO	Somalia
AZ	Azerbaijan	GF	French Guiana	MG	Madagascar	SR	Suriname
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GH	Ghana	MH	Marshall Islands	ST	Sao Tome and Principe
BB	Barbados	GI	Gibraltar	ML	Mali	SV	El Salvador
BD	Bangladesh	GL	Greenland	MM	Myanmar	SY	Syrian Arab Republic
BE	Belgium	GM	Gambia	MN	Mongolia	SZ	Swaziland
BF	Burkina Faso	GN	Guinea	MO	Macau	TC	Turks and Caicos Islands
BG	Bulgaria	GP	Guadeloupe	MP	Northern Mariana Islands	TD	Chad
BH	Bahrain	GQ	Equatorial Guinea	MQ	Martinique	TF	French Southern Territories
BI	Burundi	GR	Greece	MR	Mauritania	TG	Togo
BJ	Benin	GS	South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands	MS	Montserrat	TH	Thailand Code Language
BM	Bermuda			MT	Malta	TJ	Tajikistan
BN	Brunei Darussalam	GT	Guatemala	MU	Mauritius	TK	Tokelau
BO	Bolivia	GU	Guam	MV	Maldives	TM	Turkmenistan
BR	Brazil	GW	Guinea-Bissau	MW	Malawi	TN	Tunisia
BS	Bahamas	GY	Guyana	MX	Mexico	TO	Tonga
BT	Bhutan	HK	Hong Kong	MY	Malaysia	TP	East Timor
BV	Bouvet Island	HM	Heard Island and McDonald Islands	MZ	Mozambique	TR	Turkey
BW	Botswana			NA	Namibia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BY	Belarus	HN	Honduras	NC	New Caledonia	TV	Tuvalu
BZ	Belize	HR	Croatia	NE	Niger	TW	Taiwan
CA	Canada	HT	Haiti	NF	Norfolk Island	TZ	Tanzania, United Republic of
CC	Cocos (Keeling) Islands	HU	Hungary	NG	Nigeria		
CF	Central African Republic	ID	Indonesia	NI	Nicaragua	UA	Ukraine
CG	Congo	IE	Ireland	NL	Netherlands	UG	Uganda
CH	Switzerland	IL	Israel	NO	Norway	UM	United States Minor Outlying Islands
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	IN	India	NP	Nepal		
CK	Cook Islands	IO	British Indian Ocean Territory	NR	Nauru	US	United States
CL	Chile			NU	Niue	UY	Uruguay
CM	Cameroon	IQ	Iraq	NZ	New Zealand	UZ	Uzbekistan
CN	China	IR	Iran (Islamic Republic of)	OM	Oman	VA	Vatican City State (Holy See)
CO	Colombia	IS	Iceland	PA	Panama		
CR	Costa Rica	IT	Italy	PE	Peru	VC	Saint Vincent and the Grenadines
CU	Cuba	JM	Jamaica	PF	French Polynesia		
CV	Cape Verde	JO	Jordan	PG	Papua New Guinea	VE	Venezuela
CX	Christmas Island	JP	Japan	PH	Philippines	VG	Virgin Islands (British)
CY	Cyprus	KE	Kenya	PK	Pakistan	VI	Virgin Islands (U.S.)
CZ	Czech Republic	KG	Kyrgyzstan	PL	Poland	VN	Viet Nam
DE	Germany	KH	Kambodia	PM	Saint Pierre and Miquelon	VU	Vanuatu
DJ	Djibouti	KI	Kiribati	PN	Pitcairn	WF	Wallis and Futuna Islands
DK	Denmark	KM	Comoros	PR	Puerto Rico	WS	Samoa
DM	Dominica	KN	Saint Kitts and Nevis	PT	Portugal	YE	Yemen
DO	Dominican Republic	KP	Korea, Democratic People's Republic of	PW	Palau	YT	Mayotte
DZ	Algeria			PY	Paraguay	YU	Yugoslavia
EC	Ecuador	KR	Korea, Republic of	QA	Qatar	ZA	South Africa
EE	Estonia	KW	Kuwait	RE	Réunion	ZM	Zambia
EG	Egypt	KY	Cayman Islands	RO	Romania	ZR	Zaire
EH	Western Sahara	KZ	Kazakhstan	RU	Russian Federation	ZW	Zimbabwe

Aspect ratio

The ratio of vertical and horizontal sizes of a displayed image. The horizontal vs. vertical ratio of conventional TVs is 4:3 and that of wide-screen TVs is 16:9.

Chapter

The smallest division on DVD VIDEO. It is a division of a title and similar to a track for CD or VCD.

Component video signal

A video signal system where parts of information necessary for reproducing image signal comprised of the three primary colors of light are transmitted via separate signal lines. Types of signal, such as R/G/B, Y/Pb/Pr, etc., are available.

Composite video signal

A video signal comprised of three kinds of signals combined: an image signal made up of luminance and chrominance signals using the frequency multiplication technique, burst signal providing the basis for color reproduction, and synchronization signal.

Disc menu

A screen display prepared for allowing selection of images, sounds, subtitles, multi-angle, etc. recorded on DVD VIDEO.

Interlaced scanning

In the conventional video system, a picture is shown on the display monitor in two halves. The Interlaced scanning system places lines of the second half of the picture in-between lines of the first half of the picture.

JPEG

A still-picture data compression system proposed by the Joint Photographic Expert Group, which features little distortion in image quality in spite of its high compression ratio.

Letter box

A method of displaying wide images like movies in on a 4:3 TV screen with no part of the image deleted by placing black bands on the top and bottom of the screen. This name has derived from the screen form looking literally like a letter box.

Linear PCM (PCM: Pulse Code Modulation)

A system for converting analog sound signal to digital signal for later processing with no data compression used in conversion.

MP3

A file format with a sound data compression system. "MP3" is the abbreviation of Motion Picture Experts Group 1 (or MPEG-1) Audio Layer 3. By using MP3 format, one CD-R or CD-RW can contain about 10 times as much data volume as a regular CD can.

Multi-angle

By recording multiple scenes progressing at the same time in a single title, the user can select view angles. This feature is called the multi-angle function.

Multichannel

DVD VIDEO has been designed to have each soundtrack constitute one sound field. Multichannel refers to a structure of sound tracks having three or more channels.

Multilanguage

When a title is created to cope with multiple languages, it is generally called a multilanguage title.

Parental Lock

A feature of this system to automatically determine whether or not to reproduce particular DVD VIDEO software by comparing its parental level (a measure of undesirability of scenes, etc. from educational viewpoint) set for the software beforehand with that set on this system by the user; if the software's level is less restrictive than the user-set level, it will be reproduced.

Playback control (PBC)

Refers to the signal recorded on VCD/SVCD for controlling reproduction. By using menu screens recorded on VCD/SVCD that supports PBC, you can enjoy interactive-type software as well as software having a search function.

Progressive scanning

By progressive scanning, all the horizontal lines of a picture are displayed at one time as a single frame. This system can convert the interlaced video from DVD VIDEO into progressive format for connection to a progressive TV. It dramatically increases the vertical resolution.

Region code

A system for allowing discs to be played back only in the regions designated beforehand. All the countries in the world are divided into six regions and each region is identified by a specified region code (or region number). If the region code of a disc matches that of a player, the player can play back the disc.

Sampling frequency

Frequency of sampling data when analog data is converted to digital data. Sampling frequency numerically represents how many times the original analog signal is sampled per second.

Surround

A system for creating three-dimensional sound fields full of realism by arranging multiple speakers around the listener.

Transfer rate

The rate of transferring digital data. Usually the measure is in bit per second (bps). The DVD system applies a variable transfer rate system for high efficiency.

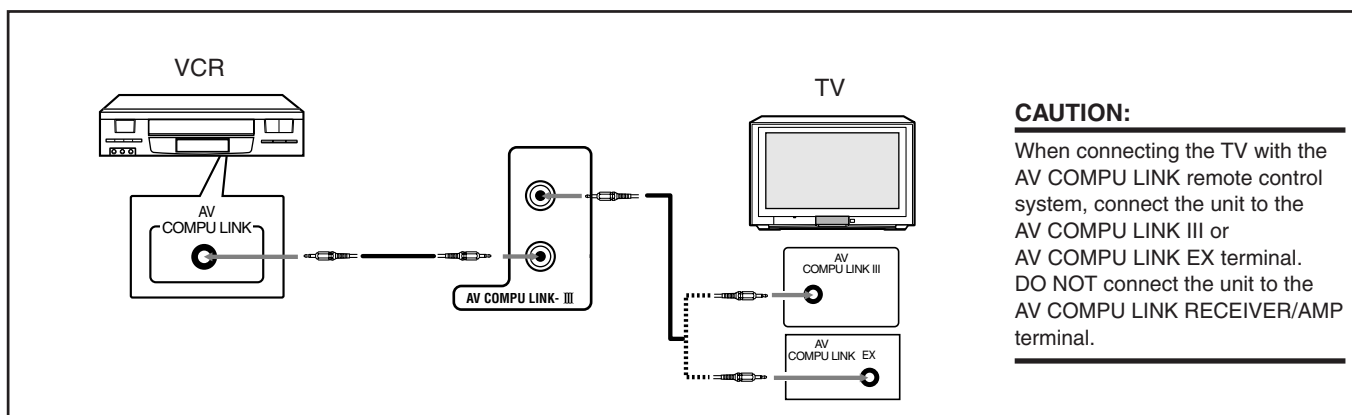
AV COMPU LINK Remote Control System

The AV COMPU LINK remote control system allows you to operate JVC's video components (TV and VCR) through the unit.

This unit is equipped with the AV COMPU LINK-III, which has added a function to operate JVC's video components through the video components terminals. To use this remote control system, you need to connect the video components you want to operate, following the diagrams below and the procedures on page 58.

- Refer also to the manuals supplied with your video components.

CONNECTIONS 1: AV COMPU LINK Connection



Notes:

- When connecting the unit and a TV with the AV COMPU LINK EX terminal by using a component video cable, you cannot use Automatic Selection of TV's Input Mode (see page 58).
- When connecting the VCR only to this unit, connect it directly to the unit using cables with the monaural mini-plugs.

CONNECTIONS 2: Video Cable Connection

This unit is equipped with three types of the video terminals—composite video, S-video, and component video, and the signals coming into this unit through one type of video terminals can output only through the terminal of the same type. So you need to connect the VCR and TV to this unit using one of the following two ways—CASE 1 or 2:

- **When using the AV COMPU LINK remote control system, set the component video input correctly** (see “Video output mode” on page 22); otherwise, the correct input for this unit will not be selected on the TV.

CASE 1	When connecting the source equipment to the unit through the S-video terminals, connect this unit to the TV's Video Input 1 terminal using S-video cables.
CASE 2	When connecting the source equipment to the unit through the composite video terminals, connect this unit to the TV's Video Input 2 terminal (composite video input) using composite video cables.
CASE 3	When setting the video output mode of the built-in DVD player to “component,” connect this unit to the TV's Video Input 2 terminals (component video input) using component video cables.

1. If you have already plugged your VCR, TV, and this unit into the AC outlets, unplug their AC power cords first.
2. Connect your VCR, TV, and this unit following “CONNECTIONS 1” on the previous page, using the cables with the monaural mini-plugs (not supplied).
3. Connect the audio input/output jacks on VCR, TV, and this unit using the audio cords.
 - See pages 7 to 9.
4. Connect the video input/output jacks on VCR, TV and this unit following “CONNECTIONS 2” on the previous page, using the composite video cord, with S-video plug or with component video plugs.
5. Plug the AC power cords of the components into the AC outlets.
6. When turning on the TV for the first time after the AV COMPU LINK connection, turn the TV volume to the minimum using the TV volume control on the TV.
7. Turn on other connected components first, then turn on this unit.
 - When turning on the VCR, use the remote control supplied with this unit—press /STANDBY/ON VCR.

The AV COMPU LINK remote control system allows you to use the five basic functions listed below.

Remote Control of the TV and VCR Using This Remote Control

For details, see page 60 .

- Aim the remote control directly at the remote sensor on each target component.

One-Touch Video Play

Simply by inserting a video cassette without its safety tab into the VCR, you can enjoy the video playback without setting other switches manually. The unit automatically turns on and changes the source to VCR.

The TV automatically turns on and changes the input mode to the appropriate position so that you can view the playback picture. When you insert a video cassette with its safety tab, press the play () button on the VCR or on the remote control. You can get the same result.

One-Touch DVD Play

Simply by starting playback on the built-in DVD player, you can enjoy the playback without setting other switches manually. The TV automatically turns on and changes the input mode to the appropriate position so that you can view the playback picture.

Automatic Selection of TV's Input Mode

- When you select TV as the source to play on the unit, the TV automatically changes the input mode to the TV tuner so that you can watch TV.
- When you select DVD, VCR, or DBS as the source to play on the unit, the TV automatically changes the input mode to the appropriate position so that you can view the playback picture.

Notes:

- When connecting a TV with the AV COMPU LINK EX terminal to this unit, you cannot use a component video cable (as CASE 3 on the previous page).
- When you select TV as the source on the unit, you cannot see the menu on the TV screen since the AV COMPU LINK remote control system automatically changes the TV's input mode to the TV tuner. If you do not mind stopping listening to the TV sounds, you can then show the on-screen menu after changing the TV's input mode to the appropriate position the unit is connected to.

Automatic Power On/Off

The TV and VCR turn on and off along with the unit.

When you turn on the unit;

- If the previously selected source is VCR, the TV and VCR will turn on automatically.
- If the previously selected source is TV or DVD, only the TV will turn on automatically.

When you turn off the unit, the TV and VCR will turn off.

Note:

- If you turn off the unit while recording on the VCR, the VCR will not turn off, but continue recording.

Operating JVC's Audio/Video Components

You can operate JVC's audio and video components with this unit's remote control, since control signals for JVC's components are preset in the remote control.

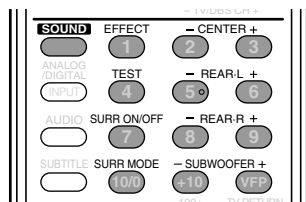
Operating Audio Components

To operate JVC's audio components using this remote control

- Aim the remote control directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- To operate a source with the remote control, the source must be selected using the source selecting buttons on the remote control.
- Refer also to the manuals supplied with your components.

Sound control section (Amplifier)

After pressing SOUND, you can perform the following operations:



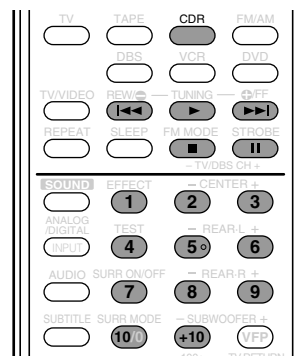
- SURR ON/OFF** : Turns on or off the Surround modes—Dolby Digital, DTS Digital Surround, and Dolby Pro Logic II.
- SURR MODE** : Selects the Surround modes.
- TEST** : Turns on or off the test tone output.
- CENTER + or -** : Adjusts the center speaker channel output level.
- REAR•L + or -** : Adjusts the left rear speaker channel output level.
- REAR•R + or -** : Adjusts the right rear speaker channel output level.
- SUBWOOFER + or -** : Adjusts subwoofer channel output level.
- EFFECT** : Selects the effect level.

Note:

- After adjusting sounds, press the source selecting button to operate your target source by using number buttons; otherwise, number buttons cannot be used for operating your target source.

CD recorder

After pressing CDR, you can perform the following operations on a CD player and a CD recorder:



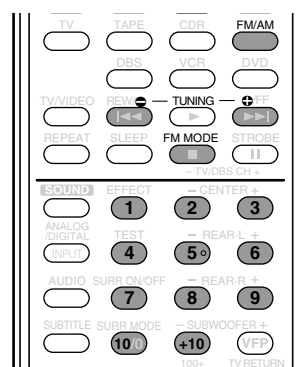
- ▶** : Starts playing.
- ◀◀** : Returns to the beginning of the current (or previous) track.
- ▶▶** : Skips to the beginning of the next track.
- : Stops playing.
- ||** : Pauses playing. To release it, press ▶.
- 1 - 10, +10** : Selects a track number directly.
For track number 5, press 5.
For track number 15, press +10, then 5.
For track number 20, press +10, then 10.
For track number 30, press +10, +10, then 10.

Note:

- When you start recording on the CD recorder, use the buttons on the CD recorder itself or on the remote control supplied with it.

Tuner

You can always perform the following operations:



- FM/AM** : Tunes into the last selected FM or AM station.
- Each time you press the button, the band changes between FM and AM alternately.

After pressing FM/AM, you can perform the following operations on a tuner:

- 1 - 10, +10** : Selects a preset channel number directly.
For channel number 5, press 5.
For channel number 15, press +10, then 5.
For channel number 20, press +10, then 10.

- TUNING + or -** : Tunes into stations.
- FM MODE** : Changes the FM reception mode.

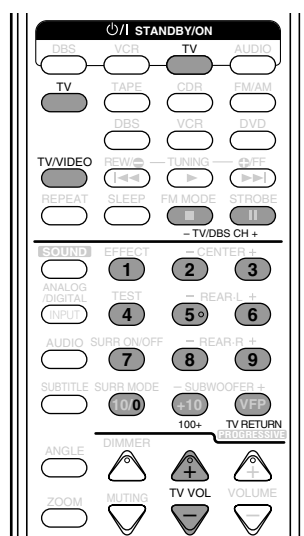
Operating Video Components

To operate JVC's video components using this remote control

- You need to connect JVC's video components through the AV COMPU LINK-III jacks (see page 57) in addition to the audio/video connections (see pages 7 to 10).
- Some JVC's VCRs can accept two types of the control signals—remote codes "A" and "B." Before using this remote control, make sure that the remote control code of the connected VCR is set to code "A."
- To operate the video component(s) using the remote control, aim the remote control directly at the remote sensor on each component, not on this unit.

TV

You can always perform the following operations:



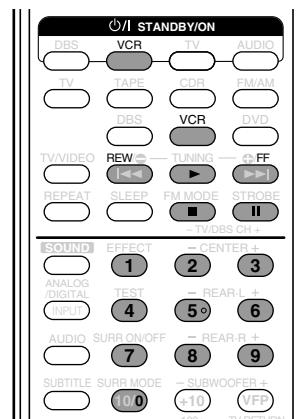
- TV/STANDBY/ON TV** : Turns on or off the TV.
TV VOL + or - : Adjusts the volume.
TV/VIDEO : Sets the input mode (either TV or VIDEO).

After pressing TV, you can perform the following operations on a TV:

- TV/DBS CH + or -** : Changes the channels.
1 - 9, 0, 100+ : Selects the channels.
 For channel number 5, press 5.
 For channel number 10, press 1, then 0.
 For channel number 23, press 2, then 3.
 For channel number 135, press 100+, 3, then 5.
TV RETURN : Alternates between the previously selected channel and the current channel.

VCR

You can always perform the following operations:



- TV/STANDBY/ON VCR** : Turns on or off the VCR.

After pressing VCR, you can perform the following operations on a VCR:

- 1 - 9, 0** : Selects the TV channels on a VCR.
 For channel number 5, press 5.
 For channel number 10, press 1, then 0.
 For channel number 23, press 2, then 3.
▶ : Starts playing.
REW : Rewinds a tape.
FF : Fast-winds a tape.
■ : Stops operations.
II : Pauses playing. To release it, press ▶.

Operating Other Manufacturers' Equipment

This remote control supplied with the unit can transmit control signals for other manufacturers' TVs, DBS tuners, and VCRs. By changing the transmittable signals from preset ones to other manufacturers', you can operate other manufacturers' components using this remote control.

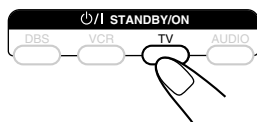
Changing the Preset Signal Codes

To operate other manufacturers' equipment using this remote control

- Aim the remote control directly at the remote sensor on each equipment.
- To operate a source with the remote control, the source must be selected using source selecting buttons on the remote control.
- Refer also to the manuals supplied with your equipment.

■ To change the transmittable signals for operating other manufacturers' TV

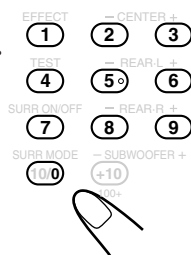
1. Press and hold  TV.



2. Press TV.



3. Enter the manufacturer's code using the number buttons (1–9, 0).
See the right to find the code.



4. Release  TV.

You can perform the following operations on the TV:

-  TV : Turns on or off the TV.
 : Adjusts the volume.
 : Sets the input mode (either TV or VIDEO).

After pressing TV, you can perform the following operations on a TV:

-  : Changes the channels.
 : Selects the channels.
 For channel number 5, press 5.
 For channel number 10, press 1, then 0.
 For channel number 23, press 2, then 3.
 For channel number 135, press 100+, 3, then 5.

TV RETURN will function as the ENTER button if your equipment requires pressing ENTER after selecting a channel number.

Notes:

- Refer also to the manual supplied with your TV.
- All the functions listed on the left may not be assigned to the buttons for some TVs.
- If you cannot change the channels of some TVs by pressing the number buttons, press TV/DBS CH + or – for changing the channels.

5. Try to operate your TV by pressing

TV.

When your TV turns on or off, you have entered the correct code.

If there are more than one code listed for your brand of TV, try each one until the correct one is entered.

Manufactures' codes for TV

Manufacturer	Codes
JVC	00*, 02, 13, 14, 47, 74
Akai	01, 02
Blaupunkt	03, 04
Fisher	01, 05
Grundig	03, 06, 07
Hitachi	08 – 10, 49
Iraddio	02
Itt/Nokia	11, 12
Loewe	06, 15, 16
Magnavox	08, 17, 49
Mets	50 – 53
Mitsubishi	08, 18 – 20
Mivar	21
Nordmende	22, 23
Okano	15
Panasonic	24 – 27, 76
Philips	15, 17, 28, 75
Quelle	52 – 67
RCA/PROSC	08, 24, 29 – 31, 48
SABA	32, 33, 68 – 70
Samsung	06, 08, 16, 34, 35, 49
Sanyo	01, 05
Schneider	02, 15, 36
Sharp	37, 38, 77
Sony	39
Telefunken	40 – 42, 69
Thomson	71, 72
Toshiba	37, 43, 44
Zenith	45, 46

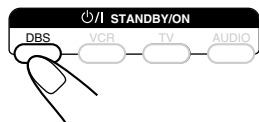
*"00" is the initial JVC code.

Note:

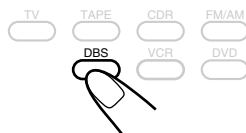
- Manufacturers' codes are subject to change without notice. If they are changed, this remote control cannot operate the equipment.

■ To change the transmittable signals for operating other manufacturers' DBS tuner

1. Press and hold /STANDBY/ON DBS.

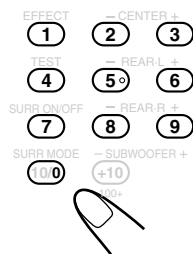


2. Press DBS.



3. Enter manufacturer's code using the number buttons (1–9, 0).

See to the right to find the code.



4. Release /STANDBY/ON DBS.

You can turn on and off the DBS tuner:

/STANDBY/ON DBS : Turns on or off the DBS tuner.

After pressing DBS, you can perform the following operations on a DBS tuner:

TV/DBS CH + or – : Changes the channels.

1 – 9, 0, 100+ : Selects the channels.

For channel number 5, press 5.

For channel number 10, press 1, then 0.

For channel number 23, press 2, then 3.

For channel number 135, press 100+, 3, then 5.

TV RETURN will function as the ENTER button if your equipment requires pressing ENTER after selecting a channel number.

Note:

- Refer also to the manual supplied with your DBS tuner.

5. Try to operate your DBS tuner by pressing /STANDBY/ON DBS.

When your DBS tuner turns on or off, you have entered the correct code.

If there are more than one code listed for your brand of DBS tuner, try each one until the correct one is entered.

Manufactures' codes for DBS tuner

Manufacturer	Codes
JVC	56, 57*, 67
Amstrad	43 – 49
Blaupunkt	30
Echostar	50, 51, 67
General Instrument	29
Goldstar	31
Grundig	32, 33
Hamlin/Re	01 – 05
Hirshmann	48, 52 – 55
Instrument	68
Ilt/Nokia	34
Jerrold/G	06 – 14
Kathrein	52, 58 – 63
NEC	35, 36
Oak	15 – 17
Orbitech	48
Panasonic	18 – 20
Philips	37, 38
Pioneer	21, 22
RCA	65
Samsung	39, 40
Schwaiger	61, 64
Scientiff	23 – 25
Siemens	41, 42
Sony	66
Technisat	48
Tocom	26
Zenith	27, 28

*"57" is the initial JVC code.

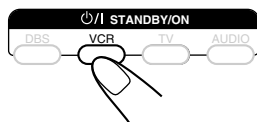
Note:

- Manufacturers' codes are subject to change without notice. If they are changed, this remote control cannot operate the equipment.

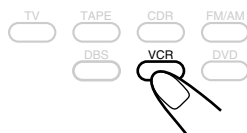
Operating Other Manufacturers' Equipment

■ To change the transmittable signals for operating other manufacturers' VCR

1. Press and hold **⏻/STANDBY/ON VCR**.

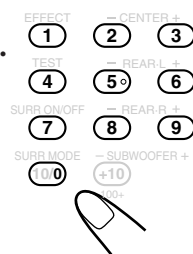


2. Press **VCR**.



3. Enter the manufacturer's code using the number buttons (1–9, 0).

See the right to find the code.



4. Release **⏻/STANDBY/ON VCR**.

You can turn on and off the VCR:

⏻/STANDBY/ON VCR : Turns on or off the VCR.

After pressing VCR, you can perform the following operations on a VCR:

1 – 9, 0 : Selects the TV channels on a VCR.

For channel number 5, press 5.

For channel number 10, press 1, then 0.

For channel number 23, press 2, then 3.

TV RETURN will function as the ENTER button if your equipment requires pressing ENTER after selecting a channel number.

▶ : Starts playing.

REW : Rewinds a tape.

FF : Fast-winds a tape.

■ : Stops operations.

⏸ : Pauses playing. To release it, press ▶.

Note:

- Refer also to the manual supplied with your VCR.

Manufactures' codes for VCR

Manufacturer	Codes
JVC	00*, 26 – 29, 58
Aiwa	01, 02
Bell & Howell	03
Blaupunkt	04, 05
CGM	06, 07
Emerson	08, 10 – 12, 64, 65
Fisher	03, 14 – 17
Funai	01
GE	18 – 20
Goldstar	07
Goodmans	13, 21
Grundig	06, 22
Hitachi	18, 23 – 25, 66
Loewe	07, 21
Magnavox	04, 19, 24
Mitsubishi	30 – 35
NEC	26, 27
Nokia	03, 36
Nordmende	38
Orion	09
Panasonic	19, 24, 39, 40
Philips	04, 19, 21, 24, 41, 42
Phonola	21
RCA/PROSC	04, 18, 19, 23, 24, 43 – 45
SABA	38, 46
Samsung	45, 47, 59, 61 – 63
Sanyo	03, 48, 49
Sharp	37, 50
Siemens	03, 51
Sony	52 – 54
Telefunken	55, 60
Toshiba	43, 44
Zenith	56, 57

*"00" is the initial JVC code.

Note:

- Manufacturers' codes are subject to change without notice. If they are changed, this remote control cannot operate the equipment.

5. Try to operate your VCR by pressing

⏻/STANDBY/ON VCR.

When your VCR turns on or off, you have entered the correct code.

If there are more than one code listed for your brand of VCR, try each one until the correct one is entered.

Maintenance

To get the best performance of the system, keep your discs and mechanism clean.

General Notes

In general, you will have the best performance by keeping your discs and mechanism clean.

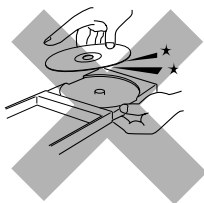
- Store discs in their cases, and keep them in cabinets or on shelves.

Handling Discs

- Remove the disc from its case by holding it at the edge while pressing the center hole lightly.
- Do not touch the shiny surface of the disc, or bend the disc.
- Put the disc back in its case after use to prevent warping.



- Be careful not to scratch the surface of the disc when placing it back in its case.
- Avoid exposure to direct sunlight, temperature extremes, and moisture.



Cleaning Discs

Wipe the disc with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.



DO NOT use any solvent—such as conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, or benzine—to clean the disc.

Cleaning the Unit

- Stains on the unit
Should be wiped off with a soft cloth. If the unit is heavily stained, wipe it with a cloth soaked in water-diluted neutral detergent and wrung well, then wipe clean with a dry cloth.
- Since the unit may deteriorate in quality, become damaged or get its paint peeled off, be careful about the following.
 - DO NOT wipe it with a hard cloth.
 - DO NOT wipe it strong.
 - DO NOT wipe it with thinner or benzine.
 - DO NOT apply any volatile substances such as insecticides to it.
 - DO NOT allow any rubber or plastic to remain in contact with it for a long time.

Troubleshooting

Use this chart to help you solve daily operational problems. If there is any problem you cannot solve, contact your dealer.

■ General

PROBLEM	POSSIBLE CAUSE	SOLUTION
The power does not come on.	The power cord is not plugged in.	Plug the power cord into an AC outlet.
No sound from speakers.	Speaker signal cables are not connected.	Check speaker wiring and reconnect if necessary.
	The audio cable is not connected properly.	Connect the cord properly (see pages 7 to 10).
	An incorrect source is selected.	Select the correct source.
	Muting is activated.	Press MUTING to cancel the muting.
	An incorrect input mode (analog or digital) is selected.	Select the correct input mode (analog or digital).
Sound from one speaker only.	Connections are incorrect.	Check connections.
	The balance is set to one extreme.	Adjust the balance properly (see pages 24 or 50).
“OVERLOAD” starts flashing on the display.	Speakers are overloaded because of high volume.	1. Press ⏻/STANDBY/ON on the front panel to turn off the unit. 2. Stop the playback source. 3. Turn on the unit again, and adjust the volume.
	Speakers are overloaded because of short circuit of speaker terminals.	Press ⏻/STANDBY/ON on the front panel to turn off the unit, then check the speaker wiring. If “OVERLOAD” does not disappear, unplug the AC power cord, then plug it back again. If speaker wiring is not short-circuited, contact your dealer.
The STANDBY lamp lights up after turning on the power, but soon the unit turns off (into standby mode).	The unit is overloaded because of a high voltage.	Press ⏻/STANDBY/ON on the front panel to turn off the unit. After unplugging the power cord, consult your dealer.
Remote control does not operate as you intend.	The remote control is not ready for your intended operation.	Press SOUND (see page 24) or a source selecting button first, then press the buttons you want to use.
Remote control does not work.	It is too far from the unit, or is not facing the unit.	Come closer to the unit. Operate the remote control within 7 m from the unit.
	There is an obstruction hiding the remote sensor on the unit.	Remove the obstruction.
	The remote control is not aimed at the remote sensor on the unit or components.	Aim the remote control at the remote sensor on each component you want to operate.
	The batteries have been inserted into the wrong way round (+/-).	Insert the batteries correctly.
	Batteries are weak.	Replace batteries.
	The remote control signals are not set correctly.	Enter the correct manufacturers' code (see pages 61 to 63).

■ For DVD Player

PROBLEM	POSSIBLE CAUSE	SOLUTION
No picture is displayed on the TV.	The video cord is not connected correctly.	Connect the cord correctly (see page 8).
	TV input selection is incorrect.	Select the correct input on the TV.
	The disc is not playable.	Replace the disc (see page 29).
No picture is displayed on the TV screen, the picture is blurred, or the picture is divided into two parts.	The scanning mode is set to "PROGRESSIVE" though the unit is connected to the TV which does not support the progressive video input, such as a conventional TV.	Change the scanning mode to "INTERLACE" (see page 14).
	The color system is not set correctly.	Change the color system (see page 7).
A disc cannot be played.	The unit's and disc's Region Code numbers are incompatible.	Replace the disc (see page 29).
	Parental Lock is in use.	Enter your password to change the parental level (see pages 53 and 54).
A disc cannot be played and "0:00" is displayed on the display window.	The disc is loaded with its label and data sides inverted.	Insert the disc correctly (see page 15).
	The unplayable disc is loaded.	Replace the disc (see page 29).
Video and audio are distorted.	The disc is scratched or dirty.	Replace or clean the disc (see page 64).
	A VCR is connected between the unit and the TV.	Connect the unit and TV directly.
	With some discs, a picture may be blurred when setting "PROGRESSIVE MODE" to "FILM" or "AUTO."	Set "PROGRESSIVE MODE" to "VIDEO" (see page 49).
	"MONITOR TYPE" is not set correctly.	Set the monitor type correctly (see page 49).
The picture does not fit the TV screen properly.	The TV is not set correctly.	Set the TV correctly.
One-touch DVD playback does not work though you have connected AV COMPU LINK cord correctly.	The video output mode setting is incorrect.	Set the video output mode correctly according to the video connection between your TV and the unit (see page 22).
No subtitle appears on the TV screen though you have selected as your initial subtitle language.		Some discs are programmed to always display no subtitle initially. If this happens, press SUBTITLE on the remote control after starting play (see page 35).
Audio language is different from the one you have selected as your initial audio language.		Some discs are programmed to always use the original language initially. If this happens, press AUDIO on the remote control after starting play (see page 35).

Troubleshooting

■ For Tuner

PROBLEM	POSSIBLE CAUSE	SOLUTION
Hard to listen to broadcast because of noise.	The AM loop antenna is too close to the unit.	Change the position and direction of the AM loop antenna.
	The supplied FM antenna is not properly extended and positioned.	Extend the FM antenna at the best position.
Continuous hiss or buzzing during FM reception.	Incoming signal is too weak.	Connect an outdoor FM antenna or contact your dealer.
	The station is too far away.	Select a new station.
	An incorrect antenna is used.	Check with your dealer to be sure you have a correct antenna.
	Antennas are not connected properly.	Check connections.
Occasional cracking noise during FM reception.	Ignition noise from automobiles.	Move the antenna farther from automobile traffic.

■ For MP3

PROBLEM	POSSIBLE CAUSE	SOLUTION
A disc cannot be played.	No MP3 files are recorded on the disc.	Replace the disc.
	The disc is unplayable (such as CD-ROM).	
	MP3 files do not have the correct file extension—.mp3, .Mp3, .mP3, or .MP3 in their file names.	Add the file extension—.mp3, .Mp3, .mP3, or .MP3—to their file names (see page 43).
	MP3 files are made at bit rate under 64 kbps.	This unit cannot play back such files. Replace the disc.
	MP3 files are not recorded in the format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1 or 2.	Replace the disc. (Record MP3 files using a compliant application.)
No MP3 files except JPEG files are played.	The MP3/JPEG setting is set to “JPEG.”	When both MP3 files and JPEG files are recorded on a disc, to play MP3 files, set the MP3/JPEG setting to “MP3” (see page 50).

■ For JPEG

PROBLEM	POSSIBLE CAUSE	SOLUTION
A disc cannot be played.	No JPEG files are recorded on the disc.	Replace the disc.
	The disc is unplayable (such as CD-ROM).	
	JPEG files do not have the correct file extension in their file names.	Add the file extension—.jpg, .jpeg, .JPG, .JPEG or any uppercase and lowercase combination (such as “.Jpg”)—to their file names (see page 45).
	JPEG files are not made with baseline JPEG format.	This unit cannot play back such files. Replace the disc.
	JPEG files are not recorded in the format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1 or 2.	Replace the disc. (Record JPEG files using a compliant application.)
No JPEG files except MP3 files are played.	The MP3/JPEG setting is set to “MP3.”	When both MP3 files and JPEG files are recorded on a disc, to play JPEG files, set the MP3/JPEG setting to “JPEG” (see page 50).

Amplifier

Output Power	At Stereo operation:
	Front channels: 80 W per channel, min. RMS, both channels driven into 8 Ω at 1 kHz, with no more than 0.9% total harmonic distortion. (IEC268-3/DIN)
	At Surround operation:
	Front channels: 80 W per channel, min. RMS, driven into 8 Ω at 1 kHz, with no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.
	Center channel: 80 W, min. RMS, driven into 8 Ω at 1 kHz, with no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.
	Rear channels: 80 W per channel, min. RMS, driven into 8 Ω at 1 kHz, with no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.

Audio (Measured on AC 110V/127V/220V/240V)

Audio Input Sensitivity/Impedance (1 kHz):	TV, TAPE/CDR, DBS, VCR:	240 mV/47 k Ω
Audio Input (DIGITAL IN)* :	Coaxial: DIGITAL 1 (DBS):	0.5 V(p-p)/75 Ω
	Optical: DIGITAL 2 (TV):	-21 dBm to -15 dBm (660 nm $\pm$ 30 nm)
	*Corresponding to Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, and DTS Digital Surround (with sampling frequency—32 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz).	
Signal-to-Noise Ratio ('66 IHF/'78 IHF):	TV, TAPE/CDR, DBS, VCR:	87 dB/67 dB
Frequency Response (8 Ω):	TV, TAPE/CDR, DBS, VCR:	20 Hz to 20 kHz ($\pm$ 1 dB)
Tone Control:	Bass (100 Hz):	$\pm$ 10 dB $\pm$ 2 dB
	Treble (10 kHz):	$\pm$ 10 dB $\pm$ 2 dB

Video (Measured on AC 110V/127V/220V/240V)

Video Input Sensitivity/Impedance (1 kHz):		
Composite video:	DBS IN, VCR IN:	1 V(p-p)/75 Ω
S-VIDEO:	DBS IN, VCR IN:	(Y:luminance): 1 V(p-p)/75 Ω (C:chrominance): 0.286 V(p-p)/75 Ω
Video Output Level/Impedance (1 kHz):		
Composite video:	VCR OUT, MONITOR OUT:	1 V(p-p)/75 Ω
S-VIDEO:	VCR OUT, MONITOR OUT:	(Y:luminance): 1 V(p-p)/75 Ω (C:chrominance): 0.286 V(p-p)/75 Ω
Component video:	DVD COMPONENT VIDEO OUT:	(Component-Y): 1.0 V(p-p)/75 Ω (Component-Pb/Pr): 0.7 V(p-p)/75 Ω
Color System:	NTSC/PAL	
Horizontal Resolution:	500 lines	
Signal-to-Noise Ratio (S/N):	63 dB	
Synchronize:	Negative	

FM tuner (IHF)

Tuning Range:	87.50 MHz to 108.00 MHz
---------------	-------------------------

AM tuner

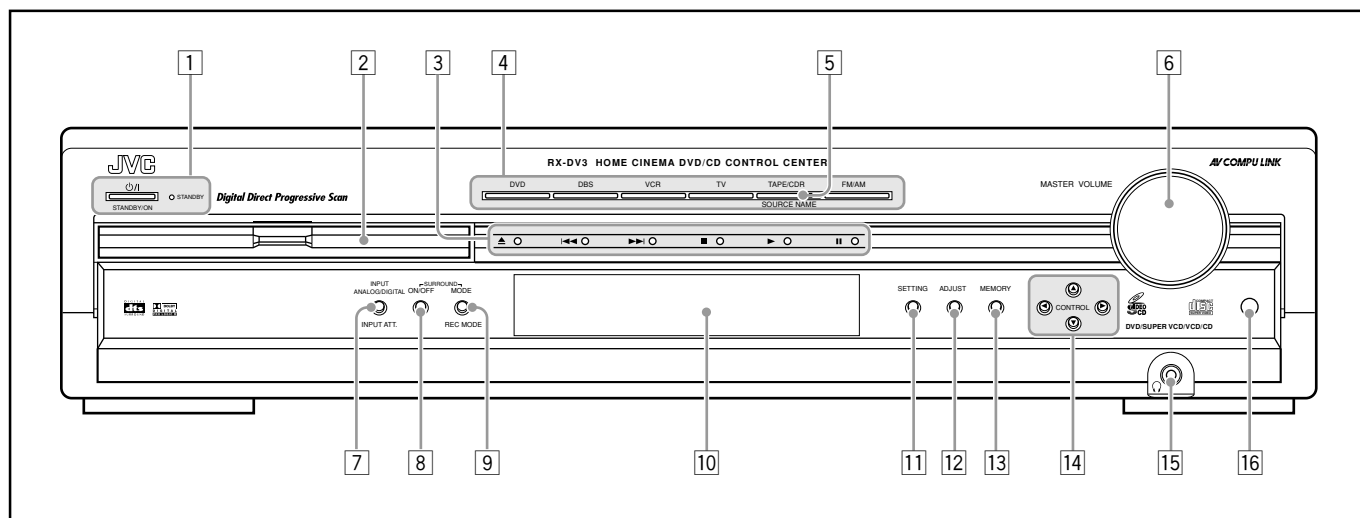
Tuning Range:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz (at 9 kHz intervals) 530 kHz to 1 600 kHz (at 10 kHz intervals)
---------------	---

General

Power Requirements:	AC 110V/127V/220V/230-240V $\sim$, adjustable with the voltage selector, 50 Hz/60 Hz
Power Consumption:	180 W (in operation) 5 W (in standby mode)
Dimensions (W x H x D):	435 mm x 100 mm x 403.5 mm
Mass:	7.9 kg

部件识别	2	操作程序	23
前面板	2	■ 前置扬声器的输出均衡 — “BAL”	24
遥控器	3	■ 音调 — “BASS” 和 “TREBLE”	24
如何着手	4	■ 扬声器输出等级 — “SUBWFR”, “CENTER”, “REAR L”, 和 “REAR R”	24
安装之前	4	■ DAP 音效等级 — “EFFECT”	24
检查附件	4	创造逼真音场	25
调整电压选择器	4	启动环绕声模式	27
将电池装入遥控器	4	选择环绕声模式	27
连接 FM 和 AM 天线	5	使用遥控器调整环绕声模式	28
连接扬声器	6	DVD 放像机之操作	29
连接音频/视频组件	7	光盘信息	29
■ 关于连接用导线	7	使用屏幕条形表	31
■ 设定彩色系统	7	利用屏幕条形表进行基本操作	32
■ 连接电视机	8	切换时间信息	32
■ 录像机的连接	9	从光盘菜单指定所需画面	33
■ DBS 调谐器的连接	9	选择观赏角度 — ANGLE	34
■ 卡式座/CD 录音机的连接	10	切换语言 — SUBTITLE 和 AUDIO	35
■ 数码连接	10	从光盘上指定的位置起开始播放	37
基本操作	11	■ 指定所需章节 — 章节寻找功能	37
1 启动电源	11	■ 指定所需位置 — 时间寻找功能	37
2 选择想要播放的播放源	11	■ 指定所需影像 — DIGEST (摘要显示功能)	38
3 调整音量	11	特殊图像播放	39
暂时关闭声音	12	■ 逐帧播放	39
使用睡眠定时器关闭电源	12	■ 显示连续的静止图像 — STROBE (连续显示功能)	39
切换显示屏亮度	12	■ 慢动作播放	39
切换播放源名称	12	■ 放大图像 — ZOOM (图像放大功能)	39
选择模拟或数码输入模式	13	■ 切换 VFP 设定 — VFP (影像精纯处理器)	40
手动切换数码输入模式	13	程序播放和随机播放	41
减弱输入信号	14	重复播放	42
切换扫描模式	14	播放 MP3 光盘	43
启动录音模式	14	基本操作	43
DVD 放像机的基本操作	15	在 MP3 CONTROL 画面上进行操作	44
1 打开光盘托盘	15	重复播放	44
2 装入光盘	15	播放 JPEG 光盘	45
3 开始播放	15	浏览播放	45
4 调整音量	16	在 JPEG CONTROL 画面上进行操作	46
5 启动逼真音场	16	重复播放	46
6 选择环绕声模式	16	操作选项菜单	47
7 停止播放	16	操作键	47
8 关闭电源 (进入待机模式)	16	选项菜单的外观	47
调谐器的操作	17	操作程序	48
设定 AM 调谐器的间隔空间	17	■ 语言菜单	49
手动调收电台	17	■ 图像菜单	49
使用预设调收功能	17	■ 音频菜单	50
选择 FM 接收模式	18	• 语言代码一览表	50
基本设定	19	■ 扬声器设定菜单	51
操作键	19	■ 其他菜单	52
操作程序	19	使用父母锁定功能限制播放	53
■ 扬声器信息 — “SUBWFR”, “FRNT SP”, “CNTR SP”, 和 “REAR SP”	20	■ 设定父母锁定	53
■ 扬声器距离	20	■ 切换父母锁定的设定	54
— “FRNT D”, “CNTR D”, 和 “REAR D”	20	■ 暂时取消父母锁定	54
■ 掩盖频率 — “CROSS”	21	• 用于父母锁定的区域/地区代码一览表	55
■ 低频音效衰减器 — “LFE”	21	DVD 放像机之用语说明	56
■ 动态范围压缩 — “D.COMP”	21	AV COMPU LINK (AV 电脑连动功能) 遥控系统	57
■ 数码输入 (DIGITAL IN) 端子 — “DGT”	21	操作 JVC 的音频/视频组件	59
■ 自动环绕声 — “AUTO SR”	22	操作音频组件	59
■ 视频输出模式 — “VOUT”	22	操作视频组件	60
声音调整	23	操作其它厂牌的设备	61
操作键	23	切换预设信号代码	61
		保养	64
		故障排除	65
		规格	68

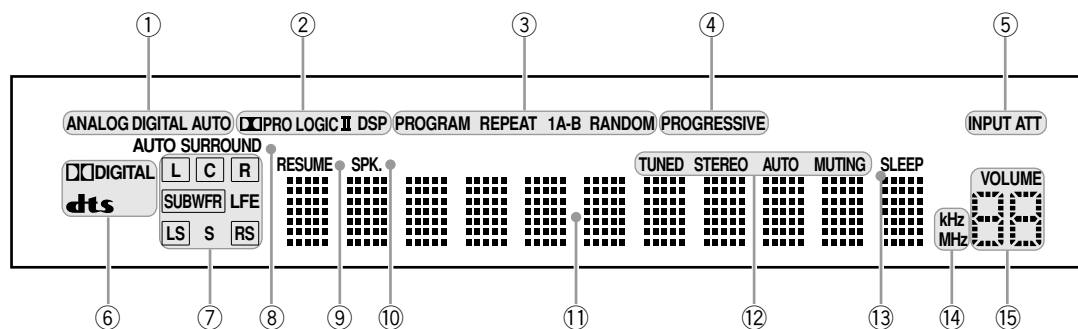
前面板



详细说明请参阅括号内所示之页。

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>❶ 〇/I STANDBY/ON (待机/启动) 键和 STANDBY (待机) 灯 (11)</p> <p>❷ 光盘托盘和照明灯 (15)</p> <p>❸ DVD 放像机操作键
▲ (打开/关闭), ◀ (反向跳跃), ▶ (正向跳跃), ■ (停止), ▶ (播放), (暂停)</p> <p>❹ 播放源选择键 (11, 13)
• DVD, DBS, VCR, TV, TAPE/CDR, FM/AM</p> <p>❺ SOURCE NAME (播放源名称) 键 (12)</p> <p>❻ MASTER VOLUME (主音量) 控制旋钮 (11, 16)</p> <p>❼ INPUT ANALOG/DIGITAL (输入模拟/数码) 键 (13)
INPUT ATT. (衰减器) 键 (14)</p> | <p>❽ SURROUND ON/OFF (环绕声启动/关闭) 键 (16, 27)</p> <p>❾ SURROUND MODE (环绕声模式) 键 (16, 27)
REC MODE (录音模式) 键 (14)</p> <p>❿ 显示屏
• 详情请参阅下述的“显示屏”。</p> <p>⓫ SETTING (设定) 键 (19 – 22)</p> <p>⓬ ADJUST (调整) 键 (23, 24)</p> <p>⓭ MEMORY (储存) 键 (17)</p> <p>⓮ CONTROL (控制) ▲/▼/◀/▶ 键 (17 – 24)</p> <p>⓯ 〇 (耳机) 插孔 (11)</p> <p>⓰ 遥控感应器</p> |
|--|--|

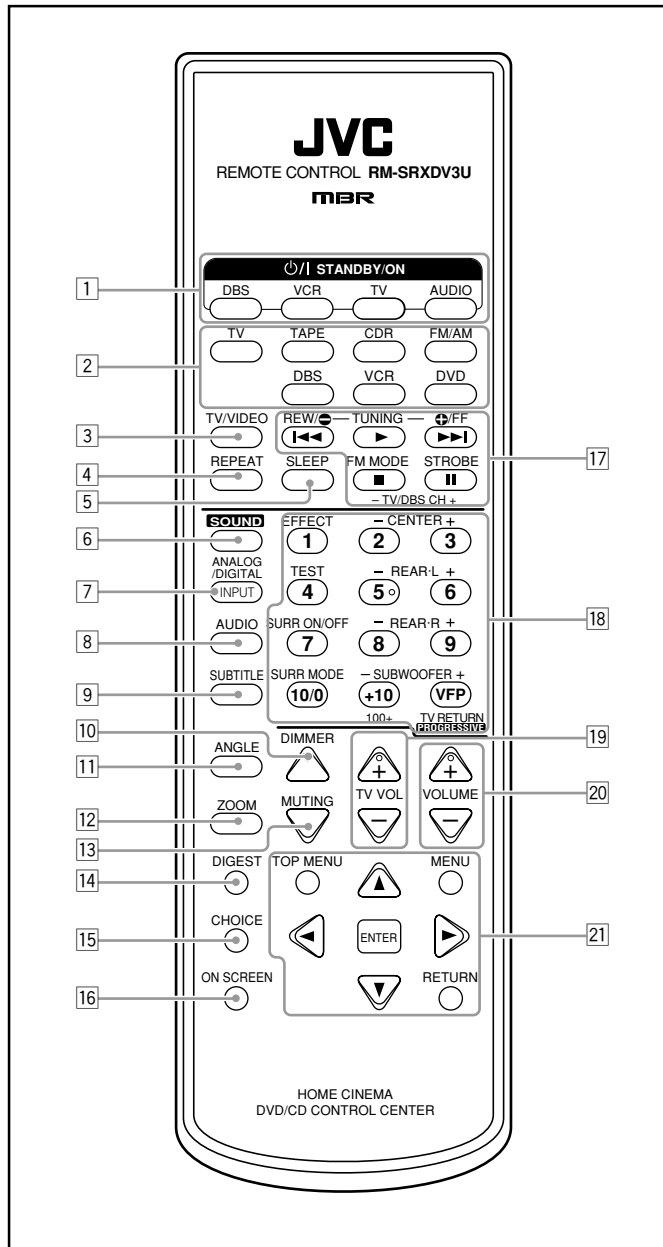
显示屏



- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>❶ 输入模式指示灯 (13)
• ANALOG, DIGITAL, AUTO</p> <p>❷ 环绕声模式指示灯 (25, 26)
• PRO LOGIC II, DSP</p> <p>❸ 播放模式指示灯 (41, 42, 44, 46)
• PROGRAM, REPEAT 1A-B, RANDOM</p> <p>❹ PROGRESSIVE (逐行扫描) 指示灯 (14)</p> <p>❺ INPUT ATT (输入衰减) 指示灯 (14)</p> <p>❻ 声音信号指示灯 (13)
• DIGITAL (杜比数码), DTS (DTS 数码环绕声)</p> <p>❼ 信号和扬声器指示灯 (27)
• L, C, R, SUBWFR (重低音), LFE (低频音效), LS, S, RS</p> | <p>❽ 环绕声指示灯 (27)
• AUTO SURROUND, SURROUND</p> <p>❾ RESUME (记忆播放) 指示灯 (16)</p> <p>❿ SPK. (扬声器) 指示灯 (11)</p> <p>⓫ 主显示屏</p> <p>⓬ 调谐器模式指示灯 (17, 18)
• TUNED, STEREO, AUTO MUTING</p> <p>⓭ SLEEP (睡眠) 指示灯 (12)</p> <p>⓮ 频率单位指示灯
• MHz (用于 FM 电台), kHz (用于 AM 电台)</p> <p>⓯ VOLUME (音量) 指示灯</p> |
|--|---|

遥控器

中文



详细说明请参阅括号内所示之页。

- 1 电源/待机/启动键(11, 60 – 63)
 - DBS, VCR, TV, AUDIO
- 2 播放源选择键(11, 13, 59 – 63)
 - TV, TAPE, CDR, FM/AM, DBS, VCR, DVD
- 3 TV/VIDEO(电视/视频)键(15, 60, 61)
- 4 REPEAT(重复)键(42, 44, 46)
- 5 SLEEP(睡眠)键(12)
- 6 SOUND(声音)键(24, 27, 28)
- 7 ANALOG/DIGITAL INPUT(模拟/数码输入)键(13)
- 8 AUDIO(音频)键(35, 36)
- 9 SUBTITLE(字幕)键(35)
- 10 DIMMER(减光)键(12)
- 11 ANGLE(观赏角度)键(34)
- 12 ZOOM(放大)键(39)
- 13 MUTE(静音)键(12)
- 14 DIGEST(摘要显示)键(38)
- 15 CHOICE(选项)键(47, 48)
- 16 ON SCREEN(屏幕显示)键(31, 32, 34 – 38, 41, 42)
- 17 多重功能操作键
 - 快进, 快退, 暂停, 播放, 停止, 重播, 快进, 快退
 - TUNING(调收) $\oplus$ 和 $\ominus$ 键(17)
 - FM MODE(调频模式)键(18)
 - STROBE(连续显示)键(39)
 - TV/DBS CH(频道)+ 和 - 键(60, 61)
- 18 数字键
 - 用于选择预设频道(18)
 - 用于调整声音(24, 28, 59)
 - 用于操作音频/视频组件(59 – 63)
 - SURR ON/OFF(环绕声启动/关闭)键(16, 27)
 - SURR MODE(环绕声模式)键(16, 27)
 - VFP(影像精纯处理)键(40)
 - TV RETURN(电视返还)键(60, 61)
 - PROGRESSIVE(逐行扫描)键(14)
- 19 TV VOL(电视音量)+ 和 - 键(60, 61)
- 20 VOLUME(音量)+ 和 - 键(11, 16)
- 21 菜单操作键
 - TOP MENU(主菜单)键(33)
 - MENU(菜单)键(33)
 - RETURN(返还)键(33)
 - ENTER(决定)键
 - 转盘控制键 $\blacktriangle/\blacktriangledown/\blacktriangleright/\blacktriangleleft$

安装之前

一般注意事项

- 切勿将任何金属物体插入主机内部。
- 切勿拆卸主机或将螺钉，机盖及机壳卸下。
- 切勿让主机受雨淋或潮湿。

安装位置

- 将主机安装于平稳且不受潮湿之处。
- 主机周围的温度须介于 5°C 至 35°C 之间。
- 请确保主机周围良好的通风环境。通风不良可能导致热量过度积聚而损坏主机。

保养主机

- 切勿以湿手触摸电源线。
- 切勿拉扯导线将电源线拔出。欲拔出电源线时应握持插头，这样可以避免损伤导线。
- 请使电源线远离处于接通状态的导线或天线。电源线可引发噪音或屏幕干扰。建议您使用同轴电缆连接天线，因为同轴电缆屏闭功能好可以抗干扰。
- 发生断电时或拔下电源线时，您所作的预设，如预设的 FM 或 AM 频道以及所作的声音调整数据可能于数日之内被抹除。

检查附件

请检查并确认您所购买的机器是否全部拥有下列附件。
括号内的数字表示附件的数量。

- 遥控器 (1)
- 电池 (2)
- AM (调幅) 环形天线 (1)
- FM (调频) 天线 (1)
- 综合视频导线 (1)
- 交流电插头转接器 (1)

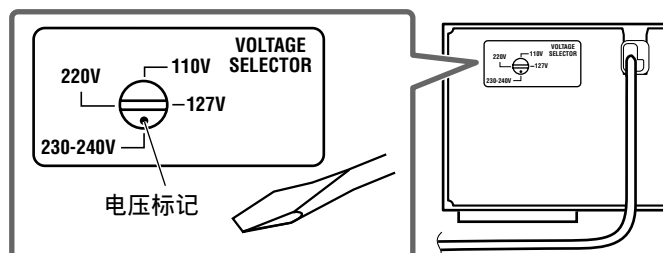
若上述附件中有任何遗漏，请速与经销商联络。

调整电压选择器

连接之前，如有必要通常情况下首先执行下列操作。

使用螺丝起子正确选择后面板上的 VOLTAGE SELECTOR (电压选择器) 之电压值。

确认电压标记所指的电压值与您接通主机的电压值相一致。

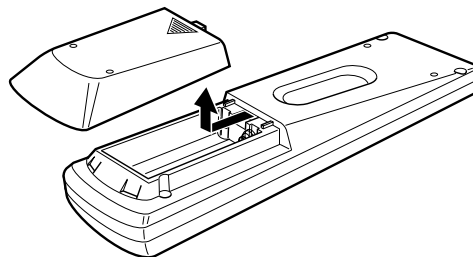


将电池装入遥控器

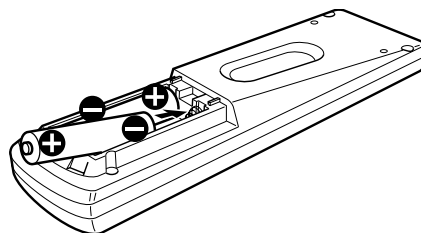
使用遥控器之前，请先装入附带的两节电池。

- 使用遥控器时，请将遥控器直接对准主机上的遥控感应器来操作。

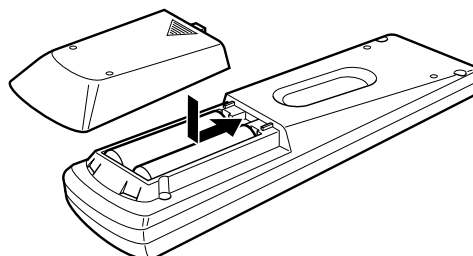
1 将遥控器背面的电池舱盖子取下。



2 装入电池。请确保对准电池的电极： (+) 对 (+) 和 (-) 对 (-)。



3 还回电池舱的盖子。



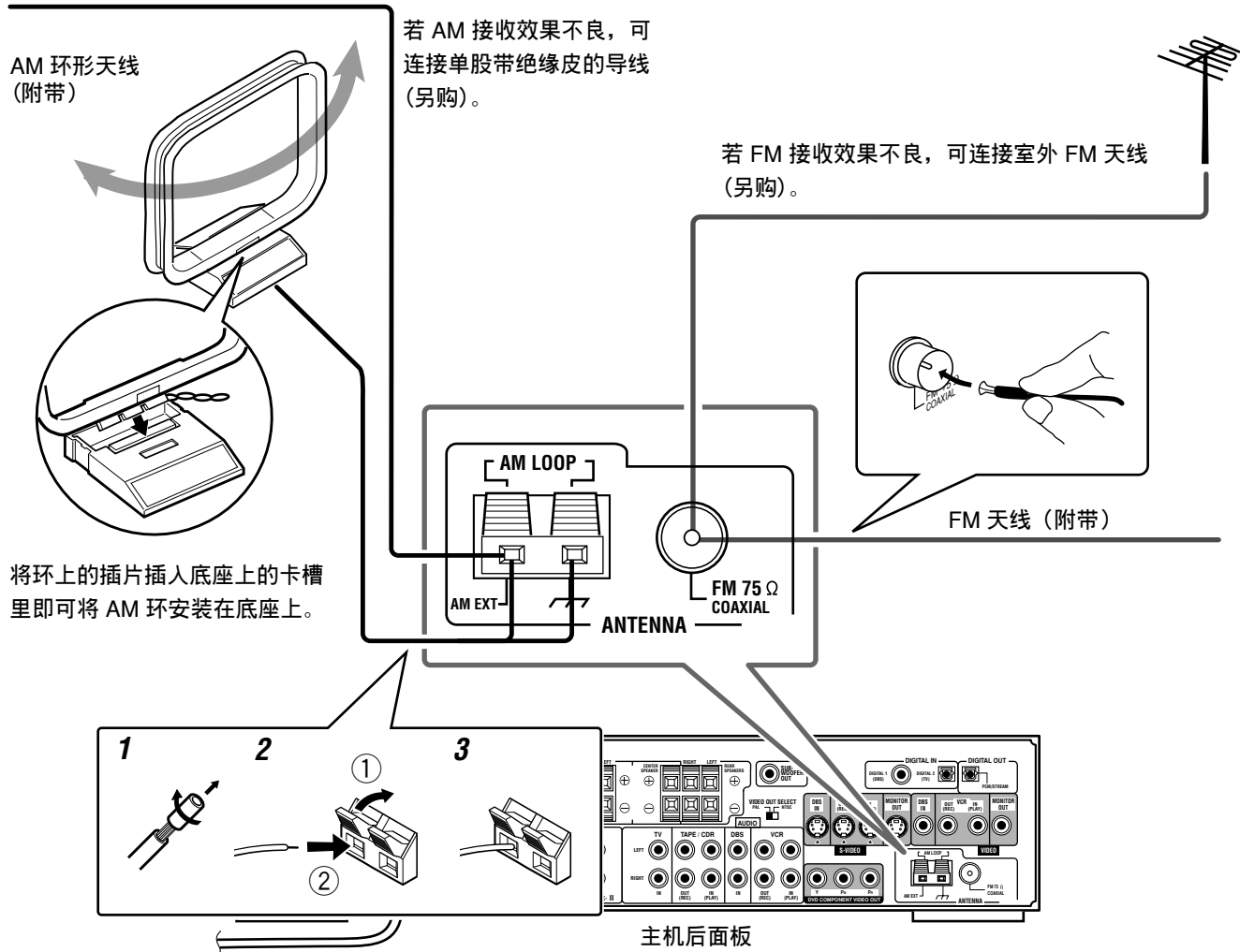
若遥控器的操作范围或效能减弱，需要更换电池。请使用两节 R6P (SUM-3)/AA (15F) 型干电池。

注意：

请遵循下列注意事项以免发生电池漏液或爆炸：

- 对准所示电极将电池置入遥控器：
(+) 对 (+) 和 (-) 对 (-)。
- 请使用正确型号的电池。看似相同的电池可能电压不同。
- 应同时换成两节新电池。
- 切勿将电池放置在热气或火焰处。

连接 FM 和 AM 天线



AM 天线的连接

将附带的 AM 环形天线连接至 AM LOOP 端子。

1 如果 AM 环形天线有绝缘皮包裹, 需去除绝缘皮。

2 按住端子卡夹 (①), 然后插入导线 (②)。

3 松开卡夹。

转动天线环直到获得最佳接收效果。

- 若接收效果不良, 可将单股带绝缘皮的室外导线 (另购) 连接至 AM EXT 端子。须保持 AM 环形天线于连接状态。

FM 天线的连接

将附带的 FM 天线连接至 FM 75 Ω COAXIAL 端子作为临时接收用。

横向拉长附带的 FM 天线。

- 若接收效果不良, 须连接室外 FM 天线 (另购)。在使用同轴型连接器 (IEC 或 DIN 45325 型) 连接 75 Ω 天线之前, 须首先卸下附带的 FM 天线。

注:

- 请确保天线导体勿与其它任何端子, 连接状态下的导线以及电源线相碰触。如此可能导致接收效果不良。

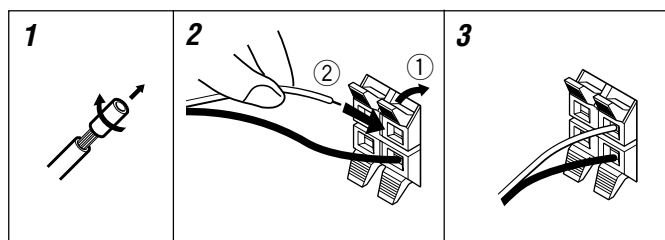
连接扬声器

在连接了前置，中置，后置和/或重低音扬声器之后，可适当设定扬声器设定用资讯以获得最佳环绕声效果。有关详细说明请参阅第 20 页。

注意：

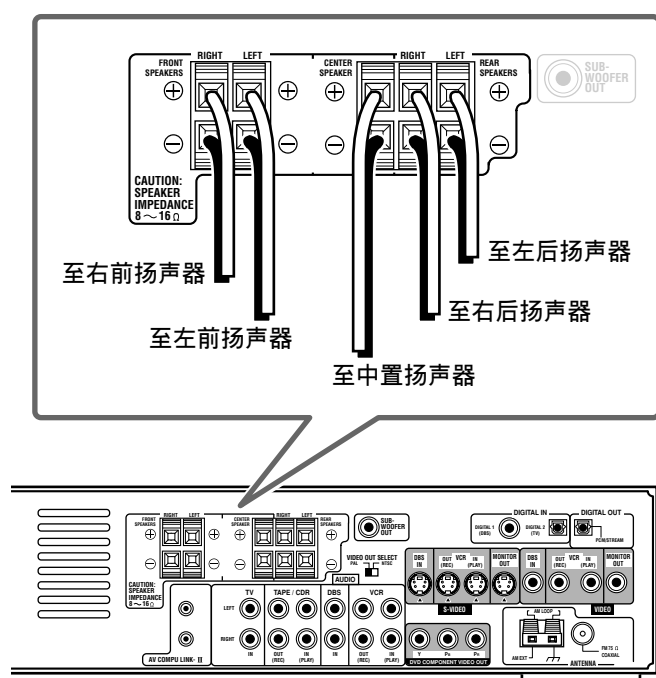
- 请使用扬声器端子上标示的 SPEAKER IMPEDANCE（扬声器阻抗）的扬声器（8 – 16 Ω ）。
- 切勿在一个扬声器端子上连接超过一个以上的扬声器。

连接前置，中置，和后置扬声器



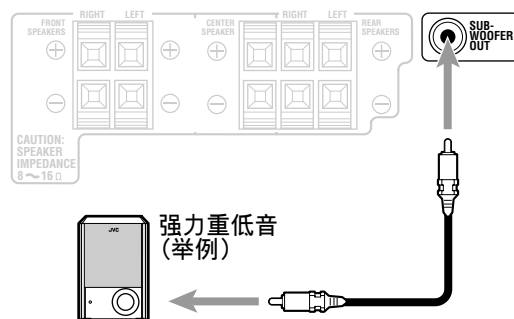
连接每个扬声器时，可将后面板上的 (+) 及 (-) 端子与扬声器上标记 (+) 及 (-) 的端子相连接。

- 1 切断，扭曲并去除每条扬声器导线（另购）末端的绝缘体。
- 2 按住扬声器端子卡夹 (①)，然后插入扬声器导线 (②)。
- 3 松开卡夹。



连接重低音扬声器

通过连接重低音扬声器，您可以加强低音或再生数码软盘上灌录的原声 LFE 信号。

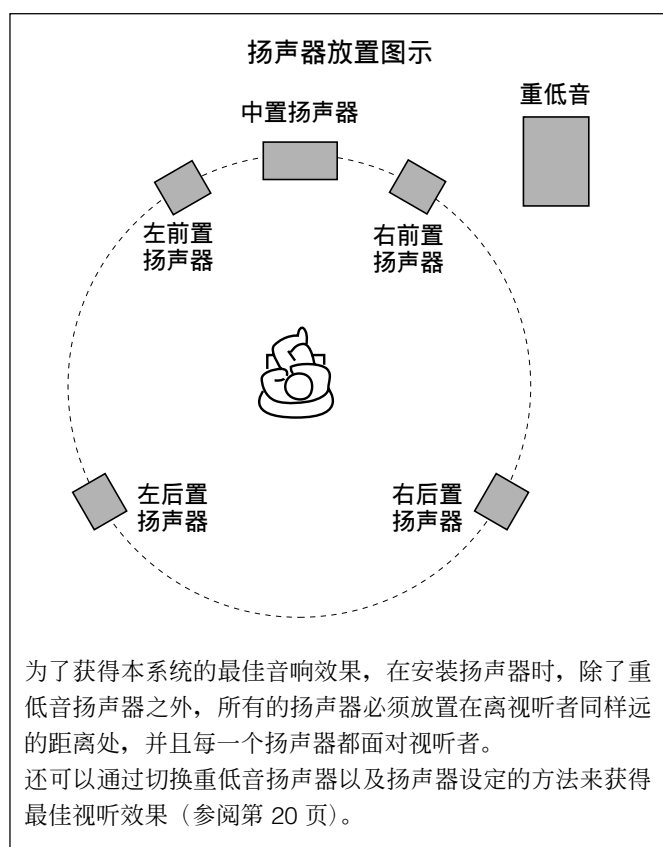


用一具有 RCA 针型插头的电缆（另购）将强力重低音扬声器的输入插孔与主机后面板上的 SUB-WOOFER OUT 插孔相连接。

- 另请参阅随重低音扬声器附带的使用手册。

注：

- 因为低音没有方向性，因此您可以随意将重低音扬声器放置在任何地方。通常情况下是将其放在您的前方。



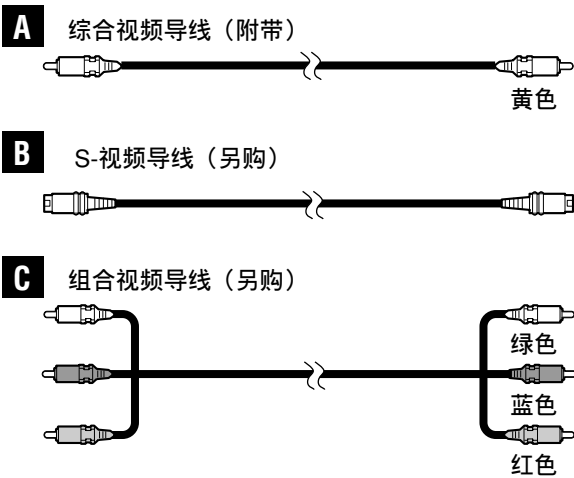
连接音频/视频组件

在连接之前请关掉所有组件和主机的电源。

关于连接用导线

用于视频连接的导线

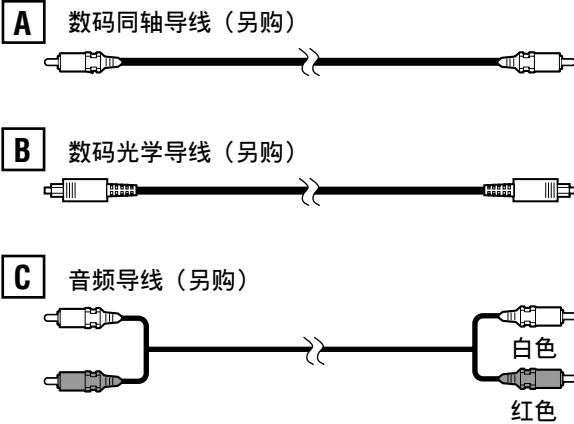
本机不附带 S-视频导线和组合视频导线。
可使用随其它组件附带者或到经销店去购买。



- 使用综合视频导线 (A) 和/或 S-视频导线 (B) 您可以将 DBS 调谐器和录像机连接到本机上。
 - 除使用 A 和 B 之外, 还可以使用组合视频导线 (C) 将电视机连接到本机上。
 - 通过使用 B 或 C, 您可以获得更高质量的影像 — 影像质量的高低比较顺序为 A < B < C。
 - 若想要在电视机上观看来自 DBS 调谐器或录像机的影像, 须使用在本机上连接 DBS 调谐器或录像机时相同的导线将电视机连接至本机。
 - 若想要从本机内设的 DVD 放像机观看影像, 须使用 A, B, 和/或 C 将电视机连接到本机上, 然后正确登记视频输出模式 (参阅第 22 页上的“视频输出模式”)。
 - 若想要欣赏逐行扫描模式的视频影像, 须使用 C 来连接与逐行扫描视频输入兼容的电视机 (参阅第 14 页上的“切换扫描模式”)。
- 仅当电视机的彩色系统为 NTSC 时您才可以欣赏逐行扫描模式 (参阅第 8 页)。

用于音频连接的导线

使用音频导线可将外接组件与本机相连接。
可使用随其它组件附带者或到经销店去购买。



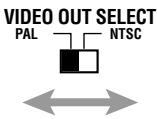
- 本机出厂时, DIGITAL IN 端子已被设定用于连接下列组件:
 - DIGITAL 1 (同轴): 用于连接 DBS 调谐器
 - DIGITAL 2 (光学): 用于连接电视机
- 如果连接 CDR, 须正确切换数码输入 (DIGITAL IN) 端子的设定 (参阅第 21 页上的“数码输入 (DIGITAL IN) 端子”) 和播放源名称 (参阅第 12 页上的“切换播放源名称”)。
- 正确选择数码输入模式 (参阅第 13 页上的“选择模拟或数码输入模式”)。

设定彩色系统

本机与 PAL 制式和 NTSC 制式均兼容。通过切换主机后面板上的 VIDEO OUT SELECT 开关, 可使本机的彩色系统与电视机的彩色系统相一致。

须在主机处于关闭状态下设定本机的彩色系统。

- 播放光盘之前须确保光盘的彩色系统与电视机的彩色系统相一致。



- 注:
- 在主机处于启动状态下如果您切换 VIDEO OUT SELECT 设定, 直到再次启动主机之前您所作的设定不生效。
 - 当您使用多制式彩色系统的电视机时, 如果在图像菜单上选择“多制式”作为监视器类型 (参阅第 49 页), 本机的彩色系统可以自动进行切换。在此种情况下不管 VIDEO OUT SELECT 设定在何处, 本机的设定均会自动切换成与装入的光盘的彩色系统相同的制式。

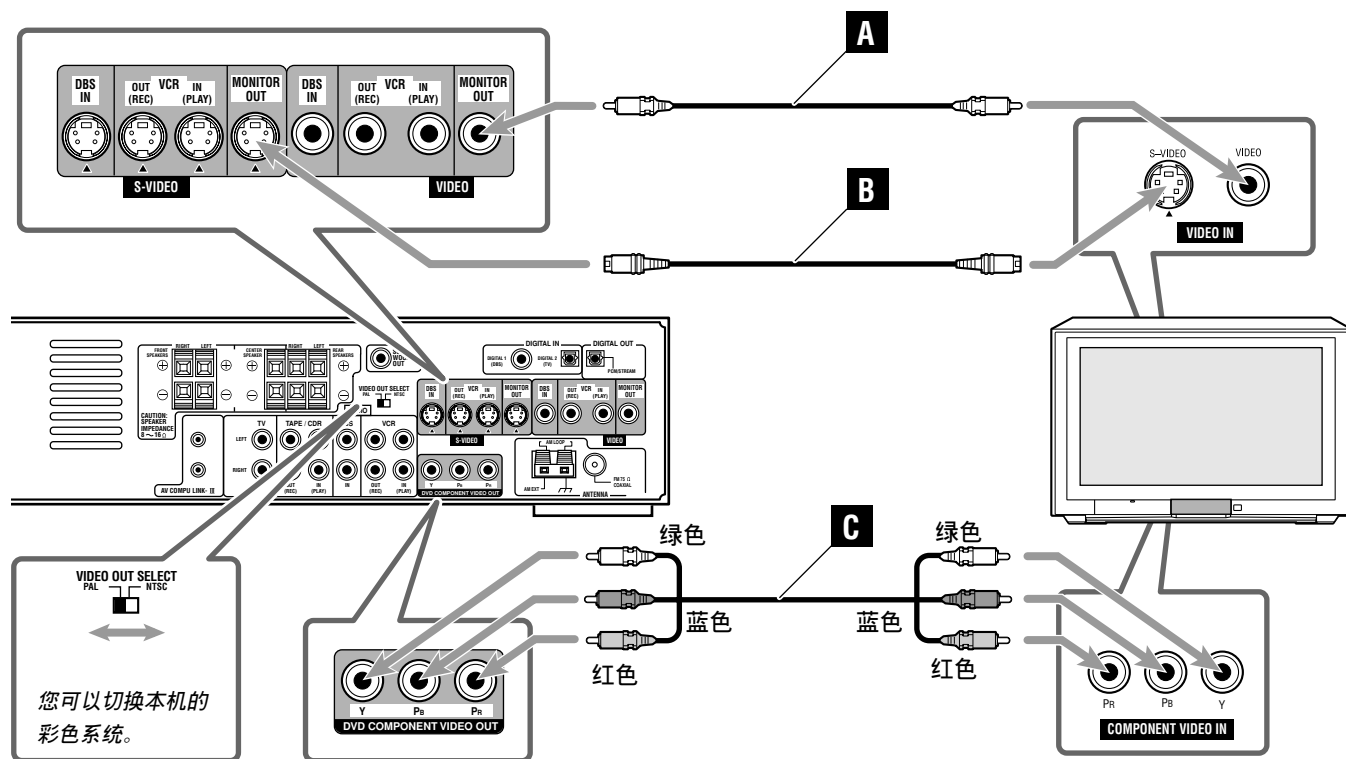
在连接之前请关掉所有组件和主机的电源。

音频/ 视频端子的插图为代表性举例。当您连接其它组件时，由于实际印刷在各组件后面板上的端子名称可能彼此不尽相同，所以还须参阅各组件附带的使用手册。

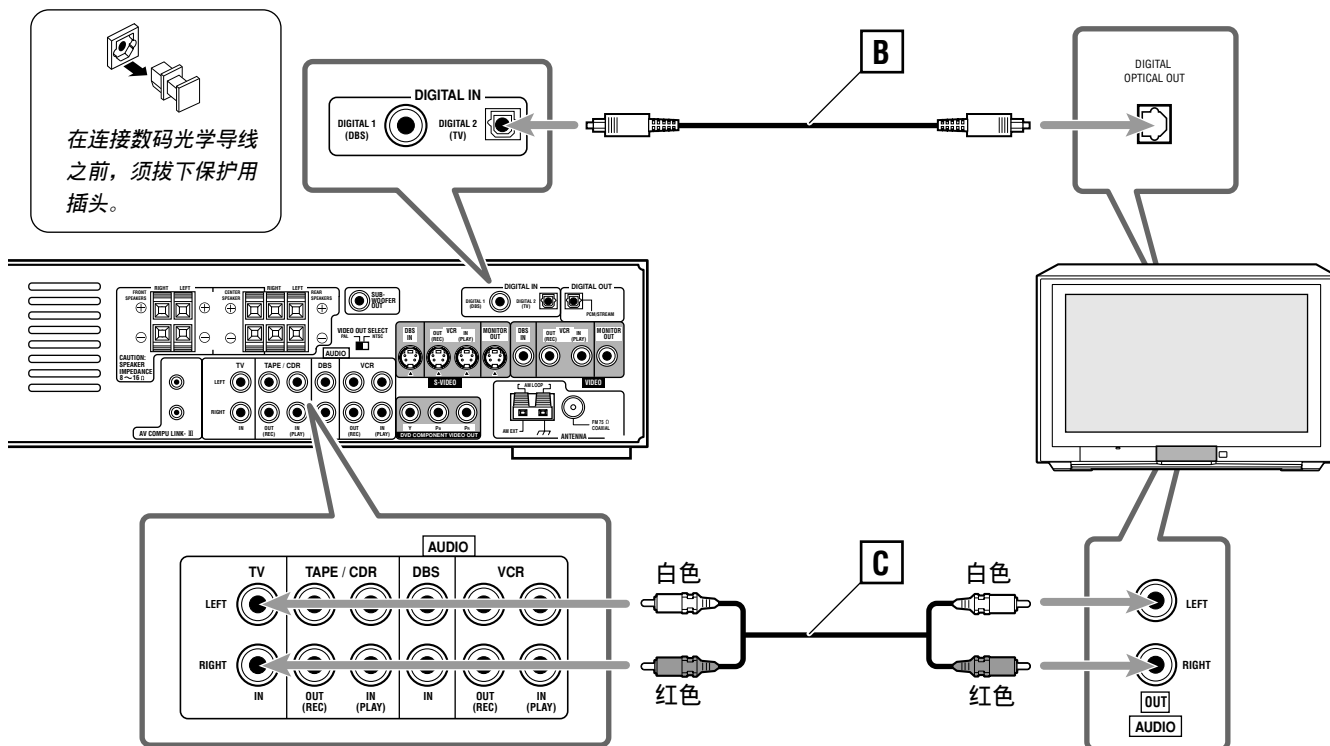
■ 连接电视机

视频连接

切勿经由录像机将电视机连接到主机上，亦不要连接带有内录录像机的电视机；否则影像可能失真。



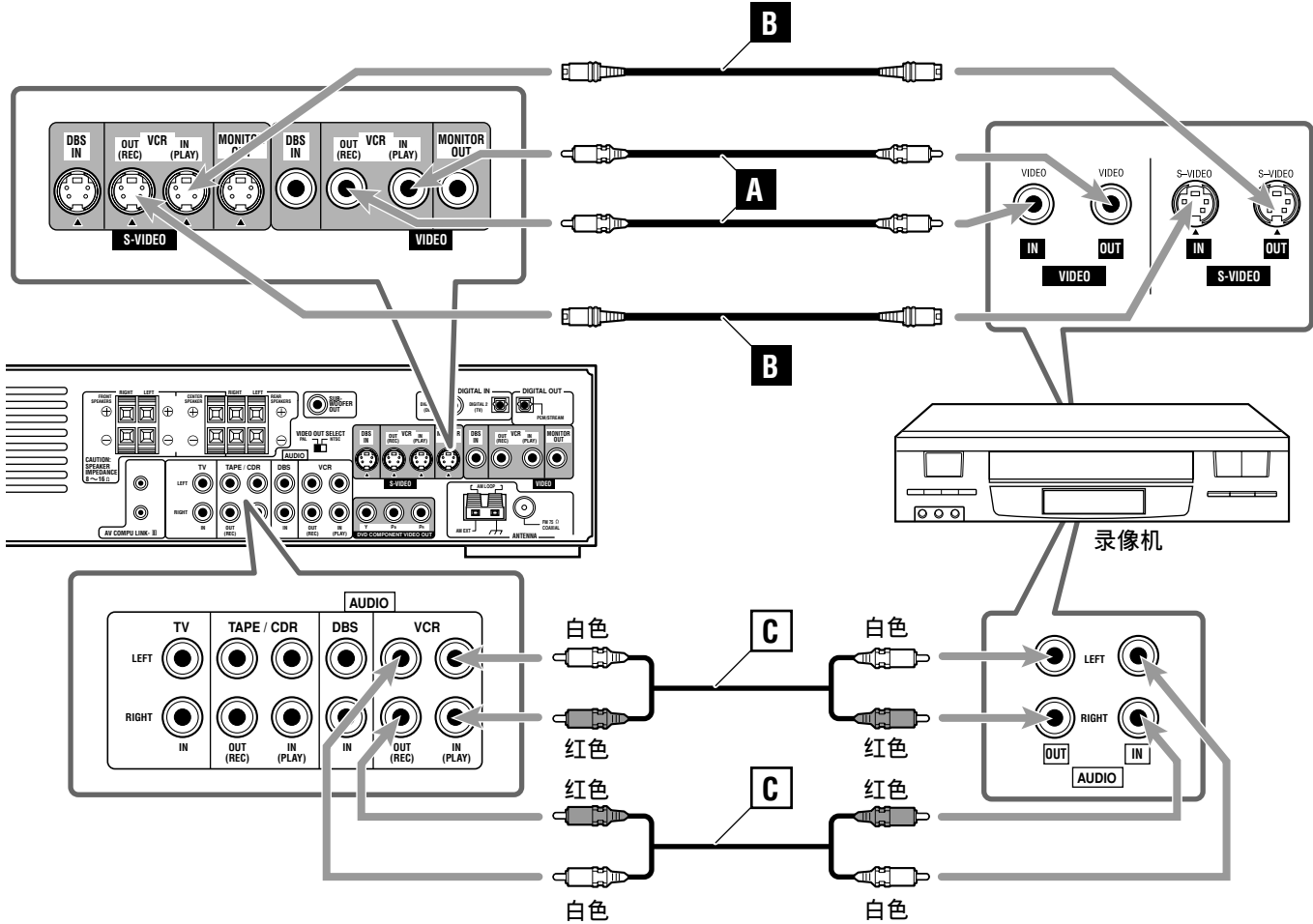
音频连接



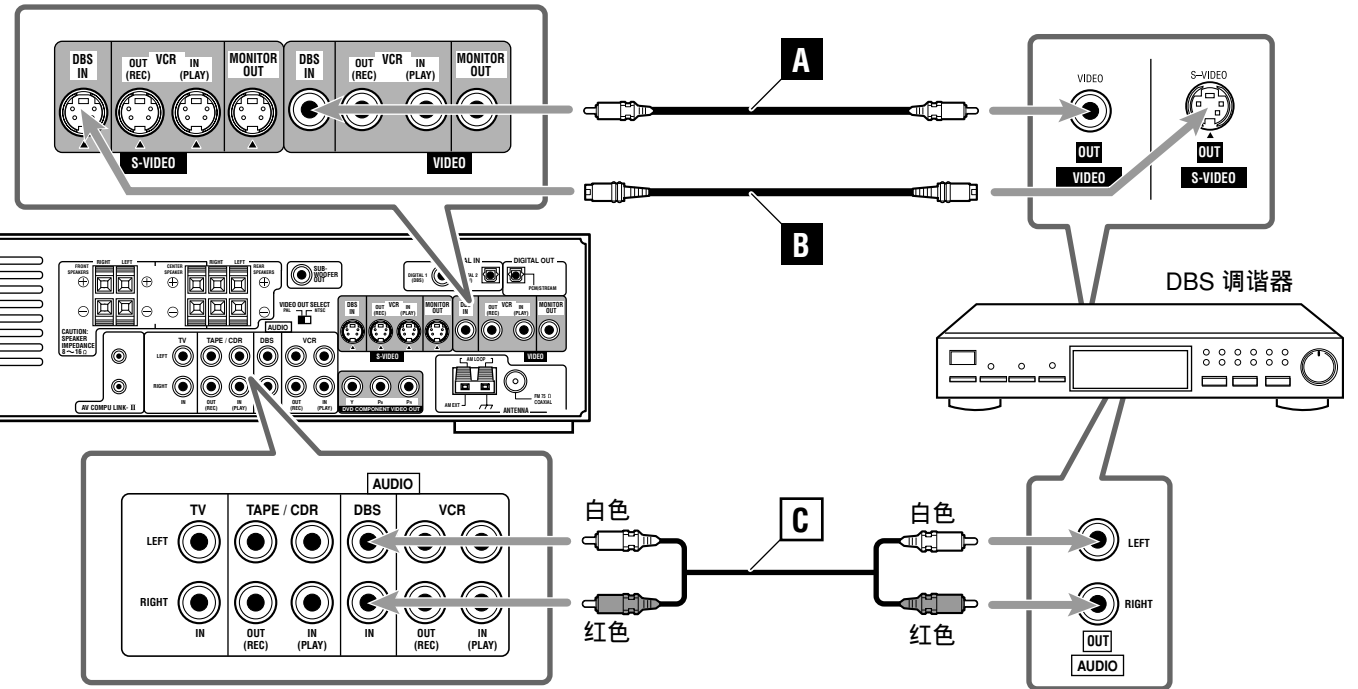
在连接之前请关掉电视机和主机的电源。

音频/视频端子的插图为代表性举例。当您连接其它组件时，由于实际印刷在各组件后面板上的端子名称可能彼此不尽相同，所以还须参阅各组件附带的使用手册。

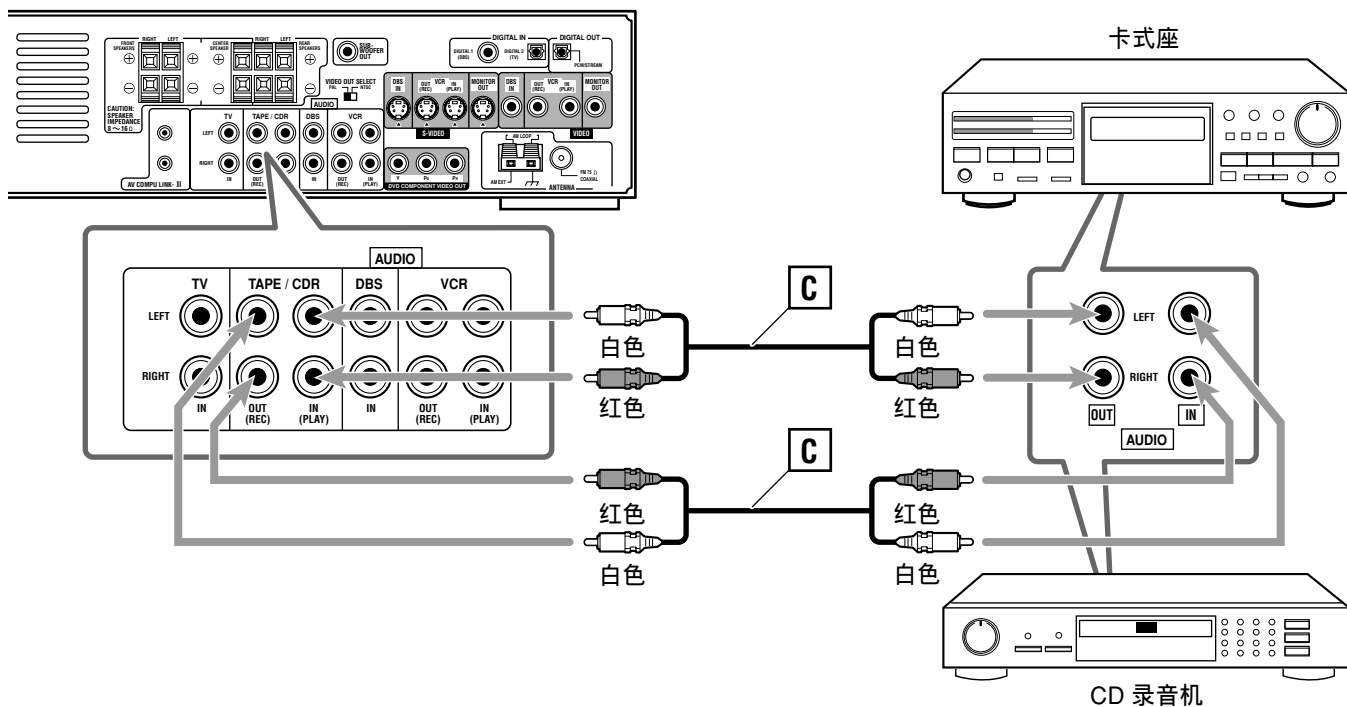
■ 录像机的连接



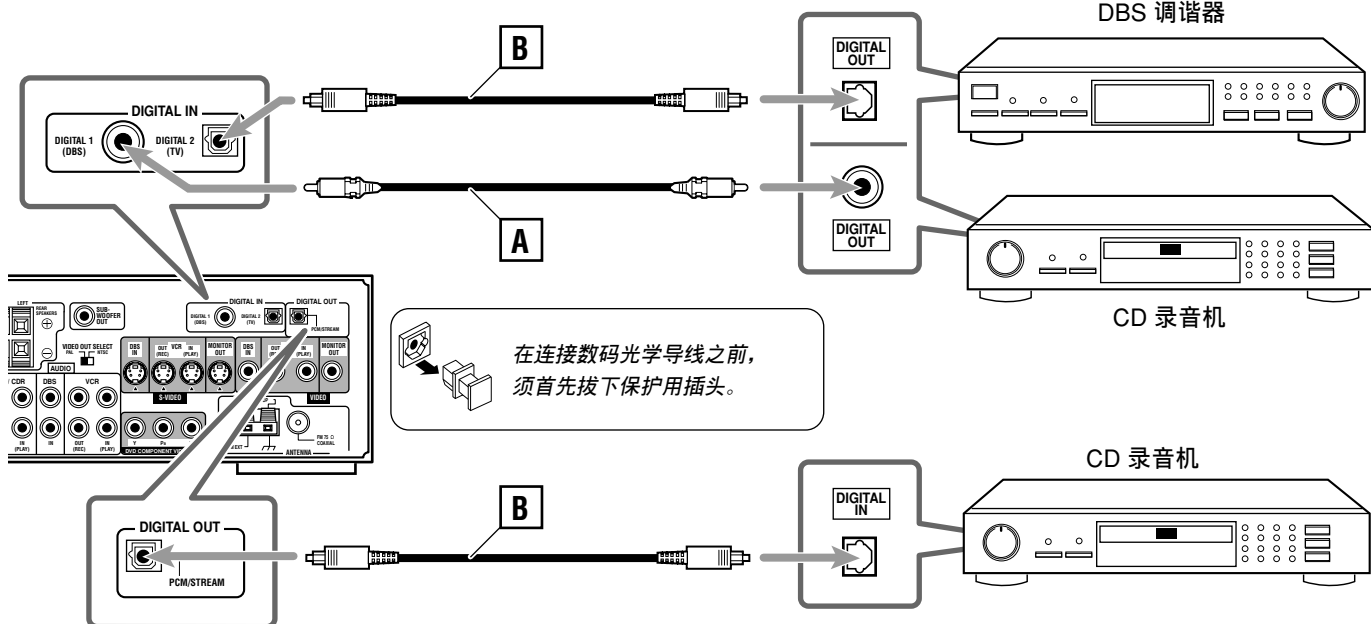
■ DBS 调谐器的连接



■ 卡式座/CD 录音机的连接



■ 数码连接



现在，您终于可以将主机的电源线插头插入交流电插座了！

注意：

- 切勿以潮湿的手触摸电源线。
- 切勿拉扯电源线拔出插头。欲拔出插头时，请握持插头以免损坏导线。

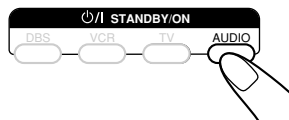
注：

- 电源线与处于接通状态下的导线及天线电缆之间需隔开一定的距离。电源线可能引起噪音或屏幕干扰。
- 在下述情况下，某些预设如预设的电台以及声音调整内容等可能在数日内被抹除：
 - 拔下电源线时。
 - 发生断电时。

1 启动电源



在前面板上



从遥控器上

按前面板上的 **STANDBY/ON** 键或者遥控器上的 **STANDBY/ON AUDIO** 键。

STANDBY 灯熄灭，照明灯点亮。

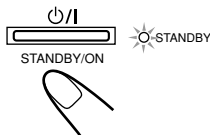
目前的播放源名称在显示屏上出现。

- 如果目前的播放源是主机内设的 DVD 放像机，在主机检测装入的光盘类型的过程中“READING”字样会出现（参阅第 29 页）。
 - 有些 DVD VIDEO 光盘一经装入，播放即自动开始。
 - 没有装入光盘时，“NO DISC”字样会在显示屏上出现。

想要关闭电源（进入待机模式）时

再次按前面板上的 **STANDBY/ON** 键或遥控器上的 **STANDBY/ON AUDIO** 键。

照明灯熄灭，STANDBY 灯点亮。



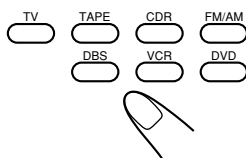
注：

- 在待机模式下始终有一小部分电量一直在消耗。想要完全切断电源时，须拔出交流电源线。

2 选择想要播放的播放源



在前面板上



从遥控器上

按其中一个播放源选择键。

- DVD : 用于选择内设的 DVD 放像机。
- DBS* : 用于选择 DBS 调谐器。
- VCR : 用于选择录像机。
- TV* : 用于选择电视调谐器。
- TAPE/CDR* : 用于选择卡式座或 CD 录音机（仅从前面板上）。
- TAPE : 用于选择卡式座（仅从遥控器上**）。
- CDR* : 用于选择 CD 录音机（仅从遥控器上**）。
- FM/AM : 用于选择 FM 或 AM 广播。

注：

* 请正确登记数码输入端子的设定（参阅第 21 页上的“数码输入（DIGITAL IN）端子”）和数码输入模式的设定（参阅第 13 页上的“选择模拟或数码输入模式”）。当您选择播放源时，播放源名称和“DIGITAL”字样会在显示屏上显示出。

** 没有正确配备播放源名称时，这些键不工作（参阅第 12 页上的“切换播放源名称”）。

3 调整音量

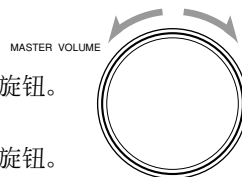
在前面板上：

想要升高音量时，

顺时针方向旋转 MASTER VOLUME 旋钮。

想要降低音量时，

逆时针方向旋转 MASTER VOLUME 旋钮。



从遥控器上：

想要升高音量时，

按住 VOLUME + 键。

想要降低音量时，

按住 VOLUME - 键。



注意：

在启动任何播放源之前请习惯先将音量设定在最低处。若音量设定在高处，突然发出的声音会永久性损伤您的听力及/或损坏您的扬声器。

注：

- 音量等级可以在“0”（最低）至“50”（最高）的范围内进行调节。
- 在电视机启动状态下选择 DVD 作为播放源时，音量等级信息会在电视机上出现。

使用头戴耳机聆听

将一对头戴耳机连接至前面板上的 Ω （耳机）插孔。这样会关闭目前选择的环绕声模式，关闭扬声器并启动 HEADPHONE 模式。

SPK. 指示灯从显示屏上熄灭。

- 将两只头戴耳机从 Ω （耳机）插孔拔出会关闭 HEADPHONE 模式而启动扬声器。



HEADPHONE（头戴耳机）模式

当您使用头戴耳机时，无论扬声器怎样设定，下述信号都会传出：

- 播放 2-频道的播放源时，左前和右前频道的信号直接从左右两侧头戴耳机发出。
 - 播放多频道的播放源时，左前，右前，中央，以及后频道的信号在降音整合后从头戴耳机发出，而且不丢失低音成分。
- 使用头戴耳机您可以欣赏多频道声音的播放源。

注意：

下述情况下请务必调低音量：

- 在连接或戴上头戴耳机之前务请调低音量，因为高音不但会损坏耳机亦会损伤您的听力。
- 再次启动扬声器之前务请调低音量，因为高音会自扬声器发出。

暂时关闭声音

仅从遥控器上



按 MUTING 键关闭声音。

“MUTING”字样在显示屏上出现，音量随即关闭（VOLUME 指示灯熄灭）。

- 在电视机启动状态下选择 DVD 作为播放源时，“VOLUME -”字样会在电视机上出现。



想要恢复声音时，再次按 MUTING 键。

- 按遥控器上的 VOLUME + 或 - 键（或旋转前面板上的 MASTER VOLUME 旋钮）亦可以恢复声音。

使用睡眠定时器关闭电源

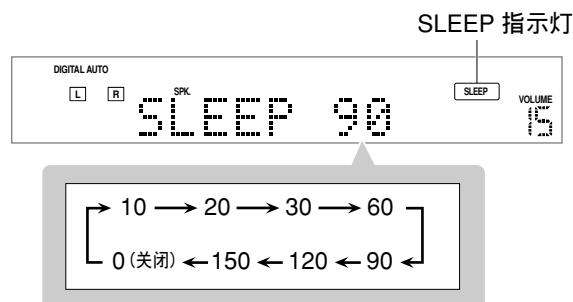
仅从遥控器上



反复按 SLEEP 键。

SLEEP 指示灯在显示屏上点亮。

- 每次按该键，关闭时间按如下所示进行切换：



当关闭时间到来时
主机自动关闭。

想要检查或改变关闭时间到来之前的剩余时间时
按一次 SLEEP 键。

关闭时间到来之前的剩余时间（以分钟状态）显示。

- 想要改变关闭时间时，可反复按 SLEEP 键。

想要关闭睡眠定时器时

反复按 SLEEP 键直到“SLEEP 0”字样在显示屏上出现。（SLEEP 指示灯熄灭。）

- 关掉电源亦会关闭睡眠定时器。

注：

- 如果睡眠定时器和自动待机功能（参阅第 52 页）同时使用时，将由关闭时间延迟者来关闭主机。

切换显示屏亮度

仅从遥控器上



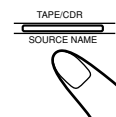
按 DIMMER 键关掉显示屏亮度。

- 每次按该键，显示屏及照明灯交替熄灭和点亮。

切换播放源名称

当您把 CD 录音机连接至在后面板上的 TAPE/CDR 插孔时，须切换显示在显示屏上的播放源名称。

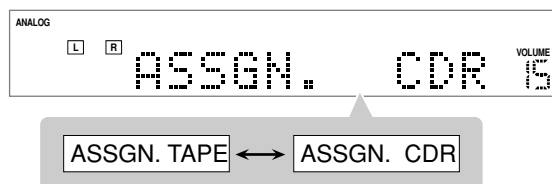
仅在前面板上



举例：想要将播放源名称由“TAPE”切换成“CDR”时

1 按 TAPE/CDR (SOURCE NAME) 键选择“TAPE”作为播放源。

2 持续按住 SOURCE NAME (TAPE/CDR) 键，直到“ASSGN. CDR”字样在显示屏上出现。



想要将播放源名称切换成“TAPE”时，

在上述步骤 2 中，持续按住 SOURCE NAME (TAPE/CDR) 键，直到“ASSGN. TAPE”字样在显示屏上出现。

注：

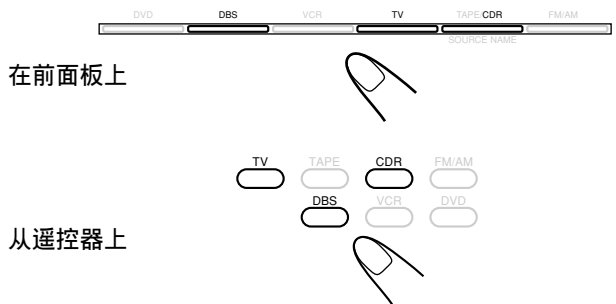
- 若不切换播放源名称您同样可以使用所连接的组件。然而可能会出现一些不便。
 - 当您按前面板上的 TAPE/CDR (SOURCE NAME) 键时，莫名其妙的播放源名称会在显示屏上出现。
 - 选择播放源时，遥控器上的 CDR 或 TAPE 键不工作。
 - 对 CD 录音机不能使用数码输入功能（参阅第 10 页）。

选择模拟或数码输入模式

当您使用模拟连接和数码连接两种方法连接了数码播放源组件时 (参阅第 7 至第 10 页), 可以选择输入模式。

- 在选择数码输入模式之前, 须首先正确登记数码输入端子 (参阅第 21 页上的“数码输入 (DIGITAL IN) 端子”)。

1 按其中一个您想要改变其输入模式的播放源选择键 (DBS, TV, 或 CDR)。



注:

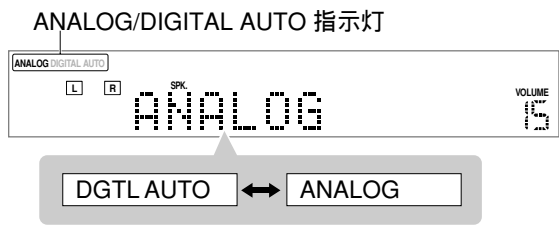
- 当选择 DVD 作为播放源时, 您无法切换输入模式。用于 DVD 放像机的输入模式始终为数码输入模式。

2 按前面板上的 INPUT ANALOG/DIGITAL (INPUT ATT.) 键或遥控器上的 ANALOG/DIGITAL INPUT 键。



目前的输入模式在显示屏上出现。

- 每次按该键, 输入模式在模拟输入 (“ANALOG”*) 与数码输入 (“DIGITAL AUTO”) 之间交替变换。



* 除了对应内设的 DVD 放像机之外, “ANALOG” 为初始内设定。

- DGTL AUTO** : 使用数码输入模式时选此项。
DIGITAL AUTO 指示灯在显示屏上点亮。
主机自动检测传入的信号制式, 然后检测出的信号 — **DIGITAL** 或 **dts** 相对应的声音信号指示灯点亮; 否则, 不会有信号指示灯点亮。
- ANALOG** : 使用模拟输入模式时选此项。
ANALOG 指示灯点亮。

手动切换数码输入模式

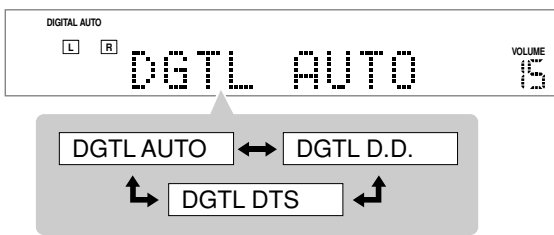
在播放杜比数码或 DTS 数码环绕声软盘的过程中如果下列症状出现, 您可以切换数码输入模式:

- 播放开始时没有声音发出。
- 在寻找及跳跃章节或曲目的过程中出现噪音。



在 “DGTL AUTO” 字样还存留于显示屏上的过程中按 CONTROL ► (或 ◀) 键选择 “DGTL D.D.” 或 “DGTL DTS”。

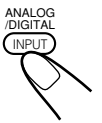
- 每次按该键, 数码输入模式按如下所示进行切换:



- DGTL AUTO** : 标准情况下选择此项。
DIGITAL AUTO 指示灯点亮。
主机自动检测传入的信号制式, 然后检测到了信号的声音信号指示灯点亮。
- DGTL D.D.** : 播放以杜比数码编码的软盘时选此项。
DIGITAL 指示灯点亮*。
- DGTL DTS** : 播放以 DTS 数码环绕声编码的软盘时选此项。
dts 指示灯点亮*。

* 当没有信号或者播放的信号制式不正确时这些指示灯闪烁。

当选择 DVD 作为播放源时, 反复按遥控器上的 ANALOG/DIGITAL INPUT 键亦可以切换数码输入模式。



注:

- 当 “DGTL AUTO” 检测不到传入的信号时, 显示屏上不会有声音信号指示灯点亮。
- 当您关闭主机或选择另外的播放源时, “DGTL DTS” 和 “DGTL D.D.” 被取消。
数码输入模式自动返回到 “DGTL AUTO”。

减弱输入信号

当模拟播放源的输入强度太高时，声音会失真。若发生此种情况，您必须减弱输入信号的强度以防止声音失真。

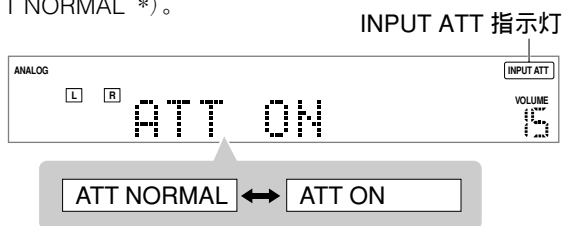
- 对应每个模拟播放源您必须进行此项调整。

仅在前面板上



持续按住 INPUT ATT. (INPUT ANALOG/DIGITAL) 键，直到 INPUT ATT 指示灯在显示屏上点亮。

- 每次按该键，输入信号衰减器启动（“ATT ON”）或关闭（“ATT NORMAL”*）。



- * “ATT NORMAL” 为初始内设定。

ATT NORMAL : 标准情况下选此项。模拟声音不减弱。

ATT ON : 模拟声音失真时选此项。

切换扫描模式

本机不但对应逐行扫描模式（480p*），也对应传统的隔行扫描模式（480i*）。

如果您的电视机上配带组合视频插孔并且可以接受逐行扫描视频输入，您便可以通过内设的 DVD 放像机欣赏到高质量的影像。

- 请同时参阅随电视机附带的使用手册。
- 当您“PAL”选作本机的彩色系统时，不能切换扫描模式。参阅第 7 和第 8 页。
- 您可以根据原始影像类型（电影源或视频源）来选择逐行扫描模式。参阅第 49 页。
- 在下列情况下请勿将扫描模式切换成“PROGRESSIVE”：
 - 电视机不接受逐行扫描视频输入时。
 - 不是使用组合视频导线将电视机连接到主机时。

仅从遥控器上



在选择 DVD 作为播放源时，持续按住 PROGRESSIVE 键 3 秒钟以上。

目前的扫描模式在显示屏上出现片刻。

- 每次按该键，扫描模式在“INTERLACE”*与“PROGRESSIVE”之间交替切换。

- * “INTERLACE” 为初始内设定。

INTERLACE : 使用传统电视机时选此项。

PROGRESSIVE : 如果您的电视机上配带的组合视频插孔可以接受逐行扫描视频输入时选此项。PROGRESSIVE 指示灯点亮。

注：

- 某些逐行扫描模式的电视机和高解像度的电视机可能与本系统不完全兼容。当以逐行扫描模式使用这些电视机播放 DVD VIDEO 时，可能出现异常影像。此种情况发生时，可将扫描模式切换至“INTERLACE”。想要知道您的电视机的兼容性时，可请教经销商。所有 JVC 牌逐行扫描模式的电视机和高解像度电视机均与本系统完全兼容。
- 当您选择“PROGRESSIVE”作为扫描模式时，影像不能通过综合视频和 S-视频插孔正确地输出。
- * 480p 和 480i 用来表示影像信号的扫描线数和扫描制式。
 - 480p 即指 480 条扫描线并使用逐行扫描制式。
 - 480i 即指 480 条扫描线并使用隔行扫描制式。

启动录音模式

当您播放多频道播放源时，录音模式具有将中央频道和后频道的信号降音整合到前频道信号里的功能，可使得您录下的声音里不丢失环绕声成分。

- 当在录音模式启动状态下播放多频道软盘时，声音被降音整合后仅从前置扬声器发出。

仅在前面板上



持续按住 REC MODE (SURROUND MODE) 键，直到“RECMODE ON”字样在显示屏上出现。

- 每次按该键，录音模式交替启动（“RECMODE ON”）或关闭（“RECMODE OFF”*）。
- * “RECMODE OFF” 为初始内设定。

RECMODE OFF : 标准情况下选此项。降音整合功能关闭。

RECMODE ON : 想要录制降音整合后的声音时选此项。

使用录像机进行录像时：

在录音模式处于启动状态时，您可以将影像录制到录像带上，但该影像无音量等级表示。

- 当您不想录制屏幕指南标时，请参阅第 52 页。
- 选项菜单和屏幕条形表只要在电视机上出现即会被录上。

注意：

前置扬声器太小时，自其发出的声音可能会因为使用录音模式而失真。遇此情形，可通过调低音量的办法来减少失真。

注：

- 当您关闭主机或选择另外的播放源时，录音模式会被取消（“RECMODE OFF”）。
- 声音调整数据（参阅第 23 和第 24 页）和环绕声模式（参阅第 25 至第 28 页）在录音时无效。
- 录音模式处于启动状态（“RECMODE ON”）时下列按键不工作：
 - 前面板上的 SETTING 和 ADJUST 键。
 - 前面板上的 SURROUND ON/OFF 和 SURROUND MODE 键。
 - 遥控器上用于调整声音的数字键。

DVD 放像机的基本操作

关于 DVD 放像机操作之详细说明请参阅第 29 至 42 页。

- 您还可以播放 MP3 和 JPEG 文件。参阅第 43 至 46 页。

- 想要切换本机的彩色系统时，参阅第 7 页。

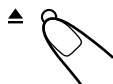
- 使用遥控器时，须首先按 DVD 键将遥控器接收模式切换到 DVD 放像机操作。

1 打开光盘托盘

在启动主机之前，须首先打开电视机并选择正确的视频输入（参阅随电视机附带的使用手册）。

- 如果您使用的是 JVC 牌电视机，可按遥控器上的 $\odot$ /I STANDBY/ON TV 键来打开电视机，并按 TV/VIDEO 键来选择视频输入。（如果您使用的不是 JVC 牌电视机，可参阅第 61 页上的“操作其它厂牌的设备”。）
- 想要将 OSD 信息 — 电视机上显示的信息 — 切换到您想要的语言时，请参阅第 47 至 49 页。

仅在前面板上



按 $\blacktriangle$ 键。

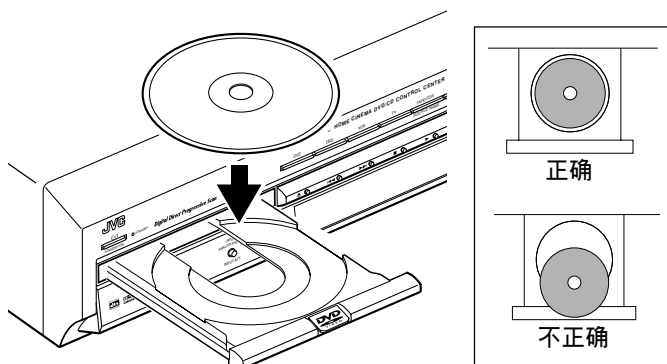
主机启动，光盘托盘开放。

STANDBY 熄灭，照明灯点亮。

- 准备好光盘后按 $\blacktriangleright$ 键启动主机，装入的光盘便开始播放。

2 装入光盘

使标签面朝上正确装入光盘。



3 开始播放



在前面板上



从遥控器上

按 $\blacktriangleright$ 键。

光盘托盘关闭，主机开始播放装入的光盘。

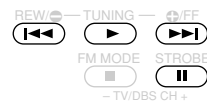
- 按前面板上的 $\blacktriangle$ 键亦可关闭光盘托盘。

按下列按键，您可以暂停播放，向前播放，倒退播放和指定标题，章节或曲目的开始处。



在前面板上

从遥控器上



想要暂时停止播放时

按 $\parallel$ 键。

- 按 $\blacktriangleright$ 键可恢复播放。

想要将播放位置倒回 10 秒钟时（仅指 DVD VIDEO）

在播放 DVD VIDEO 的中途按 $\blacktriangleleft$ 键。

主机将播放位置从目前的播出位置往回倒退 10 秒钟，然后开始向前播放。

想要快放或快倒时

持续按住 $\blacktriangleright\blacktriangleright$ 或 $\blacktriangleleft\blacktriangleleft$ 键。

当您持续按住 $\blacktriangleright\blacktriangleright$ （或 $\blacktriangleleft\blacktriangleleft$ ）键时，主机以正常速度的 5 倍进行快放（或快倒：对应 DVD VIDEO 和音频 CD）。再接下去按 $\blacktriangleright\blacktriangleright$ （或 $\blacktriangleleft\blacktriangleleft$ ）键时，主机的播放速度变成正常速度的 20 倍。

- 松开键即可恢复到正常速度。

想要指定章节或曲目的开始处时

按 $\blacktriangleright\blacktriangleright$ 或 $\blacktriangleleft\blacktriangleleft$ 键。

按 $\blacktriangleright\blacktriangleright$ （或 $\blacktriangleleft\blacktriangleleft$ ）键可指定下一个（目前的或者上一个）章节或曲目的开始处。

想要使用数字键指定章节或曲目时

按数字键（1-10, +10）选择您想要的章节或曲目之号码。

举例：想要选择 3 时，按 3。

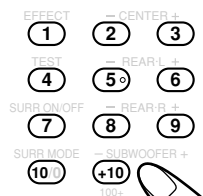
想要选择 11 时，按 +10，

然后按 1。

想要选择 20 时，按 +10，

然后按 10。

仅从遥控器上



关于光盘播放中显示屏上出现的信息

在光盘播出的过程中，在显示屏上出现如下播放信息：

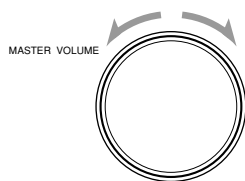
举例：装入 DVD VIDEO 时



举例：装入 CD 时



4 调整音量



在前面板上



从遥控器上

有关详细说明，请参阅第 11 页上的“基本操作”。

5 启动逼真音场

您可以通过启动环绕声模式的方法来建立逼真音场。

- 在播放数码多频道播放源（杜比数码或 DTS 数码环绕声软盘）或者 2-频道矩阵播放源（杜比环绕声软盘）时，环绕声模式会自动启动 — 自动环绕声功能（参阅第 22 页）。

当您想要手动启动或关闭环绕声模式时，可执行下述操作：

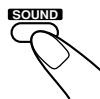
在前面板上：

按 SURROUND ON/OFF 键。



从遥控器上：

1) 按 SOUND 键。



2) 按 SURR ON/OFF 键。



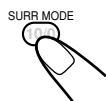
- 每次按前面板上的 SURROUND ON/OFF 键或遥控器上的 SURR ON/OFF 键时，环绕声模式交替启动和关闭。

6 选择环绕声模式

当 PRO LOGIC II 或 DSP 指示灯点亮时，您可以选择各种环绕声模式（参阅第 27 页）。



在前面板上



从遥控器上

按前面板上的 SURROUND MODE (REC MODE) 键或者遥控器上的 SURR MODE 键。

- 当您欣赏诸如杜比数码或 DTS 数码环绕声软盘等数码多频道播放源时，您不能切换环绕声模式。当您欣赏杜比数码或包括 2-频道矩阵播放源在内的 DTS 数码环绕声 2-频道如杜比数码环绕声软盘时，您可以从 PRO LOGIC II MOVIE 和 PRO LOGIC II MUSIC 二者之间进行选择（参阅第 27 页）。

7 停止播放



在前面板上



从遥控器上

按 ■ 键。

播放停止。

主机记忆播放停止点，RESUME 指示灯在显示屏上点亮（装入音频 CD 时除外）。

RESUME 指示灯在显示屏上点亮的过程中，按 ► 键可以从记忆点起继续往下播放 — 记忆播放。

关于记忆播放

在进行下述步骤的操作时，本机可以将该点记忆下来：

- 在播放中途按 ■ 键 — 按 ► 键开始记忆播放
- 切换播放源时 — 按 DVD 或 ► 键开始记忆播放
- 关闭主机（包括使用睡眠定时器）— 按 ► 键开始记忆播放

记忆播放一旦开始，RESUME 指示灯熄灭（主机自动清除记忆点）。

当您执行下述操作时，主机亦会清除记忆点：

- 开始记忆播放时
- 按 ■ 键时（RESUME 指示灯在显示屏上点亮的过程中）
- 在播放停止状态下按 ►► 或 ◀◀ 键选择视频 CD 和特版 VCD 上的曲目时
- 选择程序播放或随机播放模式时
- 按 TOP MENU 键时
- 退出装入的光盘时
- 按前面板上的 ◻/I STANDBY/ON 键或者按遥控器上的 ◻/I STANDBY/ON AUDIO 键启动主机时

您可以取消记忆播放功能（参阅第 52 页上的“其他菜单”）。

想要取出装入的光盘时

按 ▲ 键。

光盘托盘开放。

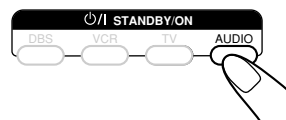
想要关闭光盘托盘时

再次按 ▲ 键。

8 关闭电源（进入待机模式）



在前面板上



从遥控器上

按前面板上的 ◻/I STANDBY/ON 键或者遥控器上的 ◻/I STANDBY/ON AUDIO 键。

主机关闭，STANDBY 灯在前面板上点亮。

- 如果您在光盘托盘伸出的过程中按下按键，光盘托盘会自动关闭，然后主机关闭。
- 在待机模式下始终有一小部分电量一直在消耗。想要完全切断电源时，须拔出交流电源线。

设定 AM 调谐器的间隔空间

某些国家将 AM（调幅）电台的间隔空间设定为 9 kHz，另一些国家则使用 10 kHz 的间隔空间。

- 9 kHz 为间隔空间的初始内设定。

仅在前面板上：

1 关闭主机。

- 确保插头仍插在墙上插座中。

2 切换间隔空间。

想要将 AM 调谐器设定成 9 kHz 间隔时：

按住 CONTROL ◀ 键的同时按 ⏻/I STANDBY/ON 键。

“9k STEP”字样在显示屏上出现片刻。



想要将 AM 调谐器设定成 10 kHz 间隔时：

按住 CONTROL ▶ 键的同时按 ⏻/I STANDBY/ON 键。

“10k STEP”字样在显示屏上出现片刻。



启动主机，即可变成切换后的间隔空间。

手动调收电台

在前面板上：

1 按 FM/AM 键选择波段。

被选波段里上一次接收的电台被调收。

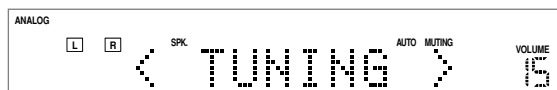
CONTROL 键现在可以用来操作调谐器。

- 每次按此键，波段在 FM 与 AM 之间交替切换。



举例：选择 FM 波段时

2 反复按 CONTROL ▼（或 ▲）键，直到 “< TUNING >” 字样在显示屏上出现。



3 在 “< TUNING >” 字样仍存留于显示屏的过程中反复或者持续按 CONTROL ▶（或 ◀）键直到找到所需频率。



- 按（或按住）CONTROL ▶ 键可递增频率。
- 按（或按住）CONTROL ◀ 键可递减频率。

从遥控器上：

1 按 FM/AM 键。

2 反复按或者持续按 TUNING + 或 - 键直到找到所需频率。

- 按（或按住）TUNING + 键可递增频率。
- 按（或按住）TUNING - 键可递减频率。

注：

- 在您按住及松开 CONTROL ▶（或遥控器上的 TUNING + 键）或者 CONTROL ◀（或遥控器上的 TUNING - 键）时，频率持续改变，直到收到某个电台。
- 当收到带有足够信号强度的电台时，TUNED 指示灯在显示屏上点亮。
- 当收到 FM 立体声节目时，STEREO 指示灯在显示屏上点亮。

使用预设调收功能

一旦电台被定下频道号码，该电台即可被快速调收。您最多可以预设 30 个 FM 电台和 15 个 AM 电台。

■ 想要储存预设电台时

开始操作之前，请记住…

以下步骤的操作受时间限制。若设定在完成之前被取消，请从步骤 2 起重新进行操作。

仅在前面板上：

1 调收您想要预设的电台（参阅“手动调收电台”）。

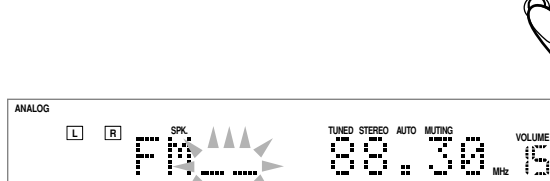
- 若您想要为该电台储存 FM 接收模式，请首先选择所需的 FM 接收模式。参阅第 18 页上的“选择 FM 接收模式”。



举例：选择 FM 波段时

2 按 MEMORY 键。

频道号码位置在显示屏上闪烁约 5 秒钟。



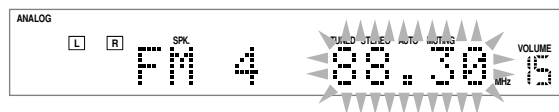
3 在频道号码位置闪烁的过程中按 CONTROL ▶（或 ◀）键选择频道号码。



4 当选择的频道号码在显示屏上闪烁时，再次按 MEMORY 键。

电台上配给了被选的频道号码。

- 被选频道号码停止闪烁，然后频率开始闪烁。



5 当频率在显示屏上闪烁的过程中按 CONTROL ► (或 ◀) 键选择您想要储存的其他频率。

6 重复步骤 2 至 5 直到储存完所有所需电台。

想要删除已储存的预设电台时

在用过的频道号码里储存新电台即可删除先前储存的电台。

■ 想要调收预设的电台时

在前面板上：

1 按 FM/AM 键选择波段。

被选波段里上一次接收的电台被调收。

CONTROL 键现在可以用来操作调谐器。



举例：选择 FM 波段时

2 反复按 CONTROL ▼ (或 ▲) 键，直到 “< PRESET >” 字样在显示屏上出现。



3 在 “< PRESET >” 字样仍存留于显示屏的过程中按 CONTROL ► (或 ◀) 键选择所需频道号码。



- 按 (或按住) CONTROL ► 键可递增预设频道号码。
- 按 (或按住) CONTROL ◀ 键可递减预设频道号码。

从遥控器上：

1 按 FM/AM 键。

被选波段里上一次接收的电台被调收。

数字键现在可以用来操作调谐器。

2 按数字键选择预设频道号码。

- 选择频道号码 5 时，按 5。
- 选择频道号码 15 时，按 +10，然后按 5。
- 选择频道号码 30 时，按 +10，+10，然后按 10。

选择 FM 接收模式

当 FM 立体声广播接收不良或出现噪音时，您可以利用在收听 FM 广播的过程中切换 FM 接收模式的方法来改善接收效果。

- 您可为每个预设电台储存 FM 接收模式。

开始操作之前，请记住…

以下步骤的操作受时间限制。若设定在完成之前被取消，请从步骤 1 起重新进行操作。

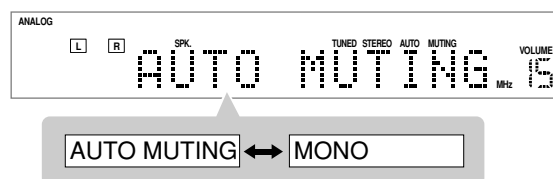
在前面板上：

1 在收听 FM 电台的过程中反复按 CONTROL ▼ (或 ▲) 键，直到 “< FM MODE >” 字样在显示屏上出现。



2 在 “< FM MODE >” 字样仍存留于显示屏的过程中按 CONTROL ► (或 ◀) 键选择 “MONO”。

- 每次按该键，FM 接收模式在 “AUTO MUTING” * 与 “MONO” 之间交替切换。



* “AUTO MUTING” 为初始内设定。如果您已经切换了设定，会显示出 “MONO” 字样。

AUTO MUTING: 标准情况下选此项。

当节目以立体声播出时，您听到的是立体声音；以单声道播出时，您听到的是单声道声音。该模式亦经常被用来遏止介于电台之间的静电嘈杂声。AUTO MUTING 指示灯在显示屏上点亮。

MONO: 选此项可以改善接收效果 (但立体声效果丢失)。

在此模式下，您会在调收电台的过程中听到噪音。AUTO MUTING 指示灯从显示屏上熄灭。(STEREO 指示灯亦熄灭。)

想要恢复立体声效果时

重复步骤 1，然后在步骤 2 中选择 “AUTO MUTING”。

从遥控器上：

1 按 FM/AM 键选择 FM 电台。

数字键现在可以用来操作调谐器。

2 按 FM MODE 键。

- 每次按该键，FM 接收模式在 “AUTO MUTING” 与 “MONO” 之间交替切换。

基本设定

有些设定要求在扬声器的连接和放置完成之后必须进行，而其他的设定是为了简化操作。
可以使用前面板上的 SETTING 键和 CONTROL ▲/▼/◀/▶ 键来设定项目。

设定的项目有：

- 前置，中置，后置扬声器和重低音扬声器信息*
- 前置，中置和后置扬声器的距离*
- 掩盖频率*
- 低频音效衰减器*
- 自动环绕声
- 动态范围压缩*
- 视频输出模式

注：

* 这些项目亦可以使用选项菜单进行设定（参阅第 47 至 52 页）。

操作键

为本机作基本设定时，须使用前面板上的按键。



仅在前面板上

按键	可用于
SETTING	显示在显示屏上出现的设定用信息*。
CONTROL ▲/▼	选择显示屏上的项目。 每次按该键，显示的信息按下图所示进行切换。
CONTROL ▶/◀	调整被选项目。

- 如果 5 秒钟之内没有进行操作，显示屏上的信息会消失。
- * 反复按 SETTING 键亦可取消显示的信息。

显示屏上的信息图示



操作程序

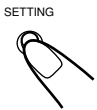
举例：当设定数码输入端子 (DIGITAL IN) 时。

开始操作之前，请记住...

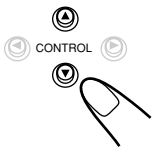
以下步骤的操作受时间限制。若设定在完成之前被取消，请从步骤 1 起重新进行操作。

1 按 SETTING 键。

CONTROL 键现在可以用于基本设定。上一次选择的设定项目在显示屏上出现。



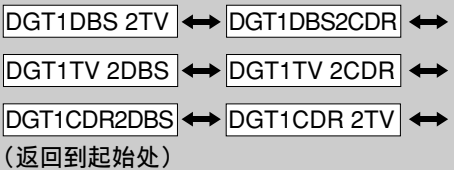
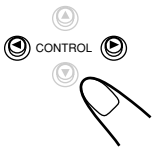
2 反复按 CONTROL ▼ (或 ▲) 键，直到“DGT (数码)”字样 (以及目前的设定)* 在显示屏上出现。



* “1DBS 2TV”为初始内设定。如果您已经切换了设定，会显示其他文字。

3 按 CONTROL ▶ (或 ◀) 键选择适当的数码端子设定。

• 每次按该键，信息切换如下：



■ 扬声器信息 —“SUBWFR(重低音)”，“FRNT SP(前置扬声器)”，“CNTR SP(中置扬声器)”，和“REAR SP(后置扬声器)”

为了从环绕声模式获得最佳环绕声效果（参阅第 25 至 28 页），在完成所有的连接工作之后请登记下列信息。

● 对应重低音：



选择下列设定之一：

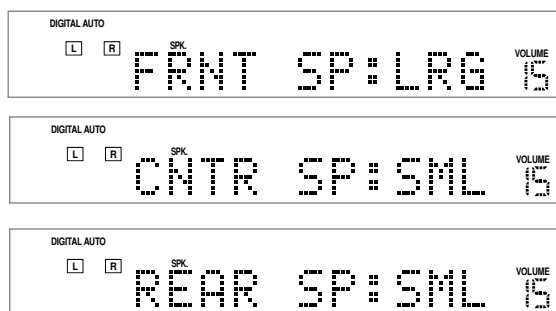
YES : 连接了重低音时选此项。

NO : 不使用重低音时选此项。

注：

- “NO”为初始内设定。
- 为重低音选择了“NO”之后，便仅能为前置扬声器选择“LARGE”。

● 对应前置扬声器，中置扬声器和后置扬声器：



为每种扬声器选择下列设定之一：

LRG (大) : 扬声器的尺寸相对较大时选此项。

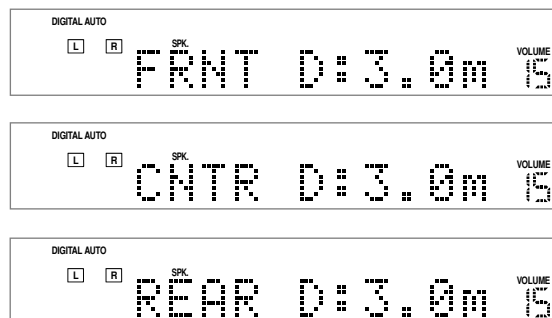
SML (小) : 扬声器的尺寸相对较小时选此项。

NO : 未连接扬声器时选此项。（对前置扬声器不能选择此项）

注：

- “LRG (大)”为前置扬声器的初始内设定，“SML (小)”为中置和后置扬声器的初始内设定。
- 在调整设定时，请记住下列事项以供调整时参考。
 - 若扬声器内建的圆锥形喇叭的尺寸大于 12 cm，选择“LRG (大)”；若小于 12 cm，选择“SML (小)”。
- 若已为前置扬声器选择了“SML (小)”，便不能为中置扬声器和后置扬声器选择“LRG (大)”。

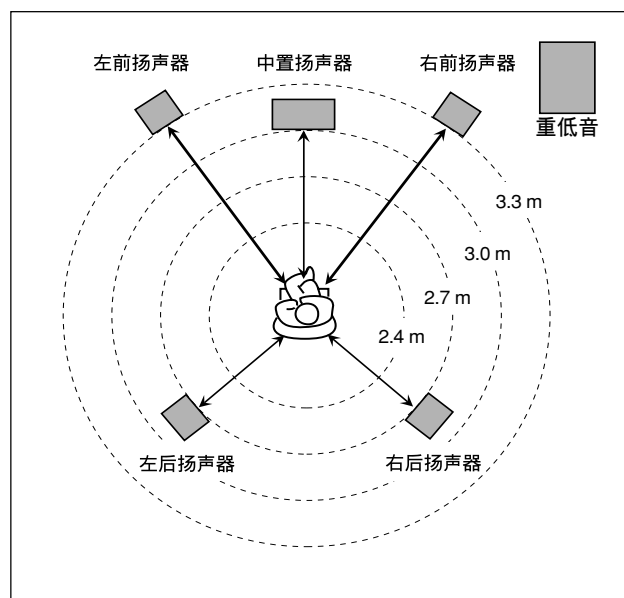
■ 扬声器距离 —“FRNT D(前置距离)”，“CNTR D (中置距离)”，和“REAR D(后置距离)”



从视听位置到扬声器的距离是获得最佳环绕声效果的另一个重要的因素。

您需要设定从视听位置到各扬声器之间的距离。通过设定扬声器距离，本机可自动设定自每个扬声器发出的声音的延迟时间，这样便可同步听到从所有扬声器发出的声音。

从视听位置到扬声器的距离可在 0.3 m 至 9.0 m 的范围内以 0.3 m 为变换梯度进行设定。



举例： 在本例当中，
将“FRNT D”设定成“3.3 m”，
将“CNTR D”设定成“3.0 m”，以及
将“REAR D”设定成“2.7 m”。

注：

- “3.0 m”为初始内设定。如果您已经切换了设定，会显示其他设定值。
- 若已为中置扬声器和后置扬声器选择“NO”，便不能为中置和后置扬声器设定扬声器距离。

■ 掩盖频率 — “CROSS (掩盖)”



小扬声器不能有效地重现低音。若您在任意位置使用了一个小扬声器，本机自动地将分配给小扬声器的低音成分重新分配给大扬声器。

为了正确使用此项功能，须根据所连接的小扬声器之尺寸来设定掩盖频率之等级。

- 若已将所有的扬声器选择在“LRG (大)”，此功能便无效。

选择下列设定之一：

80Hz	: 扬声器内建的圆锥形喇叭约为 12 cm 时选此频率。
100Hz	: 扬声器内建的圆锥形喇叭约为 10 cm 时选此频率。
120Hz	: 扬声器内建的圆锥形喇叭约为 8 cm 时选此频率。
150Hz	: 扬声器内建的圆锥形喇叭约为 6 cm 时选此频率。
200Hz	: 扬声器内建的圆锥形喇叭小于 5 cm 时选此频率。

注：

- “100Hz”为初始内设定。如果您已经切换了设定，会显示其他频率。
- 掩盖频率在 HEADPHONE 模式下无效。

■ 低频音效衰减器 — “LFE”



若在播放以 Dolby Digital (杜比数码) 或 DTS Digital Surround (DTS 数码环绕声) 编码的软盘时发生低音失真，可通过设定 LFE 等级来减少失真。

- 此功能仅在 LFE 信号传入时有效。

选择下列设定之一：

0dB	: 标准情况下选此项。
-10dB	: 发生低音失真时选此项。

注：

- “0dB”为初始内设定。如果您已经切换了设定，会显示出“-10dB”。

■ 动态范围压缩 — “D.COMP”



您可以压缩播出的声音的动态范围 (最大声音和最小声音之差)。在夜晚欣赏环绕声时此功能非常有效。

- 此功能仅在使用以 Dolby Digital (杜比数码) 编码的播放源时才有效。

选择下列设定之一：

OFF	: 想要使用全动态范围欣赏环绕声时选此项。(不体现效果。)
MID	: 想要适当减小动态范围时选此项。
MAX	: 想要最大力度地缩小动态范围时选此项。(用于夜晚。)

注：

- “MID”为初始内设定。如果您已经切换了设定，将显示其他设定。

■ 数码输入 (DIGITAL IN) 端子 — “DGT”



使用数码输入端子时，您必须登记哪个组件连接到了哪个端子 (DIGITAL IN 1/DIGITAL IN 2)。登记之后，当您选择数码播放源时才能正确显示播放源名称。

设定适当的数码端子设定

- 每次按 CONTROL ► 或 ◀ 键，显示屏切换显示如下：

1 DBS 2 TV ⇄ 1 DBS 2 CDR ⇄ 1 TV 2 DBS ⇄
1 TV 2 CDR ⇄ 1 CDR 2 DBS ⇄ 1 CDR 2 TV ⇄
(返回到起始处)

注：

- “1DBS 2TV”为初始内设定。如果您已经切换了设定，将显示其他文字。
- 若想将 CD 录音机连接至数码输入端子时，须将播放源名称由“TAPE”切换成“CDR”。
详情请参阅第 12 页上的“切换播放源名称”。

■ 自动环绕声 — “AUTO SR”



当您欣赏诸如杜比数码或 DTS 数码环绕声软盘等数码多频道播放源，或者杜比环绕声等 2-频道矩阵播放源时，环绕声模式会自动启动。

只需选择播放源便可轻而易举地欣赏环绕声模式（前提是已为播放源选择了数码输入）— Auto Surround（自动环绕声功能）。

选择下列设定之一：

- ON** : AUTO SURROUND 指示灯始终在显示屏上点亮。
- 如果传入的是多频道信号，适当的环绕声模式将自动启动。
 - 如果传入的是含有环绕声信号的杜比数码 2-频道或 DTS 2-频道信号，将自动选取“PL II MOVIE”。
 - 如果传入的是不含环绕声信号的杜比数码 2-频道或 DTS 2-频道信号，将自动选取“STEREO”。
 - 如果传入的是其他信号，无变化。

OFF : 想要关闭自动环绕声模式时选此项。

注：

- “ON”为初始内设定。如果您已经切换了设定，会显示“OFF”。
- 本功能在下列情况下无效：
 - 播放模拟播放源时。
 - 选择“DGTL D.D.”或“DGTL DTS”作为固定的数码输入模式时（参阅第 13 页）。
- 若您在自动环绕声模式处于启动状态下按 SURROUND ON/OFF（或遥控器上的 SURR ON/OFF）键，对应目前选择的播放源自动环绕声模式将暂时关闭。
在下列情况下自动环绕声设定将自动恢复：
 - 关闭和启动主机时。
 - 切换播放源时。
 - 切换模拟/数码输入时，以及
 - 将“AUTO SR”还原设定成“ON”时。

■ 视频输出模式 — “VOUT”



将电视机连接到主机上之后，须登记所连接的输出端子的类型 — VIDEO，S-VIDEO，还是 DVD COMPONENT VIDEO OUT。

不作此项设定，当选择 DVD 作为播放源时

AV COMPU LINK 功能将不会正确运作（参阅第 57 和 58 上的“AV COMPU LINK（AV 电脑连动功能）遥控系统”）。

适当设定输出端子：

VIDEO : 使用综合视频导线将电视机连接至主机的 VIDEO 插孔时选此项。

S : 使用 S-视频导线将电视机连接至主机的 S-VIDEO 插孔时选此项。

COMPNT : 使用组合视频导线将电视机连接至主机的 DVD COMPONENT VIDEO OUT 插孔时选此项。

注：

- “VIDEO”为初始内设定。如果您已经切换了设定，会显示其他设定。

声音调整

在扬声器的连接和放置完成之后要求进行下列设定。

可以使用前面板上的 ADJUST 键和 CONTROL ▲/▼/◀/▶ 键来调整项目。

调整的项目有：

- 前置扬声器的输出均衡*
- 音调*
- 扬声器输出等级*
- DAP 音效等级

注：

- 调整项目的设定内容会记忆储存给每个播放源。
- * 这些项目亦可以使用选项菜单进行设定（参阅第 47 至 52 页）。

操作键

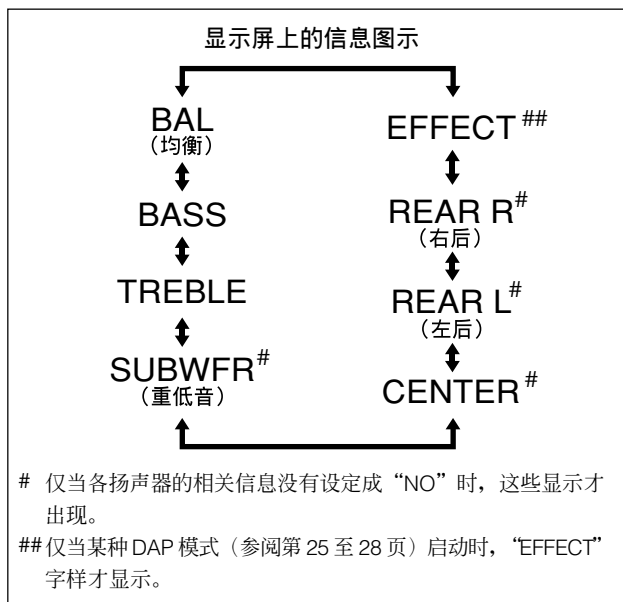
为本机作基本设定时，须使用前面板上的按键。



仅在前面板上*

按键	可用于
ADJUST	显示在显示屏上出现的调整用信息**。
CONTROL ▲/▼	选择显示屏上的项目。 每次按该键，显示的信息按下图所示进行切换。
CONTROL ▶/◀	调整被选项目。

- 如果 5 秒钟之内没有进行操作，显示屏上的信息将消失。
- * 除了前置扬声器的输出均衡之外，您还可以使用遥控器来进行声音调整。
- ** 反复按 ADJUST 键亦可取消显示的信息。



操作程序

举例：当设定前置扬声器的输出均衡时。

开始操作之前，请记住…

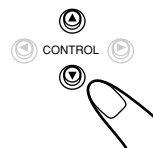
以下步骤的操作受时间限制。若设定在完成之前被取消，请从步骤 1 起重新进行操作。

1 按 ADJUST 键。

CONTROL 键现在可以用于声音调整。上一次选择的设定项目在显示屏上出现。



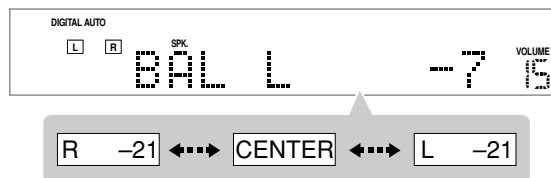
2 反复按 CONTROL ▼（或 ▲）键，直到“BAL（平衡）”字样（以及目前的设定）* 在显示屏上出现。



* “CENTER” 为初始内设定。如果您已经切换了设定，会显示其他设定。

3 按 CONTROL ▶（或 ◀）键调整前置扬声器的均衡。

- 每次按该键，信息按如下所示进行切换：



■ 前置扬声器的输出均衡 — “BAL(均衡)”



若从右前置扬声器和左前置扬声器中听到的声音不平衡，可以调整扬声器的输出均衡。

可从视听位置在 R (右) -21 至 CENTER (0) 或 CENTER (0) 至 L (左) -21 的范围内适当调整输出均衡。

注：

- “CENTER” 为初始内设定。如果您已经切换了设定，会显示其他设定。

■ 音调 — “BASS” 和 “TREBLE”



您可以按个人意愿调整低音和高音。

您可在 -10 至 +10 的范围内以 2 为变换梯度调整音调。

注：

- “0” 为初始内设定。如果您已经切换了设定，会显示其他设定。

■ 扬声器输出等级 — “SUBWFR(重低音)”，“CENTER”，“REAR L(左)”，和 “REAR R(右)”



若您已经正确设定了扬声器信息即可以调整扬声器的输出等级。

- 当其中某一种环绕声模式处于启动状态时（参阅第 27 页），您仅可以调整中置和/或后置扬声器的输出等级。

您可在 -10 至 +10 的范围内以 1 为变换梯度调整扬声器的输出等级。

注：

- “0” 为初始内设定。如果您已经切换了设定，将显示其他的设定。

■ DAP 音效等级 — “EFFECT”



在其中某一种 DAP 模式处于启动状态下（DSP 指示灯在显示屏上点亮），您可以调整音效等级。

关于 DAP 模式之详细说明，请参阅参阅第 25 至 28 页。

您可在 1 至 5 的范围内调整音效等级。

注：

- “3” 为初始内设定。如果您已经切换了设定，将显示其他的设定。

从遥控器上调整声音

1 按 SOUND 键。

数字键现在可以用来进行声音调整。

2 按如下所述调整声音等级：

想要调整重低音时，按 SUBWOOFER + 或 - 键。

想要调整中置扬声器时，按 CENTER + 或 - 键。

想要调整左后扬声器时，按 REAR•L + 或 - 键。

想要调整右后扬声器时，按 REAR•R + 或 - 键。

想要调整音效等级时（对应 DAP 模式），按 EFFECT 键。

关于自动记忆功能

在下述情况下本机自动将设定内容记忆储存给每个播放源：

- 关闭电源时（参阅第 11 页），
- 切换播放源时（参阅第 11 页），
- 切换播放源名称时（参阅第 12 页），以及
- 切换模拟/数码输入模式时（参阅第 13 页）。

切换播放源时，为最新选择的播放源所储存的设定被自动叫出。

下列设定可储存给每个播放源：

- 模拟/数码输入模式（参阅第 13 页）
- 输入衰减器模式（参阅第 14 页）
- 前置扬声器的输出均衡（参阅上述或第 50 页）
- 扬声器的输出等级（参阅上述或第 51 页）
- 音调调整数据（参阅上述或第 50 页）
- DAP 音效等级（参阅上述）
- 环绕声模式选择内容（参阅第 27 页）

注：

- 如果播放源是 FM 或 AM，您可为每个波段作不同的设定。

您可以使用下述的环绕声模式来创造逼真的音场：

■ Dolby Surround (杜比环绕声)

- Dolby Pro Logic II (杜比专业逻辑 II)
- Dolby Digital (杜比数码)

■ DTS Digital Surround (DTS 数码环绕声)

■ DAP (数码声学处理器) 模式

■ All Channel Stereo (全频道立体声)

■ Dolby Surround (杜比环绕声)

Dolby Pro Logic II (杜比专业逻辑 II)*

Dolby Pro Logic II (杜比专业逻辑 II) 模式含有新开发的多频道播放制式，可以将所有的 2 频道播放源 — 立体声播放源和以杜比环绕声编码的播放源 — 解码成 5.1 频道的信号。基于短阵的杜比专业逻辑 II 编码/解码方法与传统的杜比专业逻辑相比，它对后高音的截止频率不加限制，而且可以解码立体后音声。

使用杜比专业逻辑 II 模式时，不用在原声里增加任何新的修饰音和润色音即可再生出浩瀚辽阔令人心旷神怡的声音。

杜比专业逻辑 II 具有两种模式 — 影像模式和音乐模式：

Pro Logic II 影像 (PL II MOVIE) — 适合于播放以杜比环绕声编码，带有  标记的软件。您可以欣赏到非常接近于使用分离式 5.1 频道音声建立起来的音场。

Pro Logic II 音乐 (PL II MUSIC) — 适合于播放任何 2 频道立体声播放源。使用此模式您可以欣赏到宽广辽阔深沉有力的音声。

- 当杜比专业逻辑 II 模式启动时， PRO LOGIC II 指示灯在显示屏上点亮。

Dolby Digital (杜比数码)*

用以再生以杜比数码 (带  标志) 编码的软盘上的多频道声音曲目。

- 想要欣赏以杜比数码编码的软盘时，须使用本机后面板上的数码端子连接播放源组件。(参阅第 10 页。)

Dolby Digital 5.1 频道编码方式 (也被称为分离式多频道数码音频制式) 以数码方式编码和压缩左前频道，右前频道，中央频道，左后频道，右后频道和 LFE 频道的信号。

因为每个频道与其他频道的信号是完全分离的，这样可以防止干扰，因此，您可以获得带有高度立体声效果和环绕声效果的，相当出色的音声质量。

注：

- 杜比数码或 DTS 软盘大致可以分为两种 — 多频道 (最高 5.1 频道) 和 2-频道软盘。想要在播放杜比数码 2-频道或 DTS 软盘的过程中欣赏环绕声时，您可以使用 Dolby Pro Logic II (杜比专业逻辑 II)。

■ DTS Digital Surround (DTS 数码环绕声)**

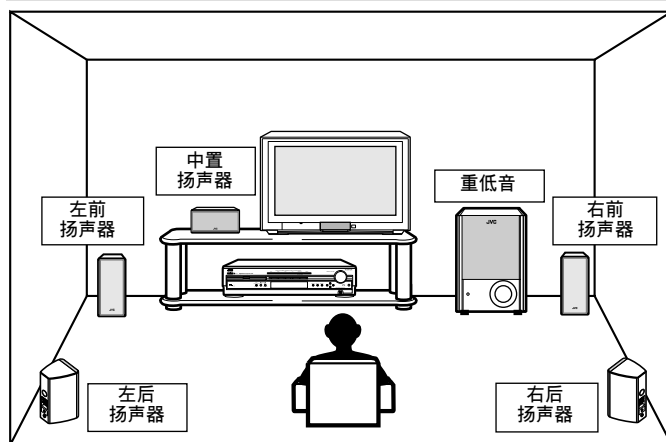
用以再生以 DTS 数码环绕声 (带  标志) 编码的软盘上的多频道声音曲目。

- 想要欣赏以 DTS 数码环绕声编码的软盘时，须使用本机后面板上的数码端子连接播放源组件。(参阅第 10 页。)

DTS Digital Surround 是指另一种可用于 CD, LD 以及 DVD 软盘的模拟分离式多频道数码音频制式。

与杜比数码相比，其音频压缩比相对较低。这就为 DTS 数码环绕声制式再生的声音增加了广度和深度。其结果是，DTS 数码环绕声再生出来的声音相比之下更加自然，圆润和清晰。

经典的多频道 (5.1 频道) 再生方法



■ DAP (数码声学处理器) 模式

DAP 模式的开发设计为环绕立体声的产生创造了重要的因素。

在现场音乐厅，舞厅，音乐厅或展览厅，听到的声音包含直接声音和间接声音 — 早反射和自后方来的反射。直接声音在无任何反射下传递给听众。而间接声音则因天花板和墙壁的距离而有所延迟 (参阅下页图示)。

间接声音是产生环绕立体声效果的重要因素。通过增加这些间接声音，DAP 模式可以烘托出逼真的音场。

当本机上连接有前置和后置扬声器时可以使用 DAP 模式 (与是否连接了中置扬声器无关：因为即使连接了中置扬声器亦无声音从其发出)。

* 经杜比实验室授权生产。“杜比”，“Dolby”，“Pro Logic”和双 D 标志是杜比实验室的商标。

** 经数码影院音响公司授权制造。美国专利号码为 5,451,942，并在世界各地的专利申请中。“DTS”和“DTS Digital Surround”为数码影院音响公司之商标。©1996 数码影院音响公司。版权所有，翻印必究。

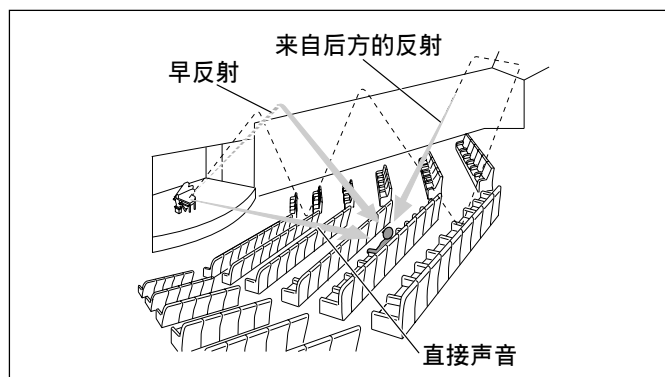
本机配备下列几种 DAP 模式。

LIVE CLUB	: 给您一种置身于低天花板现场音乐厅的感觉。
DANCE CLUB	: 为您制造一种激动的低音节拍。
HALL	: 给您一种声音清晰悦耳, 并且仿佛置身于音乐厅的感觉。
PAVILION	: 给您一种仿佛置身于高天花板展览大厅般的辽阔感觉。

无论是模拟还是线性 PCM 数码信号, 在播放这两种 2-频道立体声软盘的过程中, 上述 DAP 模式都可以用来增强立体环绕声效果, 并给您带来真正“身临其境”的感觉。

- 当其中一种 DAP 模式被选时, DSP 指示灯在显示屏上点亮。

创造音场



■ All Channel Stereo (全频道立体声)

此模式通过使用所有连接 (并启动了) 的扬声器来创造出更大的立体声音场。

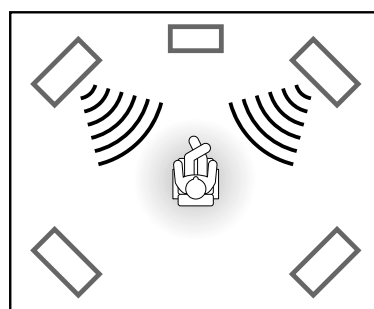
无论是否连接了中置扬声器, 只要本机上连接有前置和后置扬声器便可以使用全频道立体声模式。

如果连接并启动了中置扬声器, 左前和右前信号的脉冲将被混合, 然后自中置扬声器传出。

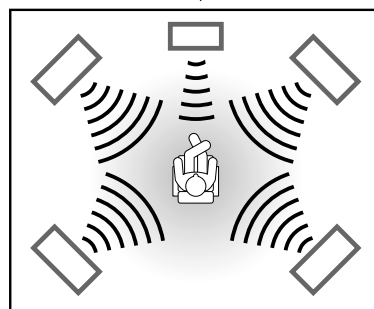
无论是模拟还是线性 PCM 数码信号, 在播放这两种 2-频道立体声软盘的过程中您都可以使用全频道立体声模式。

- 当全频道立体声模式被选时, DSP 指示灯在显示屏上点亮。

全频道立体声播放



标准立体声再生出的声音



全频道立体声再生出的声音

与各种输入信号相对应的环绕声模式

○: 可以使用 / ×: 不可以使用

模式 信号	STEREO	DOLBY DIGITAL	DTS SURROUND	PLII MOVIE	PLII MUSIC	LIVE CLUB	DANCE CLUB	HALL	PAVILION	ALL CH ST.
杜比数码 (多频道)	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
杜比数码 (2-频道)	○	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	×
杜比环绕声 (矩阵 2-频道)	○	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	×
DTS 数码 环绕声 (多频道)	○	×	○	×	×	×	×	×	×	×
DTS 数码 环绕声 (2-频道)	○	×	×	○	○	×	×	×	×	×
线性 PCM	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
模拟	○	×	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

启动环绕声模式

当自动环绕声模式设定在“OFF”，或者播放除杜比环绕声软盘之外的 2-频道播放源时，须手动启动环绕声模式。
前提必须是已经正确设定了扬声器信息(参阅第 20 页或 51 页)。
• 如果仅连接了前置扬声器，您便不能启动任何环绕声模式。

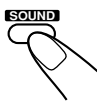
在前面板上：

按 SURROUND ON/OFF 键。
SURROUND 指示灯在显示屏上点亮（当自动环绕声模式设定在“OFF”时）。
• 每次按该键，环绕声模式交替启动或关闭。



从遥控器上：

1 按 SOUND 键。
数字键现在可以用来进行声音调整。

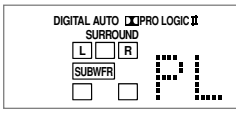
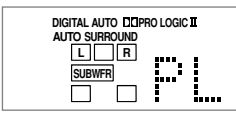


2 按 SURR ON/OFF 键。
SURROUND 指示灯在显示屏上点亮（当自动环绕声模式设定在“OFF”时）。
• 每次按该键，环绕声模式交替启动或关闭。



关于 SURROUND 指示灯

- 当自动环绕声模式设定在“ON”时，AUTO SURROUND 指示灯始终在显示屏上点亮。
- 当自动环绕声模式设定在“OFF”而手动启动环绕声模式时，SURROUND 指示灯开始在显示屏上点亮。



选择环绕声模式

在环绕声模式处于启动状态下播放 2-频道播放源时，您可以选择另外的环绕声模式。
基于所连接的扬声器的数量和播放的音响不同，可以使用的环绕声模式可能不一样。
前提必须是已正确设定了扬声器信息（参阅第 20 页或 51 页）。
• 若未连接后置扬声器便不能使用 DAP 模式和全频道立体声。

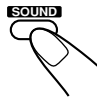
在前面板上：

按 SURROUND MODE 键。
• 每次按该键，环绕声模式按下图所示进行切换。



从遥控器上：

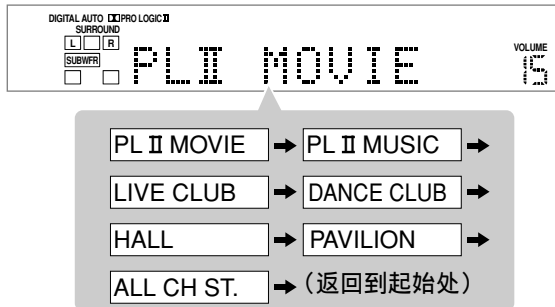
1 按 SOUND 键。
数字键现在可以用来进行声音调整。



2 按 SURR MODE 键。
• 每次按该键，环绕声模式按下图所示进行切换。



当连接了 5 个或 4 个扬声器（中置扬声器不算）时：



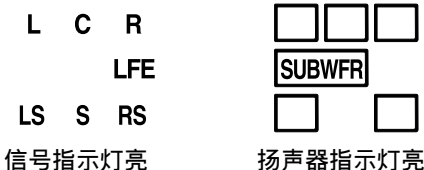
当连接了 3 个扬声器（后置扬声器不算）或者播放含有矩阵播放源在内的杜比数码软盘时：



显示屏上的信号和扬声器指示灯

下述信号指示灯点亮：

- L, R : 选择数码输入时：与各自频道相对应的信号传入时点亮。
• 选择模拟输入时：始终点亮。
- C, LS, RS : 与各自频道相对应的信号传入时点亮。
- S : 单声道后频道信号或者以杜比环绕声编码的信号传入时点亮。
- LFE : LFE 频道信号传入时点亮。



在下列情况下扬声器指示灯点亮：

- 当“SUBWFR”设定在“YES”（参阅第 20 页）或“USE”（参阅第 51 页）时重低音扬声器指示灯（SUBWFR）点亮。
- 其它扬声器仅当其处于启动状态，或者目前的播放需要它时与其相关的指示灯才点亮。

使用遥控器调整环绕声模式

在使用环绕声模式播放播放源时，您可为环绕声模式调整扬声器的输出等级。

环绕声模式一经调整，调整数据会记忆储存给每个播放源。

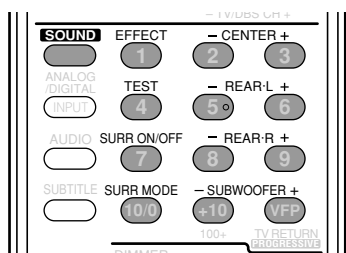
- 您还可以使用选项菜单（参阅第 47 至 52 页）或者前面板上的按键（参阅第 24 页）来调整环绕声模式。
- 使用测试音时，不用播放音响即可调整扬声器的输出等级。

1 选择您想要播放的软盘。

2 启动并选择环绕声模式。

- 播放 2-频道播放源时，您可以选择环绕声模式。

3 调整声音。



1) 按 SOUND 键。

数字键现在可以用来进行声音调整。

2) 按如下所述调整扬声器的输出等级：

- 想要调整中置扬声器时，按 CENTER +/- 键。*
- 想要调整左后扬声器时，按 REAR•L +/- 键。
- 想要调整右后扬声器时，按 REAR•R +/- 键。
- 想要调整重低音时，按 SUBWOOFER +/- 键。
- 想要调整音效等级时，按 EFFECT 键。**

目前调整的项目之名称在显示屏上出现。有关详情请参阅第 24 页上的“扬声器输出等级”插图。

注：

- 您仅能为启动状态下的扬声器调整其输出等级（扬声器指示灯在显示屏上点亮）。
- * 当其中一种 DAP 模式启动时，您不能调整中置扬声器的输出等级。
- ** 当其中一种 DAP 模式启动时，您可以调整音效等级。
- 在使用遥控器操作 DVD 放像机之前，须首先按 DVD 键将遥控器操作模式切换成 DVD。

关于使用测试音

1) 按 SOUND 键。

2) 按 TEST 键。

在播放中途播出的声音停止。

“TEST L”字样开始在显示屏上闪烁，测试音按下列顺序自扬声器传出：



3) 按如下所述调整扬声器的输出等级：

想要调整中置扬声器时，按 CENTER +/- 键。

想要调整左后扬声器时，按 REAR•L +/- 键。

想要调整右后扬声器时，按 REAR•R +/- 键。

注：

- 如果已经将扬声器信息设定在“NO”，您便不能调整扬声器的输出等级。
- 如果将扬声器信息设定在“NO”，该扬声器便不发出测试音。
- 当您按 EFFECT 或 SUBWOOFER +/- 键时，测试音停止。

4) 按 TEST 键停止测试音。

测试音停止。

- 约 1 分钟之内不进行操作时，测试音会自动停止。

环绕声模式与可以调整的项目之间的关系

○：可以调整 ×：不可以调整

模式 \ 项目	TEST	CENTER	REAR•L	REAR•R	SUBWOOFER	EFFECT
杜比数码	○	○	○	○	○	×
DTS 数码环绕声	○	○	○	○	○	×
杜比专业逻辑 II	○	○	○	○	○	×
DAP	○	×	○	○	○	○
全频道立体声	○	○	○	○	○	×

注：

- 您不能用所选的环绕声模式来调整使用的扬声器。

光盘信息

可以播放的光盘类型

由本机的设计决定可以播放下列光盘：

DVD VIDEO，视频 CD（VCD），特版视频 CD（SVCD），音频 CD，CD-R 和 CD-RW。

- 本机还可以播放灌录到 CD-R 和 CD-RW 上的 MP3 和 JPEG 文件。关于 MP3 之更详细的说明请参阅第 43 和 44 页上的“播放 MP3 光盘”，关于 JPEG 之更详细的说明请参阅第 45 和 46 页上的“播放 JPEG 光盘”。
- 本手册中提及的视频 CD 即指 VCD，特版视频 CD 即指 SVCD，音频 CD 即指 CD。

可以播放的光盘：

光盘类型	DVD VIDEO	VCD	SVCD	CD	CD-R	CD-RW
标记（商标）	 	 Video CD	 			

下列光盘不能播放：

DVD AUDIO，DVD-ROM，DVD-RAM，DVD-RW，CD-ROM，CD-I（CD-I 就绪），摄影 CD，等。

播放这些光盘将产生噪音并可能损坏扬声器。

- 某些 DVD VIDEO，VCD，或 SVCD 光盘的实际操作方法可能与本手册当中所述的方法不一致。其原因来自光盘的灌录方式和光盘的构造，并非本系统发生故障。
- 可以播放以 DVD VIDEO 制式录制的 DVD-R，但基于光盘的特性及录音状态等原因有些光盘可能无法播放。

关于区域代码

DVD 放像机和 DVD VIDEO 光盘皆有其自己的区域代码。本机仅能播放区域代码中含有“4”并以 NTSC/PAL 彩色系统录制的 DVD VIDEO 光盘。



当装入的 DVD VIDEO 光盘之区域代码不正确时，“区域代码错误！”字样在显示屏上出现，并且该光盘不能播放。

重要事项：在开始播放光盘之前，请注意下列事项……

- 检查本机与电视机之间的连接状况。
- 打开电视机并在电视机上选择正确的输入模式，这样便可在电视屏幕上观看到影像或屏幕信息。
- 关于怎样播放光盘，您可以随意改变初始内设定。（参阅第 47 至 55 页。）

在按下按键时如果电视屏幕上出现 ，表示该光盘不接受您试图进行的操作，或者光盘上未灌录此项操作所需的信息。

注意：在某些情况下，即使  不出现，操作也可能不被接受。

关于 CD-R 和 CD-RW

- 用户编辑的 CD-R（可以灌录）和 CD-RW（可以反复灌录）仅当其已经“上锁”之后才能播放。
- 本机可以播放以音频 CD 制式在个人电脑上灌录的 CD-R 或 CD-RW。

本机还可以播放录有 MP3 或 JPEG 文件的 CD-R 或 CD-RW。然而，由于光盘的特性，灌录状态或带有伤痕或污点等原因，此类光盘也许不能播放。尤其是 MP3 光盘或 JPEG 光盘的形状和特性取决于记录（编码）用的软件和灌录用的硬件。因此，由于使用的软件和硬件的原因，可能出现下列症状：

- 某些光盘可能不能播放。
- MP3 光盘上的某些曲目可能被跳过或不能正常播放。
- JPEG 光盘上的某些文件可能发生失真。
- 在播放 CD-R 或 CD-RW 之前，请仔细阅读其使用说明或注意事项。
- CD-RW 可能需要较长的读出时间。这是因为 CD-RW 的反射比较普通 CD 低的缘故。

想要切换本机的彩色系统时，请参阅第 7 页。

■ 光盘的构造

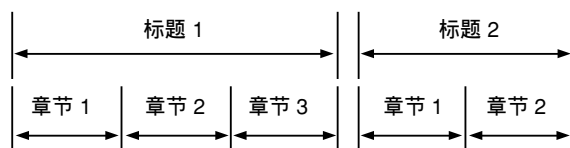
DVD VIDEO 光盘含有“标题”，每个标题又细分成若干“章节”。(参阅例子 1。)

比如说，如果一张 DVD VIDEO 光盘含有多个影片，每个影片可有各自的**标题**号码，并且标题还可以进一步细分成若干**章节**。在 DVD VIDEO 卡拉 OK 光盘上，每首歌曲可能还有其自己的**标题**号码，但它不能进一步细分出**章节**。

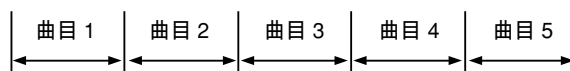
与其相对应，**VCD**，**SVCD** 和 **CD** 则由“曲目”组成。(参阅例子 2。)

一般来说，每首曲目应有其各自的**曲目**号码。(在某些光盘上，每首曲目还可以用曲标进行分割。本机与曲标功能不兼容。)

例子 1: DVD VIDEO



例子 2: VCD/SVCD/CD



■ 播放控制功能 (PBC)

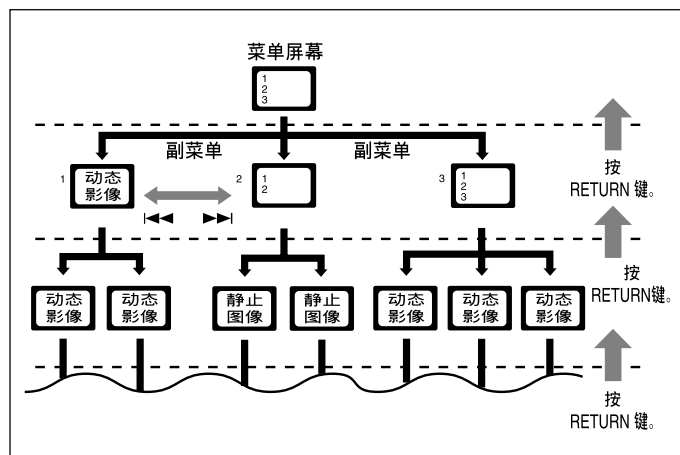
播放控制功能可令您欣赏菜单驱动操作。

菜单驱动播放

当您开始播放带有播放控制功能的 VCD 和 SVCD 光盘时，选项菜单出现。选项菜单上列出供您选择用的项目表。某些光盘可能显示的是动态影像或分割画面。

您可以通过使用菜单显示来选择和播放项目的方法而进行屏幕操作。

请看下述插图所示的菜单驱动播放的基本功能 (关于使用菜单进行操作的详细说明请参阅第 33 页)。



注:

在使用菜单操作 VCD 或 SVCD 的过程中，某些功能如重复播放功能可能不生效。

DVD 放像机之操作

本章叙述使用遥控器进行内设 DVD 放像机的高级操作。

关于 MP3 播放请参阅第 43 和 44 页，关于 JPEG 播放请参阅第 45 和 46 页。

在使用遥控器操作之前，须首先按 DVD 键切换遥控器操作模式。

- 参阅第 15 和 16 页上的“DVD 放像机的基本操作”。
-     表示此项操作可以用于哪些种类的光盘。
- 启动电视机并在电视机上选择正确的输入模式。

在按下按键时如果电视屏幕上出现 ，表示该光盘不接受您试图进行的操作，或者光盘上未灌录此项操作所需的信息。

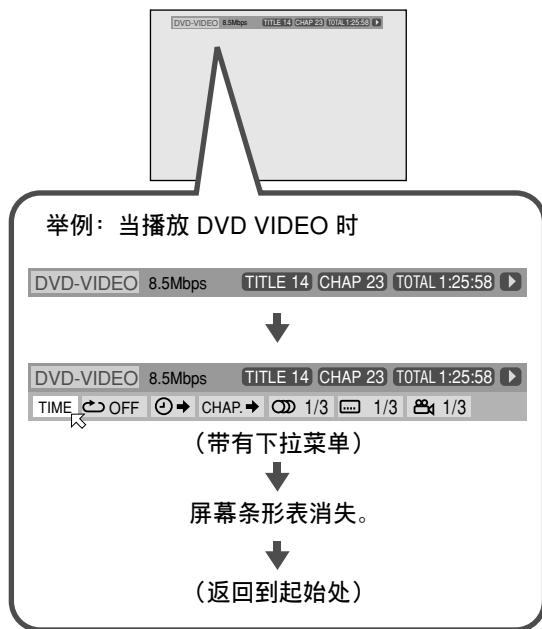
使用屏幕条形表

装入光盘时，您可以检查光盘信息，还可以利用屏幕条形表来应用某些功能。

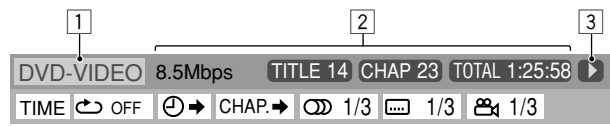


按 ON SCREEN 键。

- 每次按该键，屏幕条形表如右图所示进行切换。



屏幕条形表的内容与下拉菜单



举例：当播放 DVD VIDEO 时

① 光盘类型

② 播放信息

表示	意义	可对应的光盘
Mbps	指出目前的转换率 (每秒钟的波德数)。	
TITLE 14	指出目前的标题。	
CHAP 23	指出目前的章节。	
TRACK 14	指出目前的曲目。	  
TOTAL 1:25:58	指出播放过的时间。	所有的光盘

③ 对应所有类型光盘的播放信息

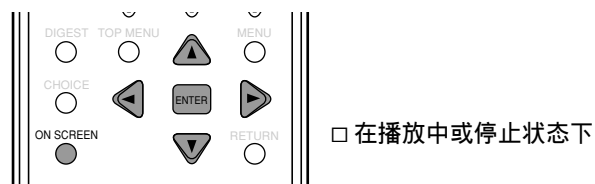
表示	意义
	播放
	快进/快倒
	前进/倒绕慢动作
	暂停
	停止

④ 操作标 (在下拉菜单上)

表示	意义	可对应的光盘
TIME	想要切换时间信息时选此处。参阅第 32 页。	所有的光盘
	想要进行重复播放时选此处。参阅第 42 页。	
	想要用时间寻找功能时选此处。参阅第 37 页。	
CHAP. →	想要寻找章节时选此处。参阅第 37 页。	
	想要切换音频语言或频道时选此处。参阅第 35 和 36 页。	  
	想要切换字幕语言时选此处。参阅第 35 页。	 
	想要切换观赏角度时选此处。参阅第 34 页。	
PROG.	想要进行程序播放时选此处。参阅第 41 页。	  
RND.	想要进行随机播放时选此处。参阅第 41 页。	

利用屏幕条形表进行基本操作

举例：当为 DVD VIDEO 光盘选择重复播放模式时



1 按 ON SCREEN 键两次。

带有下拉菜单的屏幕条形表在电视机上出现。



2 反复按转盘控制键上的 ▶ (或 ◀) 将 移动到下拉菜单 OFF 处。



3 按 ENTER 键。

弹跳窗在下拉菜单的下方出现。



4 按转盘控制键上的 ▼ (或 ▲) 在弹跳窗中选择所需项目。

• 每次按该键，供选项目均进行切换。



5 按 ENTER 键。

设定发生改变，弹跳窗关闭。



想要关闭屏幕条形表时

按 ON SCREEN 键。

注：

• 关于各项功能之详细说明请参阅相关页。

切换时间信息

您可以在屏幕条形表以及主机的显示窗上切换时间信息。



1 按 ON SCREEN 键两次。

屏幕条形表在电视机上出现。

2 反复按转盘控制键上的 ▶ (或 ◀) 将 移动到 TIME 处。

3 按 ENTER 键。

• 每次按该键，时间信息按如下所示进行切换。

TOTAL ⇒ T. (总) REM ⇒ TIME ⇒ REM ⇒
(返回到起始处)

TOTAL : 光盘上已经播放过的时间

T. REM : 光盘上剩余的播放时间

TIME : 目前播出的章节/曲目上已经播放过的时间

REM : 目前播出的章节/曲目上剩余的播放时间

想要关闭屏幕条形表时

按 ON SCREEN 键。

注：

• 屏幕条形表里的时间信息按如下所示进行切换。

举例：

TOTAL 1:25:58 ⇒ T.REM 0:45:41 ⇒ TIME 0:25:58 ⇒
REM 0:18:14 ⇒ (返回到起始处)

显示屏上的显示也发生改变。

• 在播放 VCD, SVCD, 或 CD 的过程中, 小时数位的信息不出现。

从光盘菜单指定所需画面

使用光盘菜单您可以开始播放指定的标题、章节或曲目。

如果电视机上显示出屏幕条形表，可反复按 ON SCREEN 键将其关掉。

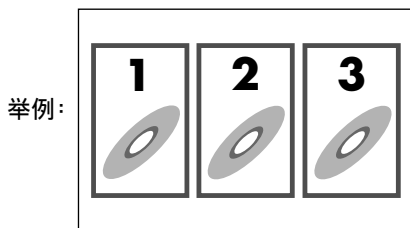
从 DVD 菜单指定所需画面

一般的 DVD VIDEO 光盘都带有介绍光盘内容的菜单。菜单中含有各种项目，如影片标题，歌曲名称，或演唱者信息，并可以在电视屏幕上显示出来。使用这些菜单您可以指定所需画面。



1 按 TOP MENU 或 MENU 键。

DVD 菜单在电视机上出现。(通常是装上 DVD VIDEO 光盘之后菜单在电视机上自动出现。)



通常情况下，一盘含有多数标题的 DVD VIDEO 光盘都可能带有列出标题项目的“标题”菜单，可按 TOP MENU 键来显示标题菜单。

有些 DVD VIDEO 光盘，在按 MENU 键时还可能出现其他菜单。

具体有哪些菜单，请参阅各 DVD VIDEO 光盘的使用说明书。

2 按转盘控制键上的 ▲/▼/▶/◀ 选择所需项目，然后按 ENTER 键。

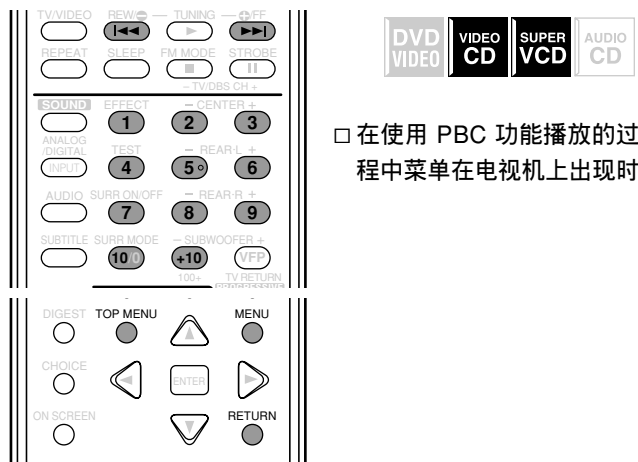
主机开始播放选取的项目。

- 有些光盘您还可以利用输入相对应的数字键的方法来选择项目。

使用 PBC 功能从 VCD/SVCD 菜单指定所需画面

录有 PBC 功能的 VCD 或 SVCD 光盘往往带有该光盘专有的菜单，如曲目一览表。(装上这样的光盘后，“PBC”字样会在显示屏上出现。)使用该菜单可以指定所需画面。(参阅第 30 页。)

- 在使用遥控器操作之前，须首先按 DVD 键切换遥控器操作模式。

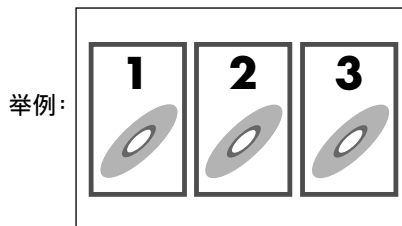


按数字键（1-10, +10）选择所需项目的号码。

主机从选取的项目开始播放。

举例：想要选择号码 3，按 3。

想要选择号码 11，按 +10，然后按 1。



想要返回到菜单时

按 RETURN 键。

当“NEXT”或“PREVIOUS”字样在电视屏幕上出现时：

想要进行到下一页时，按 ►► 键。

想要返回到上一页时，按 ◀◀ 键。

不想使用 PBC 功能播放与 PBC 功能兼容的 VCD/SVCD 时在播放停止状态下按数字键进行播放。

取代“PBC”字样在显示屏上出现的是播放过的时间。

想要恢复使用 PBC 功能时

按 TOP MENU 或 MENU 键。

显示屏上重新出现“PBC”字样。

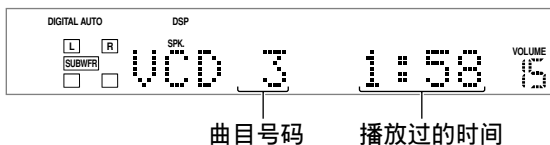
关于在播放 VCD/SVCD 光盘时显示屏上出现的信息

在播放录有 PBC 功能的 VCD/SVCD 光盘时，如下播放信息在显示屏上出现：

举例：在使用 PBC 功能播放 VCD 光盘时



举例：在不使用 PBC 功能播放 VCD 光盘时



选择观赏角度 — ANGLE

在播放含有多制式观赏角度的 DVD VIDEO 光盘时，您可以从不同的角度来欣赏同一幕影像。

当目前的影像具有多制式观赏角度时， 标会在播放开始时出现。

■ 选择观赏角度

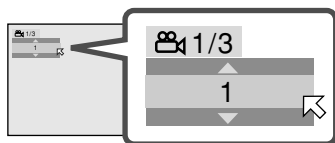


□ 在播放过程中

1 按 ANGLE 键。

下列弹跳窗在电视机上出现。

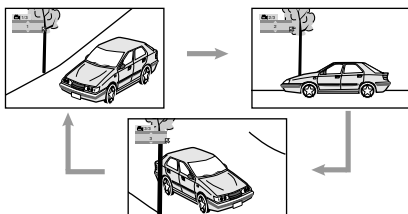
举例：录有的 3 个观赏角度当中的第一个观赏角度被选出。



2 反复按 ANGLE 键选择所需观赏角度。

• 每次按该键，影像角度均进行切换。

举例：1/3 ⇒ 2/3 ⇒ 3/3 ⇒ (返回到起始处)



如果 5 秒钟之内没有进行操作，弹跳窗关闭。

使用屏幕条形表：

1 反复按 ON SCREEN 键直到带有下拉菜单的屏幕条形表在电视机上出现。

2 反复按转盘控制键上的 (或) 将 移动到下拉菜单 处，然后按 ENTER 键。

弹跳窗在下拉菜单的下方出现。

举例：录有的 3 个观赏角度当中的第一个观赏角度被选出。



3 反复按转盘控制键上的 (或) 选择所需观赏角度。

• 每次按该键，影像角度均进行切换。

4 按 ENTER 键。

弹跳窗关闭。

想要关闭屏幕条形表时

按 ON SCREEN 键。

■ 在电视机上显示所有的观赏角度

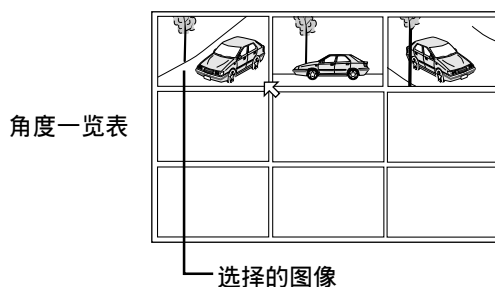


□ 在播放过程中

1 持续按住 ANGLE 键数秒钟。

电视机屏幕上最多可以显示出 9 个以不同的摄影角度灌录在光盘上的图像。

举例：当录有 3 个观赏角度时。



2 反复按转盘控制键上的 , , , 将 移动至您想要观赏的图像上。

3 按 ENTER 键。

角度一览表消失，开始以您选取的观赏角度进行播放。

注：

- 当角度一览表在电视机上出现时，听不到声音。
- 如果“”字样在电视机上出现，表示目前的影像没有多制式观赏角度。

切换语言 — SUBTITLE 和 AUDIO

在播放含有多语言字幕的 DVD VIDEO 或 SVCD 光盘时，您可以选择显示在电视机上的字幕语言。

当目前的影像含有多制式字幕时， 标会在播放开始时出现。

当 DVD VIDEO 含有音频语言（音轨）时，您可以选择想要聆听的语言（音轨）。

当目前的影像含有多语言音频时， 标会在播放开始时出现。

• 您还可以选择 VCD 或 SVCD 光盘的声音频道。

■ 选择字幕语言

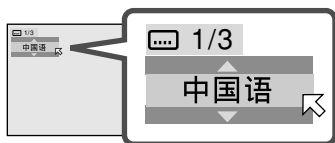


□ 在播放过程中

1 按 SUBTITLE 键。

下述弹跳窗在电视机上出现。

举例：录有的 3 种字幕语言当中的“中国语”被选出。



2 反复按 SUBTITLE 键选择所需字幕语言。

• 每次按该键，字幕语言均进行切换。

如果 5 秒钟之内没有进行操作，弹跳窗关闭。

使用屏幕条形表：

1 反复按 ON SCREEN 键，直到带有下拉菜单的屏幕条形表在电视机上出现。

2 反复按转盘控制键上的 （或 ）将 移动到下拉菜单 处，然后按 ENTER 键。

下述弹跳窗在下拉菜单的下方出现。

举例：录有的 3 种字幕语言当中的“中国语”被选出。



3 反复按转盘控制键上的 （或 ）选择所需字幕语言。

• 每次按该键，字幕语言均进行切换。

4 按 ENTER 键。

弹跳窗关闭。

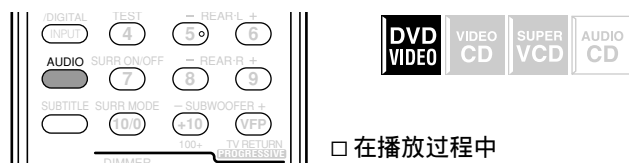
想要关闭屏幕条形表时

按 ON SCREEN 键。

注：

- 关于 DVD VIDEO：某些字幕语言在弹跳窗中出现时可能为缩写。参阅第 50 页上的“语言代码一览表”。
- 关于 SVCD：SVCD 上最多可以含有 4 种字幕语言。无论光盘上是否录有字幕语言都可以按 SUBTITLE 键切换字幕语言。（如果未录有字幕语言，则字幕语言不进行切换。）
- 如果“”字样在电视机上出现，表示目前的影像不含多制式字幕。

■ 选择音频语言

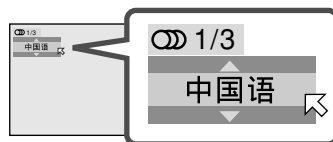


□ 在播放过程中

1 按 AUDIO 键。

下述弹跳窗在电视机上出现。

举例：录有的 3 种音频语言当中的“中国语”被选出。



2 反复按 AUDIO 键选择所需音频语言。

• 每次按该键，音频语言均进行切换。

如果 5 秒钟之内没有进行操作，弹跳窗关闭。

使用屏幕条形表：

1 反复按 ON SCREEN 键，直到带有下拉菜单的屏幕条形表在电视机上出现。

2 反复按转盘控制键上的 （或 ）将 移动到下拉菜单 处，然后按 ENTER 键。

下述弹跳窗在下拉菜单的下方出现。

举例：录有的 3 种音频语言当中的“中国语”被选出。



3 反复按圆盘控制键上的 ▼（或 ▲）选择所需音频语言。

- 每次按该键，音频语言均进行切换。

4 按 ENTER 键。

弹跳窗关闭。

想要关闭屏幕条形表时

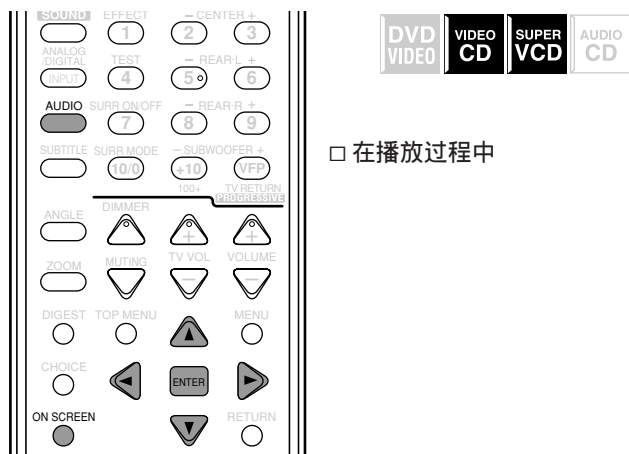
按 ON SCREEN 键。

注：

- 某些音频语言在弹跳窗中出现时可能为缩写。参阅第 50 页上的“语言代码一览表”。
- 如果“⊗”字样在电视机上出现，表示目前的影像不含多制式音频语言。

■ 选择声音频道

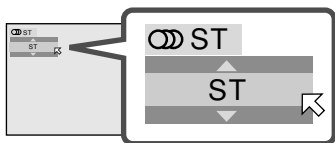
在播放某些卡拉 OK 用 VCD 或 SVCD 光盘时，通过选择想要播放的声音频道，您可以享受卡拉 OK 演唱。



1 按 AUDIO 键。

下述弹跳窗在电视机上出现。

举例：“ST”（立体声）被选取。



2 反复按 AUDIO 键选择所需声音频道。

- 每次按该键，声音频道均进行切换。

对应 VCD：

举例：

ST ⇒ L ⇒ R ⇒（返回到起始处）

ST：想要听标准立体声播放时。

L：想要听 L（左）声音频道时。

R：想要听 R（右）声音频道时。

对应 SVCD：

举例：

ST 1 ⇒ ST 2 ⇒ L 1 ⇒ R 1 ⇒ L 2 ⇒ R 2 ⇒
（返回到起始处）

ST 1/ST 2：想要听 ST 1 或 ST 2 频道的标准立体声播放时。

L 1/L 2：想要听 L（左）1 或 2 声音频道时。

R 1/R 2：想要听 R（右）1 或 2 声音频道时。

如果 5 秒钟之内没有进行操作，弹跳窗关闭。

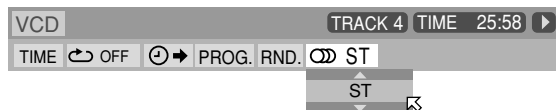
使用屏幕条形表：

1 反复按 ON SCREEN 键，直到带有下拉菜单的屏幕条形表在电视机上出现。

2 反复按圆盘控制键上的 ►（或 ◀）将 移动到下拉菜单 处，然后按 ENTER 键。

下述弹跳窗在下拉菜单的下方出现。

举例：“ST”（立体声）被选取。



3 反复按圆盘控制键上的 ▼（或 ▲）选择所需声音频道。

- 每次按该键，声音频道均进行切换。

4 按 ENTER 键。

弹跳窗关闭。

想要关闭屏幕条形表时

按 ON SCREEN 键。

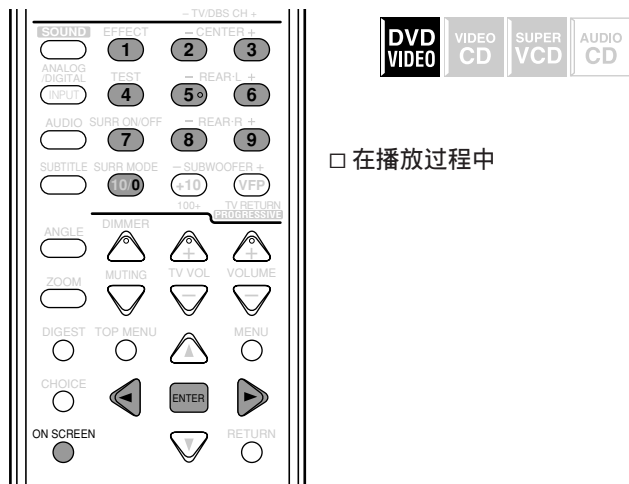
从光盘上指定的位置起开始播放

您可以开始播放指定的标题，章节或曲目。
您还可以从指定的时间处开始播放光盘。

■ 指定所需章节 — 章节寻找功能

在播放 DVD VIDEO 光盘时，您可以寻找想要播放的章节号码。

- 在使用遥控器操作之前，须首先按 DVD 键切换遥控器操作模式。



1 反复按 ON SCREEN 键，直到带有下拉菜单的屏幕条形表在电视机上出现。

2 反复按圆盘控制键上的 ►（或 ◀）将 ▢ 移动到下拉菜单 CHAP.► 处，然后按 ENTER 键。

下述弹跳窗在下拉菜单的下方出现。



3 按数字键（0 - 9）输入所需章节号码。

- 举例：想要选择章节号码 8 时，按 8。
- 想要选择章节号码 10 时，按 1，然后按 0。
- 想要选择章节号码 37 时，按 3，然后按 7。

- 想要修正误输入时
重复步骤 **3**，直到想要的号码在弹跳窗中出现。

4 按 ENTER 键。

主机从选取的章节处开始播放。

想要关闭屏幕条形表时

按 ON SCREEN 键。

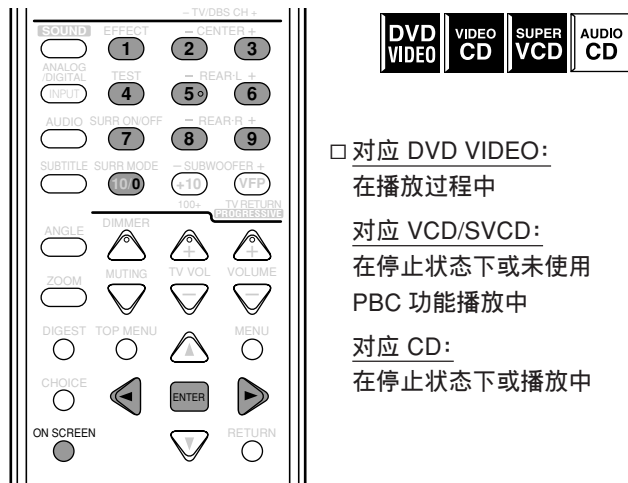
注：

- 在本功能里 10/0 键仅作为“0”使用。
- +10 键不能用于操作本功能。
- 您最高可以选到第 99 个章节。

■ 指定所需位置 — 时间寻找功能

通过从目前播出的标题（对应 DVD VIDEO）的开始处起指定播放经过的时间，最长指定时间为“9:59:59”；或者从光盘（对应 VCD/SVCD/ CD）的开始处起指定播放经过的时间，最长指定时间为“99:59”，便可以从此所需位置开始播放。

- 在使用遥控器操作之前，须首先按 DVD 键切换遥控器操作模式。



□ 对应 DVD VIDEO:

在播放过程中

对应 VCD/SVCD:

在停止状态下或未使用
PBC 功能播放中

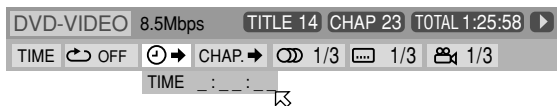
对应 CD:

在停止状态下或播放中

1 反复按 ON SCREEN 键，直到带有下拉菜单的屏幕条形表在电视机上出现。

2 反复按圆盘控制键上的 ►（或 ◀）将 ▢ 移动到下拉菜单 ①► 处，然后按 ENTER 键。

下述弹跳窗在下拉菜单的下方出现。



3 使用数字键（0 - 9）输入时间。

举例：想要从开头起经过 1（小时）：02（分）：49（秒）处开始播放时



- 想要修正误输入时

反复按圆盘控制键上的 ◀，直到删除错误的数字，然后按数字键输入正确的数字。

4 按 ENTER 键。

主机从指定的时间处开始播放。

想要关闭屏幕条形表时
按 ON SCREEN 键。

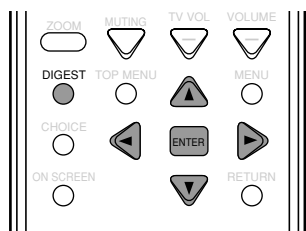
注：

- 在本功能里 10/0 键仅作为“0”使用。
- +10 键不能用于操作本功能。
- 对应 DVD VIDEO，您可以将时间指定成小时/分钟/秒；对应 VCD/SVCD/CD，您可以将时间指定成分钟/秒。

■ 指定所需影像 — DIGEST（摘要显示功能）

本机可以显示 DVD VIDEO 上每个标题或章节的影像摘要，或 VCD/SVCD 上每首曲目的影像摘要。

您可以从电视屏幕上显示的影像摘要来选择所需标题、章节或曲目。



- 对应 DVD VIDEO：
在停止状态下或播放中
- 对应 VCD/SVCD：
在停止状态下或未使用 PBC 功能播放中



1 按 DIGEST 键。

最多可以显示 9 个影像摘要。

选取的影像



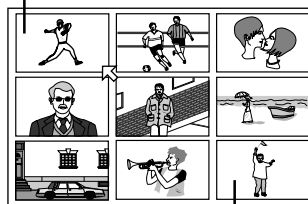
- 在 DVD VIDEO 播放停止状态下：
每个标题的影像摘要在电视屏幕上出现。
- 在 DVD VIDEO 播放过程中：
目前播出的标题下每个章节的影像摘要在电视屏幕上出现。
- 当装入 VCD 或 SVCD 时：
每首曲目的影像摘要在电视屏幕上出现。

2 反复按转盘控制键上的 ▲/▼/▶/◀ 将 移动到所需影像上。

- 如果影像摘要超过 9 个，则会以多张页面显示。

想要显示其它页面上的影像摘要时

想要显示上一页时，选择左上画面的影像，然后按转盘控制键上的 ◀。



想要显示下一页时，选择右下画面的影像，然后按转盘控制键上的 ▶。

或者

按 ▶▶ 键显示下一页。

按 ◀◀ 键显示上一页。

3 按 ENTER 键。

主机从选择的影像开始播放。

注：

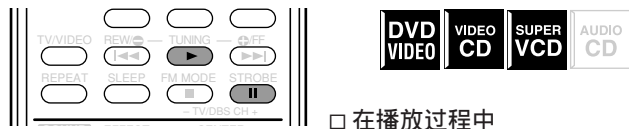
- 某些光盘在其所有的影像均在电视屏幕上出现之前可能需要一些时间。

特殊图像播放

本机为您提供的特殊图像播放功能有逐帧播放，连续播放，慢动作播放和放大播放。

■ 逐帧播放

- 在使用遥控器操作之前，须首先按 DVD 键切换遥控器操作模式。



反复按 **II** (STROBE) 键。

- 每次按该键，静止图像向前移动一个画面。

想要恢复到标准播放时

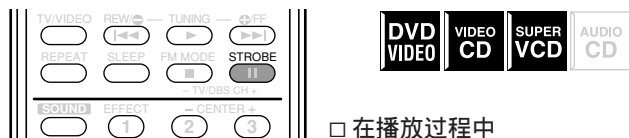
按 **▶** 键。

注：

- 还可以使用前面板上的 **II** 键进行上述操作。

■ 显示连续的静止图像 — STROBE (连续显示功能)

- 在使用遥控器操作之前，须首先按 DVD 键切换遥控器操作模式。



1 在播放到您想要观看连续图像的位置时按

II (STROBE) 键。

播放暂时停止。

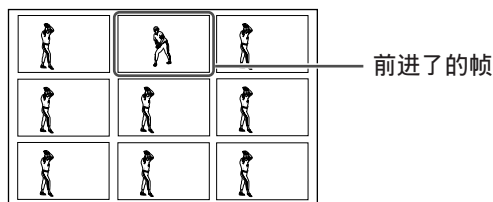
2 持续按住 STROBE (**II**) 键数秒钟。

相同的 9 帧 (静止图像) 在电视屏幕上出现。

在下述步骤中您可以逐帧向前播放画面。

3 按 STROBE (**II**) 键一次。

最上行中间的图像看出从其左边的图像前进了一帧。



- 反复按该键便可逐帧前进画面。
- 取代 STROBE (**II**) 键而按 **▶** 键，可按标准播放速度前进每一帧，但全 9 帧便会出现一个时间延迟。(声音被关闭。)

想要恢复到标准画面时

持续按住 STROBE (**II**) 键数秒钟。

注：

- 如果在播放的过程中持续按住 STROBE (**II**) 键数秒钟，9 帧静止图像也会出现，但它们按标准播放速度前进且具有时间延迟。(声音被关闭。)
- 还可以使用前面板上的 **II** 键进行上述操作。

■ 慢动作播放

- 在使用遥控器操作之前，须首先按 DVD 键切换遥控器操作模式。



1 在到达您想要进行慢动作播放的位置时按

II (STROBE) 键。

播放暂时停止。

2 持续按住按 **▶▶** 或 **◀◀** 键。

想要往前进行慢动作播放时，持续按住 **▶▶** 键。

想要倒退进行慢动作播放时 (仅对应 DVD VIDEO)，持续按住 **◀◀** 键。

- 每次持续该键，播放速度按如下所示进行切换。

前进：



倒退 (仅对应 DVD VIDEO)：



想要暂停慢动作播放时

按 **II** (STROBE) 键。

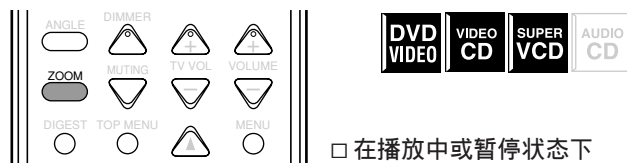
想要恢复到标准播放时

按 **▶** 键。

注：

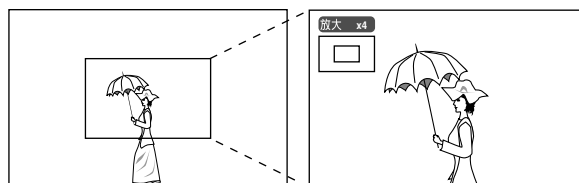
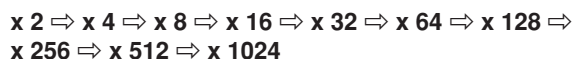
- 在进行慢动作播放的过程中听不到声音。

■ 放大图像 — ZOOM (图像放大功能)



按 ZOOM 键。

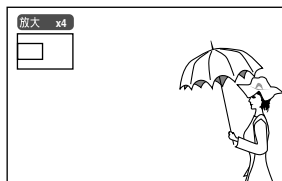
- 每次持续该键，放大倍率按如下所示进行切换。



举例：当选择 x 4 倍率放大时。

想要移动放大位置时

按转盘控制键上的 ▲/▼/►/◄。



想要恢复到标准播放时

按 ENTER 键。

注：

- 在放大的过程中，图像可能看起来粗糙。

■ 切换 VFP 设定 — VFP（影像精纯处理器）

VFP（影像精纯处理）功能可令您按图像的色调或个人意愿来调整图像。

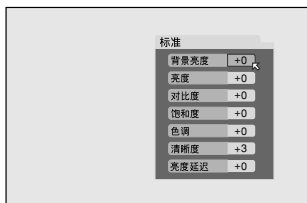
- 下列步骤的操作受时间限制。如果设定在完成之前被取消，请从步骤 1 开始重新进行操作。
- 在使用遥控器操作之前，须首先按 DVD 键切换遥控器操作模式。



□ 在播放过程中

1 按 VFP 键。

目前的 VFP 设定用画面在电视机上出现。



举例：当选择“标准”时。

2 反复按转盘控制键上的 ►(或 ◄) 选择 VFP 模式。

- 每次按此键，VFP 模式按如下所示进行切换。

标准 ⇄ 影院 ⇄ 用户 1 ⇄ 用户 2 ⇄
(返回到起始处)

- 标准**：标准情况下选此项。
- 影院**：适用于电影播放源。
- 用户 1 和 用户 2**：选此项可以调整影响图像显示和储存设定的参数（参阅右栏）。

想要关闭 VFP 设定用画面时

按 VFP 键。

想要调整图像的外观感觉时

选择“用户 1”或“用户 2”时，您可以调整图像的外观感觉。

1 按 VFP 键，然后反复按转盘控制键上的 ►(或 ◄) 选择“用户 1”或“用户 2”。



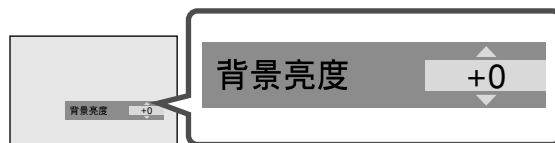
2 反复按转盘控制键上的 ▼(或 ▲) 选择您想要调整的参数。

一边确认一边调整参数直到获得令您满意的图像。

- 背景亮度**：在保持暗与亮部分的亮度的过程中控制中性色调的亮度（-4 至 +4）。
- 亮度**：控制屏幕亮度（-16 至 +16）。
- 对比度**：控制屏幕对比度（-16 至 +16）。
- 饱和度**：控制屏幕颜色浓度（-16 至 +16）。
- 色调**：控制屏幕色调（-16 至 +16）。
- 清晰度**：控制屏幕清晰度（+0 至 +3）。
- 亮度延迟**：控制屏幕颜色间隔（-2 至 +2）。

3 按 ENTER 键。

VFP 设定用画面消失，下列弹跳窗在电视机上出现。



举例：当选择“背景亮度”时。

4 反复按转盘控制键上的 ▼(或 ▲) 切换设定，然后按 ENTER 键。

目前的 VFP 设定用画面再次出现。

5 重复步骤 2 至 4 调整其它参数。

想要关闭 VFP 设定用画面时

按 VFP 键。

想要启动您个人的设定时

按 VFP 键，然后反复按转盘控制键上的 ►(或 ◄) 选择“用户 1”或“用户 2”。

注：

- 如果超过 10 秒钟没有进行操作，VFP 设定用画面会消失。

程序播放和随机播放

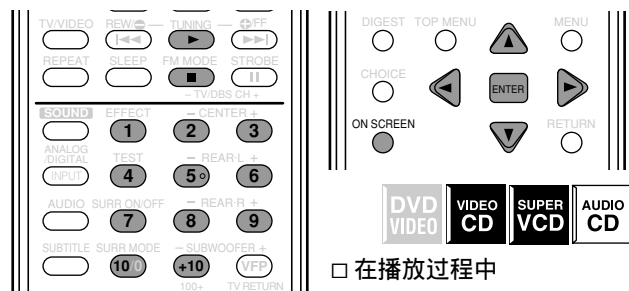
您可以按所需顺序或以随机顺序播放 VCD, SVCD 或 CD 上的曲目。

- 您不能将记忆播放功能与程序播放或随机播放功能并用。

■ 按所需顺序进行播放

最多可以按所需顺序播放 99 首曲目。

- 您可以多次编排同一曲目的播放程序。
- 在使用遥控器操作之前, 须首先按 DVD 键切换遥控器操作模式。

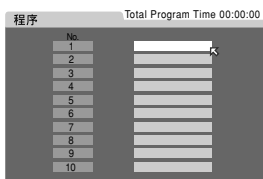


1 反复按 ON SCREEN 键, 直到带有下拉菜单的屏幕条形表在电视机上出现。

2 反复按转盘控制键上的 ► (或 ◀) 将 ◀ 移动到屏幕条形表里的 PROG. 处, 然后按 ENTER 键。

程序画面在电视机上出现, PROGRAM 指示灯在显示屏上点亮。

- 程序画面上一次可以显示 10 个台阶。



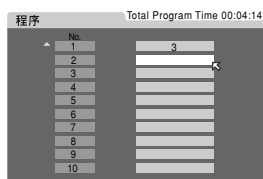
3 按数字键 (1-10, +10) 输入您想要为其编排程序的曲目号码。

举例: 想要选择曲目号码 3 时, 按 3。

想要选择曲目号码 14 时, 按 +10 然后按 4。

想要选择曲目号码 40 时, 按 +10, +10, +10, 然后按 10。

- 当放入的光盘上不存在您输入的曲目号码时, 您的输入被忽视。
- 总编程时间显示在程序画面的上方。



4 重复步骤 3 以编排下面的台阶。

- 每次在程序画面的底部往台阶上输进曲目号码时, 下面的台阶继而出现。

相要删除台阶时

按转盘控制键上的 ▲ (或 ▼) 将 ◀ 移动至想要删除的台阶处, 然后按 ■ 键。

- 想要重新编排下面的台阶时, 反复按转盘控制键上的 ▼ 将 ◀ 移动至空白台阶处, 然后重复步骤 3。

5 按 ► 键。

光盘以编排好的顺序播出。

想要停止程序播放时

按 ■ 键。

- 当播放 VCD 或 SVCD 时, 程序画面复现。
- 想要编辑您的程序时, 重复步骤 3 和 4。

想要关闭程序播放时

可按如下说明清除您所编排的程序:

- 1 按 ■ 键停止播放。
 - 2 按 ON SCREEN 键启动屏幕条形表。
 - 3 按 ■ 键。
- 退出光盘或关闭主机亦可清除所编排的程序。

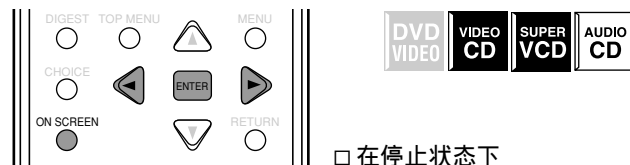
想要关闭屏幕条形表时

按 ON SCREEN 键。

注:

- 当所有编排了程序的曲目播放过之后, 程序播放自动停止。

■ 随机播放曲目



1 反复按 ON SCREEN 键, 直到带有下拉菜单的屏幕条形表在电视机上出现。

2 反复按转盘控制键上的 ► (或 ◀) 将 ◀ 移动到屏幕条形表里的 RND. 处, 然后按 ENTER 键。

RANDOM 指示灯在显示屏上点亮, 随机播放开始。

想要停止随机播放时

按 ■ 键。

随机播放功能被关闭。

- 当所有的曲目随机播放一遍之后, 随机播放模式亦会自动关闭。

注:

- 在随机播放过程中同一首曲目只能播出一次。
- 在随机播放过程中, 按 ◀ 键您可以跳回到目前正在播出的曲目的开始处, 但不能跳回到已经播过的曲目。
- 在随机播放的过程中, 从屏幕条形表中选取 RND. 后按 ENTER 键便可以退出随机播放模式并开始以正常顺序进行连续播放。

重复播放

您可以重复播放目前的标题或章节（对应 DVD VIDEO）或曲目（对应 VCD/SVCD/CD）。
您还可以仅播放所需片段。

■ 重复播放目前的标题，章节或所有的曲目



1 反复按 ON SCREEN 键，直到带有下拉菜单的屏幕条形表在电视机上出现。

2 反复按转盘控制键上的 ►（或 ◀）将 移动到屏幕条形表里的 处，然后按 ENTER 键。
下述弹跳窗在屏幕条形表的下方出现。



3 反复按转盘控制键上的 ▼（或 ▲）选择重复播放模式，然后按 ENTER 键。

- 每次按转盘控制键上的 ▼（或 ▲）重复播放模式按如下所示进行切换：

对应 DVD VIDEO:

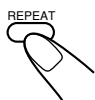
章节 标题 A-B 断
(返回到开始处)

对应 VCD/SVCD/CD:

轨迹 全曲 A-B 断
(返回到开始处)

- 章节** : 反复播放目前的章节 (REPEAT 1 指示灯在显示屏上点亮)
- 轨迹** : 反复播放目前的曲目 (REPEAT 1 指示灯在显示屏上点亮)
- 标题** : 反复播放目前的标题 (REPEAT 指示灯在显示屏上点亮)
- 全曲** : 反复播放光盘上或程序里所有的曲目 (REPEAT 指示灯在显示屏上点亮)
- A-B** : 反复播放所需片段 (参阅右栏)
- 断** : 选择此项可关闭重复播放模式

- 按遥控器上的 REPEAT 键您可以直接切换重复播放模式 (A-B 重复除外) 来播放目前的章节，标题，曲目或光盘。



注:

- 在随机播放的过程中如果您选择“全曲”，光盘上所有的曲目将以随机的顺序反复播出。
- 在程序播放和随机播放的过程中或者光盘未播放时不能选择“A-B”。

想要关闭屏幕条形表时

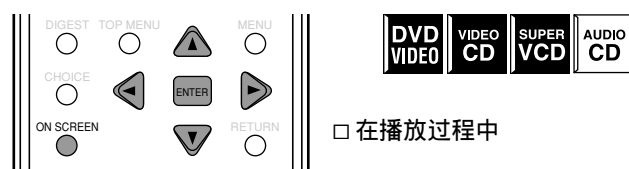
按 ON SCREEN 键。

想要关闭重复播放模式时

在步骤 **3** 中选择“断”，然后按 ENTER 键。

■ 重复播放所需片段

通过指定您想要播放的片段的起始点 (A 点) 和终止点 (B 点)，便可以反复播放两点之间这一片段。



1 反复按 ON SCREEN 键，直到带有下拉菜单的屏幕条形表在电视机上出现。

2 反复按转盘控制键上的 ►（或 ◀）将 移动到屏幕条形表里的 处，然后按 ENTER 键。
下述弹跳窗在屏幕条形表的下方出现。



3 反复按转盘控制键上的 ▼（或 ▲）选择“A-B”。

4 到达您想要重复播放的片段的起点处 (A 点) 时按 ENTER 键。

下述显示在屏幕条形表里出现。

REPEAT A 指示灯亦在显示屏上点亮。



5 到达您想要重复播放的片段的终止处 (B 点) 时按 ENTER 键。

A-B 重复播放开始。在光盘上选择的这一片段 (介于 A 和 B 两点之间的部分) 反复播出。

在 A-B 重复播放的过程中，REPEAT A-B 指示灯在显示屏上点亮。



想要关闭屏幕条形表时

按 ON SCREEN 键。

想要取消 A-B 重复播放时

在步骤 **3** 中选择“断”，然后按 ENTER 键。

注:

- 在播放 DVD VIDEO 光盘的过程中，仅在同一个标题内可以进行 A-B 重复播放。

播放 MP3 光盘

本机可以播放灌录到 CD-R 和 CD-RW 上的 MP3 文件。在本说明书中我们称这样的光盘为“MP3 光盘”。

- 在使用遥控器操作之前，按 DVD 键将遥控器操作模式切换至用于 MP3 光盘操作。
- 启动电视机并在电视机上选择正确的输入模式。

在按下按键时如果“⊗”字样在电视屏幕上出现，表示光盘不接受您试图进行的操作。

何谓 MP3?

MP3 是 Motion Picture Experts Group (电影实业集团) 1 (或 MPEG-1) Audio Layer 3 (音频 3 代) 的缩写。MP3 简单地说是一种带有数据压缩系统的文件制式。通过使用 MP3 制式，一张 CD-R 或 CD-RW 上灌录的数据容量可以比普通 CD 多 10 倍。

光盘构造

在 MP3 光盘上，每首歌曲(曲目)被录作一个文件。几个文件通常再被组成文件簿。文件簿里还可以含有其它文件簿，这样便层层组成一个文件簿塔。

本机简化了光盘的层级结构，以“曲目”和“曲目组”的方式管理文件和文件簿。



本机最多可以识别出每个曲目组里的 150 首曲目，以及最多可以识别出每张光盘里的 99 个曲目组（总共多达 14,850 首曲目）。因为超过 150 首以上的曲目和超过 99 个以上的曲目组会被主机忽略，因而它们不能播出。

- 如果文件簿中含有任何非 MP3 文件类型的文件，这些文件也算在文件总数之内。

注:

- MP3 光盘（无论 CD-R 还是 CD-RW）与普通光盘相比均需要较长的读出时间。（与其它光盘不同是因为文件簿/文件的构造复杂。）
- 在灌录 MP3 光盘时，请选择 ISO 9660 Level 1 或 Level 2 作为光盘制式。
- 本机可以播放“多片段”光盘（最多 5 个片段）。
- 本机不能播放“整体灌录”的光盘。
- 本机仅能播放带有下列文件增设码的 MP3 文件：“MP3”，“.Mp3”，“.mp3”和“.mp3”。
- ID3* 标牌不能在显示屏上显示。
* MP3 文件上可能含有的文件信息被称作“ID3 Tag (ID3 标牌)”，包括文件簿名称，演唱者，曲目标题等。ID3 标牌有两种版本——ID3v1 (ID3 标牌版本 1) 和 ID3v2 (ID3 标牌版本 2)。
- 建议您在灌录每首歌曲时使用 44.1 kHz 的抽样频率和 128 kbps 的位传输速率。本机不能播放位传输速率低于 64 kbps 的文件。
- 如果光盘上同时录有 MP3 文件和 JPEG 文件，请在图像菜单上将 MP3/JPEG 的设定设定成“MP3”。（参阅第 50 页。）
- 有些 MP3 光盘不能播放是因为光盘本身的特性或录制状态。

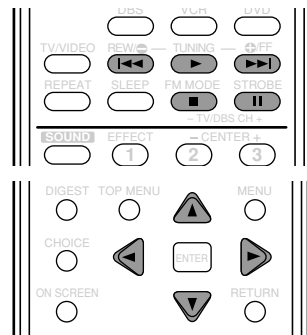
注:

- 下列功能不能用于 MP3 光盘的播放：
程序播放，随机播放，快进/快倒播放，屏幕条形表和选项菜单
- MP3 光盘上的某些曲目可能被跳过而且不能正常播放。

基本操作

如果与遥控器上的按键具有相近的名称，您也可以使用前面板上的键进行操作。

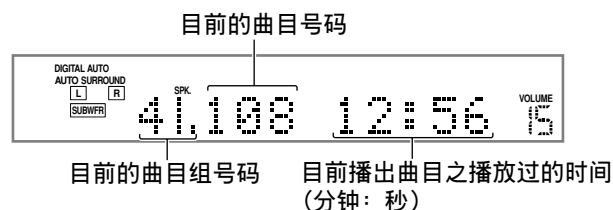
- 在使用遥控器之前，须首先按 DVD 键切换遥控器的操作模式。



开始播放。

装入 MP3 光盘，然后按 ► 键。

主机开始播放。MP3 CONTROL 画面在电视机上出现。（参阅第 44 页。）



当曲目组里的所有曲目播放过之后，主机开始播放下一个曲目组里的曲目。

想要暂时停止播放时 按 II 键。

想要恢复播放时
按 ► 键。

选择曲目组或曲目

想要向前跳跃曲目组时
按圆盘控制键上的 ►。

想要倒退跳跃曲目组时
按圆盘控制键上的 ◀。

想要向前跳跃曲目时
可根据需要任意次数地按 ►► 键或圆盘控制键上的 ▼。

想要跳跃到目前曲目的开始处时
按 ◀◀ 键一次。

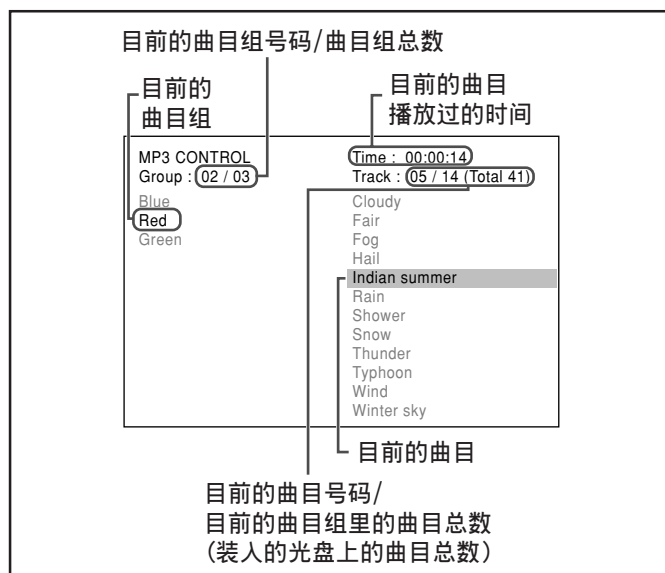
想要倒退跳跃曲目时
可根据需要任意次数地按 ◀◀ 键或圆盘控制键上的 ▲。

彻底停止播放时 按 ■ 键。

在 MP3 CONTROL 画面上进行操作

您可在电视机上出现的 MP3 CONTROL 画面上寻找及播放所需曲目组和曲目。

■ MP3 CONTROL 画面

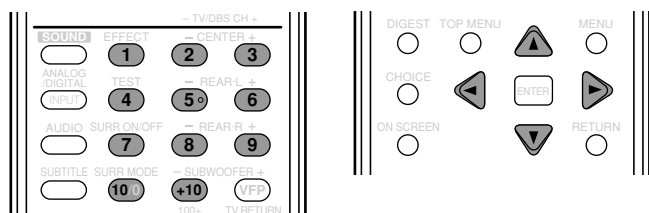


注：

- 由于灌装状态等原因，某些曲目组和曲目的名称可能有不正确显示。
- MP3 光盘上灌录的曲目组和曲目顺序可能与从您的个人电脑上播出的顺序不一致。
- 在电视机上每次最多可以显示 12 个曲目组和曲目。反复按圆盘控制键上的 ▲/▼/▶/◀ 便可一个接一个地将后继的曲目组和曲目显示出来。

■ 操作

- 在使用遥控器之前，须首先按 DVD 键切换遥控器的操作模式。



怎样在播放过程中选择或跳跃曲目组

想要选择后继的曲目组（或向前跳跃曲目组）时
反复按圆盘控制键上的 ▶。

想要选择先前的曲目组（或倒退跳跃曲目组）时
反复按圆盘控制键上的 ◀。

怎样在播放过程中选择或跳跃曲目

想要选择后继的曲目（或向前跳跃曲目）时
反复按圆盘控制键上的 ▼。

想要选择先前的曲目（或倒退跳跃曲目）时
反复按圆盘控制键上的 ▲。

怎样通过指定曲目号码来起始播放

按数字键（1-10，+10）输入曲目号码。

例如：想要选择曲目号码 3 时，按 3。

想要选择曲目号码 14 时，按 +10，然后按 4。

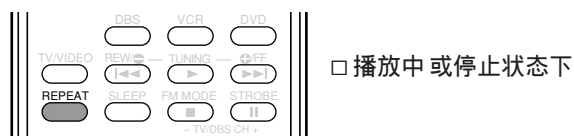
想要选择曲目号码 24 时，按 +10，+10，然后按 4。

想要选择曲目号码 110 时，按 +10 十次，然后按 10。

输入的数字在曲目号码信息里出现，然后播放自您指定的曲目起开始。

重复播放

您可重复播放目前的曲目，曲目组，或装入的光盘里的所有曲目。



仅从遥控器上：

按 REPEAT 键。

重复播放信息在 MP3 CONTROL 画面上出现，REPEAT 指示灯在显示屏上点亮。

- 每次按该键，重复播放模式按如下所示进行切换：

REPEAT TRACK ⇌ REPEAT GROUP ⇌ REPEAT ALL
⇌ 指示灯熄灭 ⇌ （返回到起始处）

REPEAT TRACK：重复目前的曲目

REPEAT GROUP：重复目前的曲目组

REPEAT ALL：重复装入的光盘里的所有曲目

想要关闭重复播放模式时

反复按 REPEAT 键直到重复播放信息从 MP3 CONTROL 画面上消失（REPEAT 指示灯亦从显示屏上熄灭）。

播放 JPEG 光盘

本机可以播放灌录到 CD-R 和 CD-RW 上的 JPEG 文件。在本说明书中我们称这样的光盘为“JPEG 光盘”。

- 在使用遥控器操作之前，按 DVD 键将遥控器操作模式切换至用于 JPEG 光盘操作。
- 启动电视机并在电视机上选择正确的输入模式。

在按下按键时如果“⊗”字样在电视屏幕上出现，表示光盘不接受您试图进行的操作。

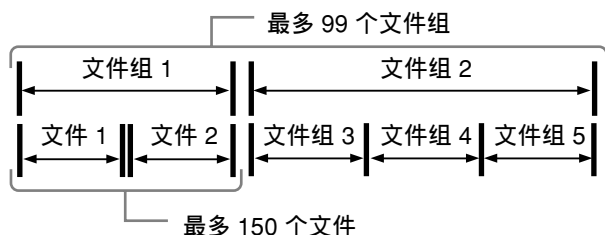
何谓 JPEG?

是一种由 Joint Photographic Expert Group（共同影像专业集团）公司开发出来的静止图像数据压缩制式，其特点是虽然压缩比高但几乎不影响影像质量。

光盘构造

在 JPEG 光盘上，每个静止图像（画面）被录作一个文件。几个文件通常再被组成文件簿。文件簿里还可以含有其它文件簿，这样便层层组成一个文件簿塔。

本机简化了光盘的层级结构，以“文件组”的方式管理文件簿。



本机最多可以识别出每个文件组里的 150 个文件，以及最多可以识别出每张光盘里的 99 个文件组（总共多达 14,850 个文件）。因为超过 150 个以上的文件和超过 99 个以上的文件组会被主机忽略，因而它们不能播出。

- 如果文件簿中含有任何非 JPEG 文件类型的文件，这些文件也算在文件总数之内。

注:

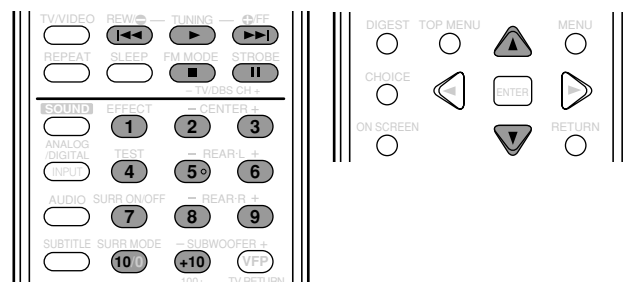
- JPEG 光盘（无论 CD-R 还是 CD-RW）与普通光盘相比均需要较长的读出时间。（与其它光盘不同是因为文件簿/文件的构造复杂。）
- 在灌录 JPEG 光盘时，请选择 ISO 9660 Level 1 或 Level 2 作为光盘制式。
- 本机可以播放“多片段”光盘（最多 5 个片段）。
- 本机不能播放“整体灌录”的光盘。
- 本机仅能播放带下列文件增设码的 JPEG 文件：“.jpg”，“.jpeg”，“.JPG”，“.JPEG”或任何这些字母的大小写组合（如“.Jpg”）。
- 建议您以 640 x 480 的解像度灌录文件。（如果灌录文件时使用的解像度超过 640 x 480，显示图像则需要较长的时间。）
- 如果光盘上同时录有 JPEG 文件和 MP3 文件，请在图像菜单上将 MP3/JPEG 的设置设定成“JPEG。”（参阅第 50 页。）
- 本机仅能播放基线扫描制式的 JPEG 文件*。逐行扫描制式的 JPEG 文件* 或无损扫描制式的 JPEG 文件* 不能播放。
 - * - 基线扫描 JPEG 制式：用于数码相机和网上传输等。
 - 逐行扫描 JPEG 制式：用于网上传输。
 - 无损扫描 JPEG 制式：旧式扫描制式，现在很少使用。
- 有些 JPEG 光盘不能播放是因为光盘本身的特性或录制状态。

浏览播放

您可以一个接一个地自动播出静止图像——浏览播放。

如果与遥控器上的按键具有相近的名称，您也可以使用前面板上的键进行操作。

- 在使用遥控器之前，须首先按 DVD 键切换遥控器的操作模式。



开始浏览播放

装入 JPEG 光盘，然后按 ► 键。

浏览播放开始。每个文件（静止图像）在电视机上大约显示 3 秒钟，然后一个接一个地换到下一个文件。

当一个文件组里所有的文件播放一遍后，本机开始播放下一个文件组里的文件。

想要暂时停止浏览显示时

按 II 键。

您可以放大静止图像的倍率（参阅第 46 页）。

想要恢复浏览播放时

按 ► 键。

想要通过指定文件号码来起动浏览播放时

按数字键（1-10，+10）输入文件号码。

例如：想要选择文件号码 3 时，按 3。

想要选择文件号码 14 时，按 +10，然后按 4。

想要选择文件号码 24 时，按 +10，+10，然后按 4。

想要选择文件号码 110 时，按 +10 十次，然后按 10。

选择的数字在文件号码信息里出现，然后自您指定的文件起开始浏览播放。

选择文件或文件组

想要向前跳跃图像（文件）时

可根据需要任意次数地按 ►► 键或圆盘控制键上的 ▼。

想要倒退跳跃图像（文件）时

可根据需要任意次数地按 ◀◀ 键或圆盘控制键上的 ▲。

彻底停止浏览播放

按 ■ 键。

JPEG CONTROL 画面在电视上出现。

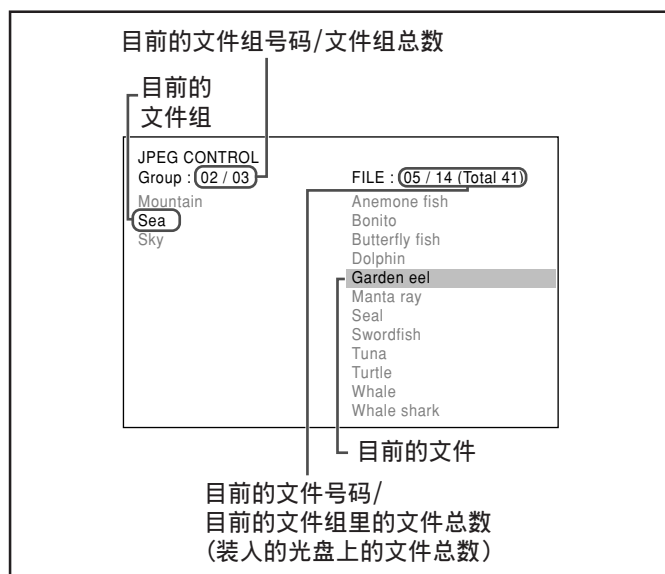
- 关于如何在 JPEG CONTROL 画面上进行操作，请参阅第 46 页上的“在 JPEG CONTROL 画面上进行操作”。

注:

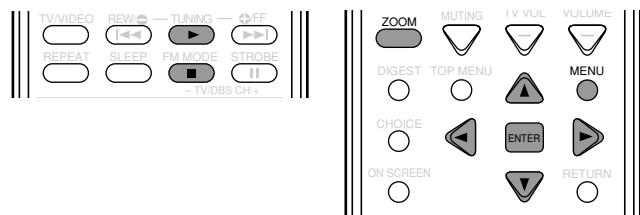
- 下列功能不能用于浏览播放: 程序播放, 随机播放, 重复播放, 快进/快倒播放, 屏幕条形表和选项菜单
- 在浏览播放中如果持续出现黑画面: 说明目前播出的文件可能是非基线扫描制式的 JPEG 文件。在这种情况下须重新选择可以播放的文件 (基线扫描制式的 JPEG 文件)。(比如按 **■** 键或 MENU 键启动 JPEG CONTROL 画面等方法。) 需要注意在选择另一个文件时可能需要较长的时间。
- JPEG 光盘上的某些文件在播放时可能出现影像失真。

在 JPEG CONTROL 画面上进行操作

您可以在 JPEG CONTROL 画面上寻找及播放所需文件组 and 文件。

■ JPEG CONTROL 画面**注:**

- 在显示窗上您可以检查文件组号码和文件号码。
- 由于灌录状态等原因, 某些文件组和文件的名称可能有不正确显示。
- JPEG 光盘上灌录的文件组和文件顺序可能与从您的个人电脑上播出的顺序不一致。
- 在电视机上每次最多可以显示 12 个文件组和文件。反复按圆盘控制键上的 **▲/▼/▶/◀** 便可一个接一个地将后继的文件组和文件显示出来。
- 在使用遥控器之前, 须首先按 DVD 键切换遥控器的操作模式。

**■ 想要选择文件组时**

反复按圆盘控制键上的 **▶** (或 **◀**)。

■ 想要选择文件时

反复按圆盘控制键上的 **▼** (或 **▲**)。

■ 想要显示选择的文件时

按 ENTER 键。

- 当静止图像完全在电视机上显示出后, 您可以放大或缩小静止图像的倍率 (参阅第 39 和 40 页)。
- 如果按 **▶**, 浏览播放会从被选文件开始。

■ 在静止图像上放大倍率时

按 ZOOM 键。

想要移动放大位置时

按圆盘控制键上的 **▲/▼/▶/◀**。

想要返回到标准播放时

按 ENTER 键。

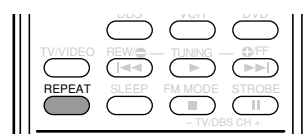
参阅第 39 和 40 页。

■ 想要返回到 JPEG CONTROL 画面时

按 MENU 或 **■** 键。

重复播放

您可重复播放目前的文件组, 或装入的光盘里的所有文件。



□ 在播放中或停止状态下

仅从遥控器上:**按 REPEAT 键。**

重复播放信息在 JPEG CONTROL 画面上出现, REPEAT 指示灯在显示屏上点亮。

- 每次按该键, 重复播放模式按如下所示进行切换:

REPEAT GROUP **⇌** **REPEAT ALL** **⇌**
指示灯熄灭 **⇌** (返回到起始处)

REPEAT GROUP: 重复目前的文件组

REPEAT ALL: 重复装入的光盘里的所有文件

想要关闭重复播放模式时

反复按 REPEAT 键直到重复播放信息从 JPEG CONTROL 画面上消失 (REPEAT 指示灯亦从显示屏上熄灭)。

操作选项菜单

您可通过电视机屏幕上的选项菜单来调整初始内设定。

在操作选项菜单之前，须首先按播放源选择键选择您想要调整的播放源。

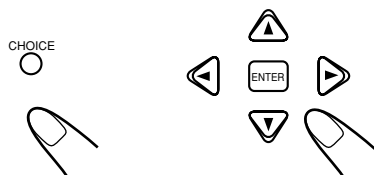
- 当选择 FM 或 AM 作为播放源时，您不能使用选项菜单。
- 当选择 DVD，FM 和 AM 以外者作为播放源时，您可以使用音频菜单和扬声器设定菜单。声音调整数据会记忆储存给每个播放源。

注：

- 必须启动电视机并在电视机上选择正确的输入模式。
- 仅能使用遥控器来操作选项菜单。
- 您可以切换选项菜单上使用的语言。参阅第 49 页。
- 当装入 MP3 光盘或 JPEG 光盘时，选项菜单不显示。

操作键

进行选项菜单操作时，须使用遥控器上的按键。



仅从遥控器上

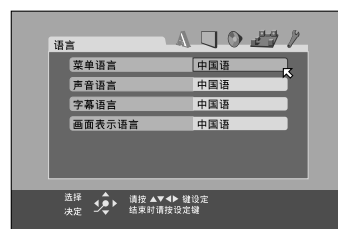
按键	可用于
CHOICE	在电视机上显示选项菜单。 每次按该键，选项菜单在启动与关闭之间交替切换。
▲/▼	选择项目。
►/◄	调整在选项菜单上选择的项目。
ENTER	进入所选项目的副菜单，或者决定设定。

选项菜单的外观

选项菜单包括下列菜单：

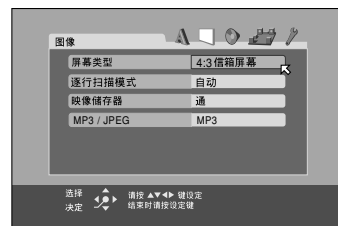
语言菜单（参阅第 49 页）

利用此菜单您可为光盘菜单，语言和字幕选择初始语言。在操作本机的过程中您还可以用其选择电视屏幕上使用的语言。



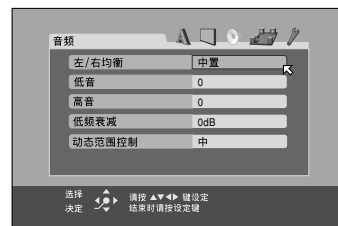
图像菜单（参阅第 49 页）

此菜单可用于选择您想要的关于图像或监视器屏幕之项目。



音频菜单（参阅第 50 页）

用此菜单可用于调整本机的声音设定。



扬声器设定菜单

（参阅第 51 页）

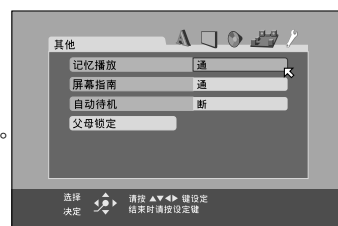
可用于调整扬声器的设定。还可以调整扬声器的输出等级。



其他菜单（参阅第 52 页）

此菜单可用于切换某些功能的设定。

设定父母锁定时也使用此菜单。



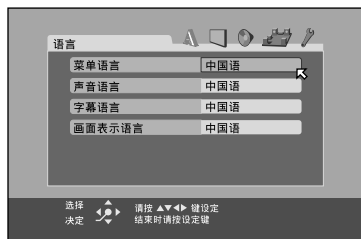
操作程序

举例：当设定逐行扫描模式时。

操作选项菜单之前，须首先按 DVD 键将播放源切换到 DVD。

1 按 CHOICE 键。

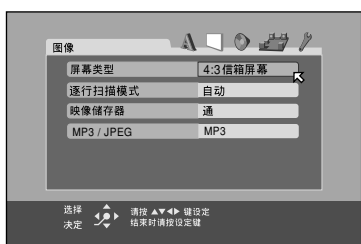
语言菜单在电视机上出现。



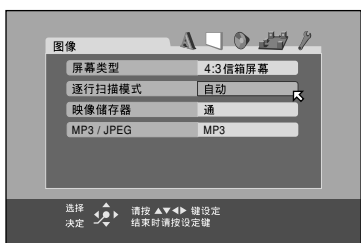
- 每次按圆盘控制键上的 ►（或 ◀），菜单均进行切换。

2 反复按圆盘控制键上的 ►（或 ◀）显示图像菜单。

- 每次按该键，菜单均进行切换。

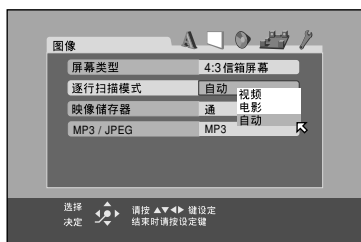


3 反复按圆盘控制键上的 ▼（或 ▲）将移动到“逐行扫描模式”处。

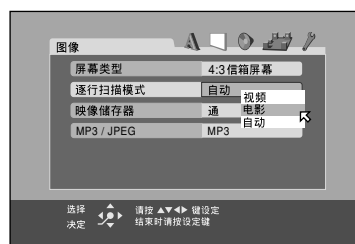


4 按 ENTER 键。

弹跳窗出现，便可以在弹跳窗里选择想要聆听的项目。



5 反复按圆盘控制键上的 ▼（或 ▲）选择您想要的项目。



举例：当选择“电影”时。

6 按 ENTER 键以完成设定。



想要在同一选项菜单上设定其他项目时
重复步骤 3 至 6。

想要移到另一个选项菜单时

反复按圆盘控制键上的 ►（或 ◀）选择您想要设定的选项菜单。

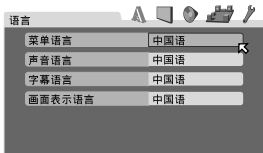
想要返回到标准屏幕时

按 CHOICE 键。

注：

- 选项菜单里的某些项目还下设有各种设定选项用的副菜单。按 ENTER 键便可使被选项目的副菜单在电视机上出现。您可以使用圆盘控制键上的 ▲/▼ 以及 ENTER 键（按上述步骤 5 和 6 中所述）来设定这些副菜单里的项目。

语言菜单



仅在播放前可以选择“菜单语言”，“声音语言”和“字幕语言”。

菜单语言

某些光盘含有多制式语言。

可从 AA 到 ZU（参阅第 50 页上的“语言代码一览表”）里选出一种语言或语言代码来作为菜单语言。

声音语言

某些光盘含有多制式声音语言。

可从 AA 到 ZU（参阅第 50 页上的“语言代码一览表”）里选出一种语言或语言代码。

字幕语言

某些光盘具有多制式字幕语言。

可从 AA 到 ZU（参阅第 50 页上的“语言代码一览表”）里选出一种语言或语言代码，或者选择“断（无字幕语言）”。

注：

- 当光盘上未灌录您为菜单语言，声音语言，或字幕语言选择的语言时，原始语言会自动用作初始语言。

画面表示语言

在电视屏幕上显示出的语言当中选择一种。

图像菜单



屏幕类型

当播放以图像的纵横比为16:9 制式录制的 DVD VIDEO 光盘时，您可以选择与电视机相同型屏幕类型。

关于多制式彩色系统电视机

当您使用多制式彩色系统的电视机时，通过选择“多制式”作为屏幕类型，您可以自动切换本机的彩色系统。在这种情况下，不管 VIDEO OUT SELECT 设定在何处，您均可以令本机的设定与装入的光盘之彩色系统相一致。

选择下列设定之一：

16:9 标准/16:9 多制式标准（宽萤幕）：

当您的电视机的纵横比固定为16:9（宽萤幕电视机）时选此项。在播放纵横比为 4:3 的图像时，主机自动正确调整输出信号的屏幕宽度。

16:9 自动/16:9 多制式自动（宽萤幕）：

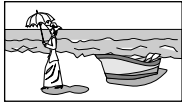
当您的电视机的纵横比为 16:9（宽萤幕电视机）时选此项。

4:3 信箱屏幕/4:3 多制式信箱屏幕（信箱）：

当您的电视机的纵横比为 4:3（普通电视机）时选此项。在观赏宽萤幕图像时，屏幕的上部和底部出现黑条带。

4:3 全景扫描/4:3 多制式全景扫描（全景扫描）：

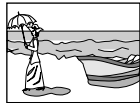
当您的电视机的纵横比为 4:3（普通电视机）时选此项。在观赏宽萤幕图像时，黑条带不出现，但图像的左右边缘在屏幕上显示不出来。



举例：16:9



举例：4:3 信箱屏幕



举例：4:3 全景扫描

- 某些 DVD VIDEO 尽管您选择的是“4:3 全景扫描”或“4:3 多制式全景扫描”，屏幕尺寸可能会变成“4:3 信箱屏幕”或“4:3 多制式信箱屏幕”。这取决于光盘的灌录方法。
- 当您为纵横比是 4:3 的图像选择“16:9 标准”或“16:9 多制式标准”时，由于需要进行图像宽度的转换处理，图像会发生轻微的变化。

逐行扫描模式

您可以根据图像的类型（电影源或视频源）来选择逐行扫描模式。仅当选择“PROGRESSIVE”作为扫描模式时才有效。（参阅第 14 页）
标准情况下设定在“自动”。

选择下列设定之一：

- 视频**：适于播放视频源光盘。
- 电影**：适于播放电影源或逐行扫描源光盘。
- 自动**：用于播放既含有视频源又含有电影源的光盘。本机根据光盘信息识别目前的光盘的图像类型（电影源还是视频源）。
 - 如果播出的图像不清晰，有噪音，或图像的线条扭曲粗糙，可试行切换成其它模式。

● 映像储存器

您可以启动或关闭映像储存器。

选择下列设定之一：

通	：当 5 分钟以上不操作时，电视屏幕上的图像变暗。
断	：映像储存器功能不工作。

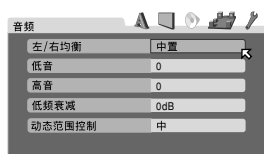
● MP3/JPEG

如果光盘上同时录有 MP3 和 JPEG 两种文件，您可选择其中一种文件来播放。

选择下列设定之一：

MP3	：播放 MP3 文件时选此项。
JPEG	：播放 JPEG 文件时选此项。

■ 音频菜单



您也可以使用前面板或遥控器调整下列项目（参阅第 19 至 24 页。）

● 左/右均衡

调整左前置扬声器和右前置扬声器之间的输出平衡。调整范围为“R-21”至“中央”或“中央”至“L-21”。

● 低音

以 2 为变换梯度在 -10 至 +10 的范围内调整从前置扬声器发出的低音之等级。

● 高音

以 2 为变换梯度在 -10 至 +10 的范围内调整从前置扬声器发出的高音之等级。

● 低频衰减

在播放以杜比数码或 DTS 数码环绕声编码的光盘时，低频音效衰减器可以减少重低音发出的低音的失真。

选择下列设定之一：

-10 dB	：选此项可以减少重低音发出的低音的失真。
0 dB	：用以关闭此项功能。

● 动态范围控制

当聆听以杜比数码编码的声音时，尽管音量等级设定在低处您仍可欣赏到强有力的声音。

选择下列设定之一：

高	：想要最大力度地缩小动态范围时选此项（用于夜晚）。
中	：想要适当减小动态范围时选此项。
断	：想要使用全动态范围欣赏环绕声时选此项（不体现效果）。

语言代码一览表

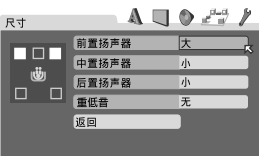
AA	阿岱尔语	FA	波斯语	KM	柬埔寨语	OM	(阿梵) 奥佬毛语	SU	苏丹语
AB	阿布卡赞语	FI	芬兰语	KN	肯那达语	OR	奥里亚语	SV	瑞典语
AF	南非公用语	FJ	斐济语	KO	韩国语 (KOR)	PA	潘伽比语	SW	斯瓦希里语
AM	阿姆哈拉语	FO	法劳塞语	KS	克什米尔语	PL	波兰语	TA	泰米尔语
AR	阿拉伯语	FY	弗利茜安语	KU	库尔德语	PS	普什图语	TE	泰卢固语
AS	阿萨美斯语	GA	爱尔兰语	KY	吉尔吉斯语	PT	葡萄牙语	TG	塔吉克语
AY	埃马拉语	GD	苏格兰语	LA	拉丁语	QU	奇楚亚语	TH	泰语
AZ	阿塞拜疆语	GL	伽里茜安语	LN	林嘎拉语	RM	利多罗曼语	TI	梯嘎林亚语
BA	巴什克尔语	GN	瓜拉尼语	LO	老挝语	RN	克伦蒂语	TK	土库曼语
BE	白俄罗斯语	GU	古伽拉提语	LT	立陶宛语	RO	罗马尼亚语	TL	他加禄语
BG	保加利亚语	HA	豪萨语	LV	拉托维亚语	RU	俄语	TN	塞茨瓦纳语
BH	比哈利语	HI	印地语	MG	马尔加什语	RW	肯牙旺达语	TO	汤加语
BI	比斯拉马语	HR	克罗地亚语	MI	毛利语	SA	梵语	TR	土耳其语
BN	孟加拉语	HU	匈牙利语	MK	马其顿语	SD	信德语	TS	从咖语
BO	藏语	HY	亚美尼亚语	ML	马拉雅拉姆语	SG	桑篙语	TT	鞑靼语
BR	布列塔尼语	IA	英塔里古亚语	MN	蒙古语	SH	塞尔维亚-克罗地亚语	TW	图依语
CA	加泰隆语	IE	英塔里古厄语	MO	摩尔达维亚语	SI	僧伽罗语	UK	乌克兰语
CO	科西嘉语	IK	英皮阿可语	MR	马拉提语	SK	斯洛伐克语	UR	乌尔都语
CS	捷克语	IN	印度尼西亚语	MS	马来语 (MAY)	SL	斯洛文尼亚语	UZ	乌兹别克语
CY	威尔士语	IS	冰岛语	MT	马尔他语	SM	萨摩亚语	VI	越南语
DA	丹麦语	IW	西伯来语	MY	缅甸语	SN	马绍纳语	VO	沃拉普克语
DZ	不丹语	JI	依地语	NA	瑙鲁语	SO	索马里语	WO	乌尔夫语
EL	希腊语	JW	爪哇语	NE	尼泊尔语	SQ	阿尔巴尼亚语	XH	考塞语
EO	世界语	KA	格鲁吉亚语	NL	荷兰语	SR	塞尔维亚语	YO	约鲁巴语
ET	爱沙尼亚语	KK	哈萨克语	NO	挪威语	SS	西斯哇提语	ZU	组鲁语
EU	巴斯克语	KL	格陵兰语	OC	奥希晏语	ST	塞索托语		

■ 扬声器设定菜单



● 尺寸

进入尺寸副菜单时选此项。



前置扬声器，中置扬声器，和后置扬声器

为每种扬声器选择下列设定之一：

大 (LRG)	： 扬声器的尺寸相对较大时选此项。
小 (SML)	： 扬声器的尺寸相对较小时选此项。
无 (NO)	： 未连接扬声器时选此项。(对前置扬声器不能选此项)

重低音

选择下列设定之一：

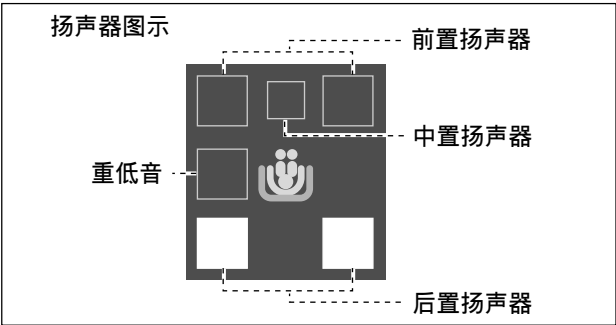
用 (YES)	： 当连接副低音扬声器时选此项。
无 (NO)	： 未连接副低音扬声器时选此项。

返回

选此项可返回到扬声器设定菜单。

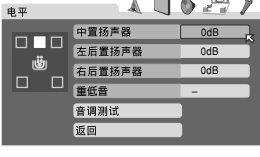
注：

- 调整扬声器设定时下列信息可供参考。
 - 若扬声器内建的圆锥形喇叭的尺寸大于 12 cm，选择“大”。若扬声器内建的圆锥形喇叭的尺寸小于 12 cm，选择“小”。
- 若已为前置扬声器选择了“小”，便不能为中置扬声器和后置扬声器选择“大”。
- 当将重低音扬声器选择在“无”时，便不能为前置扬声器选择“小”。
- 您可利用扬声器设定菜单左侧的扬声器图示来设定扬声器。
 - 在扬声器图示中选中的扬声器被打亮。
 - 扬声器图示的尺寸根据您的设定而改变。



● 电平

进入电平副菜单时选此项。



中置扬声器，左后扬声器，右后扬声器，和重低音

以 1 为变换梯度在 -10 dB 至 +10 dB 的范围内调整扬声器的输出等级。

音调测试

启动或停止测试音时选此项。

返回

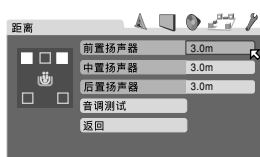
返回到扬声器设定菜单时选此项。

注：

- 当在尺寸菜单里将中置扬声器，后置扬声器和/或重低音选择为“无”时，取代目前的设定将显示出“-”。在此情况下您便不能调整这些扬声器的输出等级。
- 仅当其中某种适当的环境声模式启动时，您才可以调整中置扬声器和/或后置扬声器的输出等级（参阅第 27 页）。
- 当在尺寸菜单里将中置扬声器和/或后置扬声器选择为“无”时，从这些扬声器里不发出测试音。

● 距离

进入距离副菜单时选此项。



前置扬声器，中置扬声器，和后置扬声器

以 0.3 m 为变换梯度在 0.3 m 至 9.0 m 的范围内设定从视听位置到每个扬声器的距离。

音调测试

启动或停止测试音时选此项。

返回

返回到扬声器设定菜单时选此项。

注：

- 当在尺寸菜单里将中置扬声器和后置扬声器选择为“无”时，取代目前的设定将显示出“-”。在此情况下您便不能调整这些扬声器的距离。
- 当在尺寸菜单里将中置扬声器和/或后置扬声器选择为“无”时，从这些扬声器里不发出测试音。

● 掩盖

无论在任何位置使用小扬声器，主机自动将分配给小扬声器的低音成分重新分给大扬声器。

想要正确使用本功能时，需根据所连接的最小扬声器的尺寸设定掩盖频率的等级。

- 如果您为所有的扬声器选择了“LRG(大)”或“大”，此功能便不起作用。

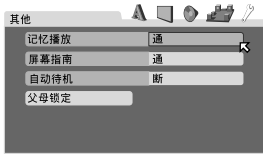
选择下列设定之一：

200Hz	：扬声器内建的圆锥形喇叭小于 5 cm 时选此频率。
150Hz	：扬声器内建的圆锥形喇叭约为 6 cm 时选此频率。
120Hz	：扬声器内建的圆锥形喇叭约为 8 cm 时选此频率。
100Hz	：扬声器内建的圆锥形喇叭约为 10 cm 时选此频率。
80Hz	：扬声器内建的圆锥形喇叭约为 12 cm 时选此频率。

● 复原

想要将所有扬声器的设定数据复原成初始内设定时选此项。

■ 其他菜单



● 记忆播放

您可以启动或关闭内设 DVD 放像机的记忆播放功能。

选择下列设定之一：

通	：想要启动该功能时选此项。
断	：想要关闭该功能时选此项。

● 屏幕指南

您可以启动或关闭下述屏幕指南标：

- 用于多制式观赏角度：
- 用于多制式副标题：
- 用于多制式声音语言：
- 用于播放状态：，，，，等

如果此功能启动，在播放开始时屏幕指南标会在电视机上出现。

当使用录像机进行录像时，将该功能设定成“断”时即可避免将上述指南标录到您的录像带上。

- 尽管将此功能设定成“断”，但选项菜单及屏幕条形表仍然会上。

选择下列设定之一：

通	：想要启动该功能时选此项。
断	：想要关闭该功能时选此项。

- 尽管将该功能设定在“断”，字幕（参阅第 35 页）及关于倍率放大的信息（参阅第 39 和 40 页）仍将在显示屏上出现。

● 自动待机

当内设的 DVD 放像机上的光盘播放终了，并且经过了您指定的时间而没有进行操作时，本机自动关机。

- 此功能仅在在选择 DVD 作为播放源时有效。

选择下列设定之一：

60	：如果 60 分钟以上不进行操作，关闭主机。
30	：如果 30 分钟以上不进行操作，关闭主机。
断	：想要关闭该功能时选此项。

- 当睡眠定时器（参阅第 12 页）和自动待机功能二者同时使用时，将由关闭时间延迟者来关闭主机。

● 父母锁定

您可以限制播放含有暴力镜头及不适合您的家族成员观看的 DVD VIDEO。

- 您仅能在播放前选择“父母锁定”。

进入父母锁定副菜单时选此项。（参阅第 53 和 54 页）。

使用父母锁定功能限制播放

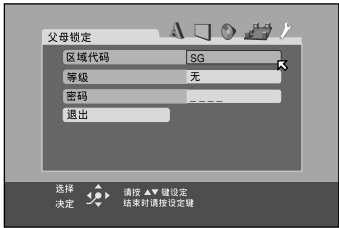
使用此功能，您可以限制播放含有暴力镜头及不适合您的家族成员观看的 DVD VIDEO。如果不取消该功能，任何人都无法播放这样的光盘。

- 本功能仅对应含有父母锁定等级信息 —1 级（最严厉限制）至 8 级（最宽松限制）的 DVD VIDEO 才有效。
- 仅当播放处于停止状态时您才能设定父母锁定功能。

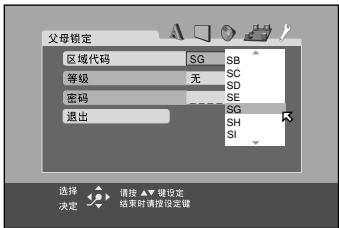
■ 设定父母锁定

1 按 CHOICE 键，然后按圆盘控制键上的 ►（或 ◀）显示其他菜单。

2 反复按圆盘控制键上的 ▼（或 ▲）将 移动到“父母锁定”处，然后按 ENTER 键。
父母锁定副菜单在电视机上出现。



3 反复按圆盘控制键上的 ▼（或 ▲）将 移动到“区域代码”处，然后按 ENTER 键。
区域代码设定用副菜单出现。



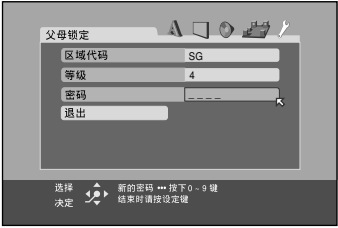
4 反复按圆盘控制键上的 ▼（或 ▲）选择区域代码，然后按 ENTER 键。
请参阅第 55 页上的“用于父母锁定的区域/地区代码一览表”。
将 移到“等级”处。

5 按 ENTER 键。
设定等级用弹跳窗出现。



6 反复按圆盘控制键上的 ▼（或 ▲）选择限制等级，然后按 ENTER 键。
将 移至到“密码”处。

- 等级值越小，表示父母锁定等级越严厉。
- 选择“无”可关闭该项功能。



7 按数字键（0 - 9）输入四位数作为密码，然后按 ENTER 键。
将 键移到“退出”处。

8 按 ENTER 键。
恢复到其他菜单。

想要返回到标准屏幕时
按 CHOICE 键。

注：

- 请牢记您的密码或将其记录下来。
您必须输入密码才能改变设定或解开锁定。想要改变设定时，请参阅第 54 页。

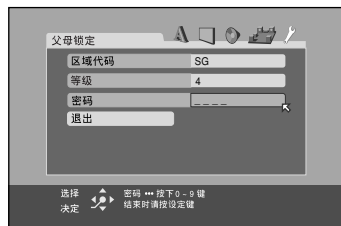
■ 切换父母锁定的设定

1 按 CHOICE 键，然后按圆盘控制键上的 **▶** (或 **◀**) 显示其他菜单。

2 反复按圆盘控制键上的 **▼** (或 **▲**) 将 **⏏** 移动到“父母锁定”处，然后按 ENTER 键。

父母锁定副菜单在电视机上出现。

- 在输入密码前您仅能将 **⏏** 移到“密码”或“退出”处。



3 按数字键 (0 - 9) 输入密码，然后按 ENTER 键。

- 如果输入的密码错误，“错误！重新输入... 按下 0~9 键”字样会在父母锁定副菜单上出现。
在输入正确的密码前无法进行下一步骤的操作。

4 反复按圆盘控制键上的 **▼** (或 **▲**) 将 **⏏** 移动到您想要订正的项目处，然后按 ENTER 键。

5 反复按圆盘控制键上的 **▼** (或 **▲**) 切换设定，然后按 ENTER 键。

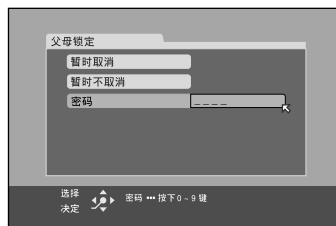
6 按数字键 (0 - 9) 输入密码，然后按 ENTER 键。
新设定的密码被储存。

注：

- 在设定密码前不能设定父母锁定功能。
- 如果您在步骤 6 设定密码之前从父母锁定副菜单退出，新的区域代码和父母锁定等级无效，而旧的区域代码和父母锁定等级仍旧有效。
- 当您输入的密码错误超过三次时，**⏏** 自动移动到“退出”处，并且圆盘控制键上的 **▼** (或 **▲**) 不工作。按 ENTER 键从父母锁定副菜单退出，然后从步骤 1 起重新进行操作。
- 如果您忘记了密码，可输入“8888”。

■ 暂时取消父母锁定

当您设定严厉限制的父母锁定等级时，某些光盘会全然不能播放。当您装入此类光盘并试图播放时，下述信息会在电视机屏幕上出现。您可暂时取消父母锁定。



1 反复按圆盘控制键上的 **▼** (或 **▲**) 将 **⏏** 移动到“暂时取消”处，然后按 ENTER 键。

将 **⏏** 移动到“密码”处。

- 如果您不想暂时取消父母锁定功能，可按圆盘控制键上的 **▼** (或 **▲**) 选择“暂时不取消”，然后按 ENTER 键。要退出光盘时，按 **▲** 键。

2 按数字键 (0 - 9) 输入密码，然后按 ENTER 键。
播放开始。

- 如果输入的密码错误，“错误！重新输入... 按下 0~9 键”字样会在父母锁定副菜单上出现。
在输入正确的密码前无法进行下一步骤的操作。

注：

- 当您输入的密码错误超过三次时，**⏏** 自动移动到“暂时不取消”处，并且圆盘控制键上的 **▼** (或 **▲**) 不工作。按 **▲** 键退出光盘。

用于父母锁定的区域/地区代码一览表

AD	安道尔	EH	西撒哈拉	LA	老过	RW	卢旺达
AE	阿拉伯联合酋长国	ER	厄立特利亚	LB	黎巴嫩	SA	沙乌地阿拉伯
AF	阿富汗	ES	西班牙	LC	圣路西亚岛	SB	所罗门群岛
AG	安提瓜岛和巴布达岛	ET	埃塞俄比亚	LI	列支敦士登	SC	塞西耳群岛
AI	安圭拉岛	FI	芬兰	LK	斯里兰卡	SD	苏丹
AL	阿尔巴尼亚	FJ	斐济	LR	利比里亚	SE	瑞典
AM	亚美尼亚	FK	福克兰群岛(马尔维纳斯)	LS	莱索托	SG	新加坡
AN	新西兰 安替列斯群岛	FM	密克罗尼西亚 (联邦共和国)	LT	立陶宛	SH	圣赫勒拿
AO	安哥拉	FO	法劳塞群岛	LU	卢森堡	SI	斯拉维尼亚
AQ	南极地区	FR	法国	LV	拉脱维亚	SJ	斯瓦尔巴和央棉岛
AR	阿根廷	FX	法国, 大都市	LY	利比亚阿拉伯加马吉利亚	SK	斯洛伐克
AS	美国萨摩亚群岛	GA	加彭	MA	摩洛哥	SL	塞拉利昂
AT	奥地利	GB	英国	MC	摩纳哥	SM	圣马力诺
AU	澳大利亚	GD	石榴岛	MD	蒙得维的亚	SN	塞内加尔
AW	阿卢巴岛	GE	乔治亚	MG	马达加斯加岛	SO	索马利亚
AZ	阿塞拜疆	GF	法属圭亚那	MH	马绍尔群岛	SR	苏利南
BA	波士尼亚和黑塞哥维那	GH	迦纳	ML	马里	ST	圣图美岛酋长国
BB	巴贝多	GI	直布罗陀	MM	缅甸	SV	萨尔瓦多
BD	孟加拉国	GL	格林兰岛	MN	蒙古	SY	叙利亚阿拉伯共和国
BE	比利时	GM	甘比亚	MO	澳门	SZ	史瓦济兰
BF	巴奇那 法索	GN	几内亚	MP	北马利安娜岛	TC	土克斯及开卡斯群岛 (特克斯群岛和凯科斯群岛)
BG	保加利亚	GP	瓜德洛普	MQ	马丁尼克岛		
BH	巴林岛	GQ	赤道几内亚	MR	茅利塔尼亚	TD	查德
BI	蒲隆地	GR	希腊	MS	蒙特色纳岛	TF	法属南部地区
BJ	贝宁	GS	南乔治亚和 南夏威夷群岛	MT	马耳他	TG	多哥
BM	百慕达群岛	GT	瓜地马拉	MU	模里西斯	TH	泰国玛语言
BN	婆罗乃 达鲁萨拉姆	GU	关岛	MV	马尔地夫群岛	TJ	塔吉克斯坦
BO	玻利维亚	GW	几内亚-比桑	MW	马拉威	TK	托克劳群岛
BR	巴西	GY	盖亚那	MX	墨西哥	TM	土库曼苏维埃 社会主义共和国
BS	巴哈马群岛	HK	香港	MY	马来西亚	TN	突尼斯
BT	不丹	HM	赫德岛和 玛杜那德群岛	MZ	莫三鼻克	TO	东加群岛
BV	保威特岛	HN	洪都拉斯	NA	纳米比亚	TP	东帝汶
BW	波扎那	HR	克罗地亚	NC	新苏格兰	TR	土耳其
BY	白俄罗斯	HT	海地	NE	尼日	TT	千里达岛和托贝哥岛
BZ	百里斯	HU	匈牙利	NF	诺福克岛	TV	图瓦卢
CA	加拿大	ID	印度尼西亚	NI	尼加拉瓜	TW	台湾
CC	椰子群岛	IE	爱尔兰	NL	荷兰	TZ	坦桑尼亚联邦共和国
CF	中非共和国	IL	以色列	NO	挪威	UA	乌克兰
CG	刚果	IN	印度	NP	尼泊尔	UG	乌干达
CH	瑞士	IO	英属印度洋地区	NR	诺鲁	UM	美属诸岛
CI	考特戴沃莱	IQ	伊拉克	NU	纽埃	US	美国
CK	科克群岛	IR	伊朗(伊斯兰共和国)	NZ	新西兰	UY	乌拉圭
CL	智利	IS	冰岛	OM	阿曼	UZ	乌兹别克
CM	科麦隆	IT	意大利	PA	巴拿马	VA	梵谛冈(天主教国)
CN	中国	JM	牙买加	PE	秘鲁	VC	圣文森特岛和 格林那定群岛
CO	哥伦比亚	JO	约旦	PF	法属玻里尼西亚		
CR	哥斯达黎加	JP	日本	PG	巴布亚新几内亚	VE	委内瑞拉
CU	古巴	KE	肯尼亚	PH	菲律宾	VG	维尔京群岛(英属)
CV	绿角群岛	KG	格鲁吉亚	PK	巴基斯坦	VI	维尔京群岛(美属)
CX	圣诞岛	KH	柬埔寨	PL	波兰	VN	越南
CY	塞浦路斯	KI	吉尔巴帝	PM	圣皮埃尔和密克隆岛	VU	瓦奴阿图岛
CZ	捷克共和国	KM	科摩罗群岛	PN	皮特肯岛	WF	瓦里斯群岛和福图纳群岛
DE	德国	KN	圣吉茨岛和尼维斯岛	PR	波多黎各	WS	萨摩亚群岛
DJ	德里波里	KP	北朝鲜	PT	葡萄牙	YE	也门
DK	丹麦	KR	韩国	PW	珍珠岛	YT	马由特
DM	多米尼加	KW	科威特	PY	巴拉圭	YU	南斯拉夫
DO	多米尼加共和国	KY	开曼群岛	QA	卡塔尔	ZA	南非
DZ	阿尔及利亚	KZ	哈萨克	RE	留尼旺岛	ZM	赞比亚
EC	厄瓜多尔			RO	罗马尼亚	ZR	扎伊尔
EE	爱沙尼亚			RU	俄罗斯联邦	ZW	津巴布维
EG	埃及						

DVD 放像机用语说明

播放控制功能（PBC）

是指用来控制播放灌录在 VCD/SVCD 上的信号的一种方法。通过使用与 PBC 功能兼容的 VCD/SVCD 上录制的菜单屏幕，您可享受播放交互型软盘以及具有寻找功能的软盘。

抽样频率

是指模拟数据转换成数码数据时抽样数据的频率。抽样频率是以数字表示每秒钟可以抽出多少次原始模拟信号。

传输速率

使指数码数据的传输比率。通常以每秒几波德（bps）为测量单位。DVD 系统为了获得高效率传输而使用可变传输速率制式。

多制式观赏角度

通过在一个标题里同时录制多个影像的方法，让使用者可以挑选观赏角度。此功能也被称为多制式角度功能。

多制式语言

如果一个标题是以多种语言录制而成，通常便被称作多制式语言标题。

多频道

DVD VIDEO 被指定在一个音轨里只能含有一个音场。多频道是指轨迹的组成里含有三个或更多的频道。

父母锁定

是本系统附带的一种功能，该功能可根据软件上事先设定的以及用户在本系统上自行设定的父母锁定等级（从教育观点出发衡量那些不宜观看的影片的一种尺度），自动判断指定的 DVD VIDEO 软件能否观看；如果软件的锁定等级比用户设定的等级宽松，则该软件可以播放。

隔行扫描

在传统的视频制式里，图像分两步播放到显示监视器上。隔行扫描制式即指在前一半图像的信号线之间插入后一半图像的扫描线的方法。

光盘菜单

是一种屏幕显示。在上面您可以选择 DVD VIDEO 光盘上灌录的影像，声音，字幕，多制式观赏角度等。

环绕声

是为了通过在视听者周围配置多个扬声器的方法而建立三维仿真音场的一种制式。

JPEG

是一种由 Joint Photographic Expert Group（共同影像专业集团）公司开发出来的静止图像数据压缩制式，其特点是虽然压缩比高但几乎不影响影像质量。

MP3

是一种带有音声数据压缩系统的文件制式。“MP3”是 Motion Picture Experts Group（电影实业集团）1（或 MPEG-1）Audio Layer 3（音频 3 代）的缩写。通过使用 MP3 制式，一张 CD-R 或 CD-RW 上灌录的数据容量可以比普通 CD 多 10 倍。

区域代码

是令光盘仅在事先设定的区域内才能播放的一种制式。世界上所有的国家一共被分成六个区域，每个区域都被封以指定的区域代码（或区域编号）。如果光盘上给出的区域代码中含有与播放机的区域代码中相一致的数字，播放机便可以播放该光盘。

线性 PCM（PCM：脉冲编码调制）

是一种用来延迟处理的制式，不用转换器压缩数据即可将模拟音声信号转换成数码信号。

信箱

是一种播放宽萤幕影像如电影的方法，通过在屏幕的上部和底部放入黑条带，使 4:3 电视机屏幕中心部播出的影像完整。由于屏幕形状看起来实在像个信箱，因而得以此名。

章节

是 DVD VIDEO 上的最小影像单位。由标题下分出的分标题，相当于 CD 或 VCD 里的曲目。

综合视频信号

视频信号里包含的三种信号由下列信号组成：使用频率加倍方法将光线信号和色度信号组建而成的影像信号；为产生颜色提供原色的脉冲串信号；和同步信号。

逐行扫描

逐行扫描制式可一次将图像里所有的水平扫描线显示出来构成一个画面。本系统可将隔行扫描视频从 DVD VIDEO 转换成用于连接逐行扫描显示屏的逐行扫描制式。逐行扫描制式可戏剧性提高垂直解像度。

纵横比

播出的影像的纵向尺寸与横向尺寸的比例。普通电视机的横向尺寸与纵向尺寸的比例为 4:3，宽萤幕电视机的比例为 16:9。

组合视频信号

视频信号系统（产生含有三种光原色在内的影像信号所必需的那部分数据）经由独立的信号线被传送。R/G/B，Y/Pb/Pr 等类型的信号可以使用该种方法传送。

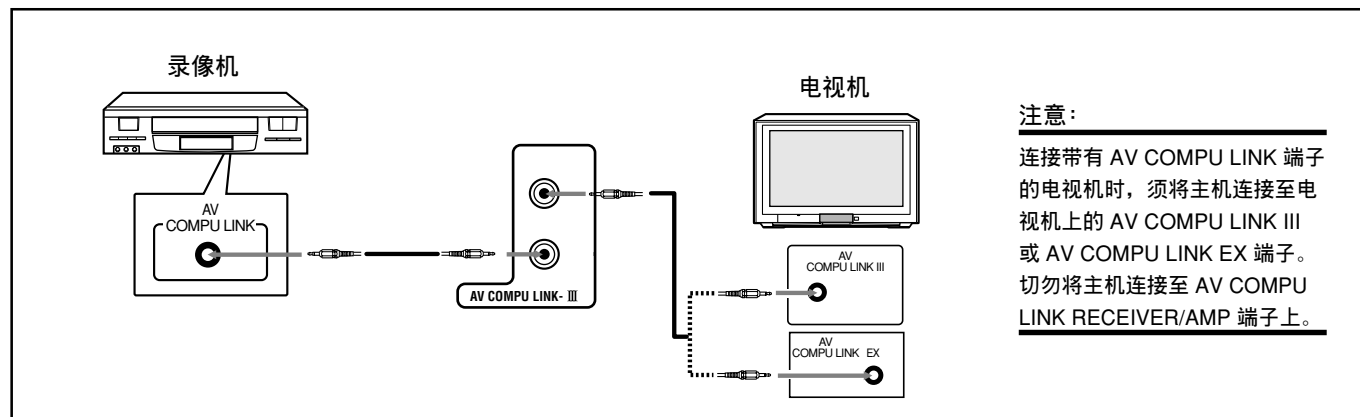
AV COMPU LINK（AV 电脑连动功能）遥控系统

AV COMPU LINK（音视频电脑连动功能）遥控系统可使您通过主机来操作 JVC 的视频组件（电视机和录像机）。

本机配带 AV COMPU LINK-III（音视频电脑连动 III）端子，使您通过视频组件端子来增加操作 JVC 的视频组件这一功能。想要使用此遥控系统时，需连接您想要操作的视频组件，可参阅下图及第 58 页上的操作方法进行操作。

- 同时也请参阅随视频组件附带的使用手册。

连接方法 1：AV COMPU LINK 连接



注：

- 当使用组合视频电缆将主机与带有 AV COMPU LINK EX 端子的电视机相连接时，不能使用电视机输入模式的自动选择功能（参阅第 58 页）。
- 当仅将录像机连接至主机时，可使用带单声道微型插头的电缆将其直接连接至主机。

连接方法 2：视频电缆连接

本接收机配有三种类型的视频端子 — 综合视频，S-视频和组合视频，并且通过某种类型的视频端子传入的信号只能通过与其同型的端子输出。因此可以应用下述两种方法之一将录像机和电视连接到主机上 — 方法 1 或方法 2：

- 当使用 AV COMPU LINK 控制系统时，需正确设定组合视频输入（参阅第 22 页上的“视频输出模式”）；否则，不能在电视机上为本机选择正确的输入。

方法 1	当使用 S-视频端子将播放源组件连接至本机时，须使用 S-视频电缆将本机连接至电视机上的 Video Input 1 端子。 <pre> 播放源设备 — S-视频电缆 — RX-DV3SL — S-视频电缆 — 电视机 至 Video Input 1 </pre>
方法 2	当使用综合视频端子将播放源组件连接至本机时，须使用综合视频电缆将本机连接至电视机上的 Video Input 2（综合视频输入）端子。 <pre> 播放源设备 — 综合视频电缆 — RX-DV3SL — 综合视频电缆 — 电视机 至 Video Input 2 </pre>
方法 3	当将内设的 DVD 放像机的视频输出模式设定成“组合”时，须使用组合视频电缆将本机连接到电视机上的 Video Input 2（组合视频输入）端子。 <pre> RX-DV3SL — 组合视频电缆 — 电视机 至 Video Input 2 </pre>

1. 若已经将录像机，电视机和本机插入了墙上交流电插座，请首先将其交流电导线拔下。
2. 请使用带单声道微型插头的电缆（另购）按前页所述“连接方法 1”连接录像机，电视机和本机。
3. 请使用音频导线将录像机，电视机和本机的音频输入/输出插孔相连接。
 - 参阅第 7 至 9 页。
4. 请按前页所述的“连接方法 2”，使用带 S-视频插头或组合视频插头的综合视频导线将录像机，电视机和本机上的视频输入/输出插孔相连接。
5. 将各组件上的交流电导线插入墙上插座。
6. 在进行 AV COMPU LINK 连接之后首次打开电视机时，请使用电视机上的电视机音量控制键将电视机音量调至最低音量。
7. 须首先启动连接的其它组件，然后再启动本机。
 - 想要启动录像机时，请使用本机附带的遥控器 — 按 **○/I** **STANDBY/ON VCR** 键。

AV COMPU LINK 遥控系统为您提供下列 5 种基本功能。

使用本机上的遥控器遥控电视机和录像机功能

详情参阅第 60 页。

- 请将遥控器直接对准各组件上的遥控感应器。

单触视频播放功能

只要将没有防抹片的录像带插入录像机，您无须再手动设定其它开关即可欣赏影像播放。本机可自动启动并将播放源切换成录像机。

电视机自动启动并将输入模式切换到适当的位置，使您能够观赏播出的影像。

当您插入带有防抹片的录像带时，按录像机上或遥控器上的播放 (▶) 键，您可以获得同样的效果。

单触 DVD 播放功能

只要开始播放内设的 DVD 放像机，您无须再手动设定其它开关即可欣赏 DVD 播放。

电视机自动启动并将输入模式切换到适当的位置，使您能够观赏播出的图像。

电视机输入模式的自动选择功能

- 当您在主机上将电视机选作想要以播放的播放源时，电视机自动将输入模式切换至电视机调谐器，使您能够观看电视机。
- 当您在主机上将“DVD”，“VCR”，或“DBS”选作想要以播放的播放源时，电视机自动将输入模式切换至适当的位置，使您能够观赏播出的图像。

注：

- 当您带有 AV COMPU LINK EX 端子的电视机连接至本机时，不能使用组合视频电缆（如前页方法 3 所述）。
- 当您在主机上选择电视机作为播放源时，您在电视机屏幕上看不到菜单，因为将 AV COMPU LINK 遥控系统自动将电视机的输入模式切换成了电视机调谐器。
只有您不介意停止收听电视声音，通过将电视机的输入模式切换至主机被连接到的正确位置后，您才可以显示屏幕菜单。

电源自动打开/关闭功能

使用此功能，电视机和录像机随本机一起启动和关闭。

当您打开本机时：

- 如果上次所选的播放源是录像机，则电视机和录像机会自动启动。
- 如果上次所选的播放源是电视机或 DVD，则只有电视机会自动启动。

当您关闭主机时，电视机和录像机亦会自动关闭。

注：

- 若在录像机复录的过程中关闭主机，录像机不会关闭且会继续录像。

操作 JVC 的音频/视频组件

您可以使用本机的遥控器来操作 JVC 的音频和视频组件，因为遥控器里已经预设了控制 JVC 组件的控制信号。

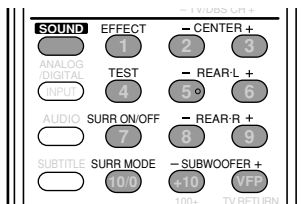
操作音频组件

想要使用本遥控器操作 JVC 厂牌的音频组件时

- 将遥控器直接对准主机上的遥控感应器。
- 想要使用遥控器操作播放源时，必须使用遥控器上的播放源选择键选择播放源。
- 也请参阅随音频组件附带的使用手册。

■ 声音控制部分（放大器）

按 SOUND 键后，您便可以执行下列操作：



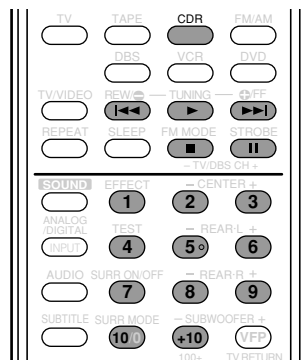
- SURR ON/OFF** : 启动或关闭环绕声模式—Dolby Digital, DTS Digital Surround, 和 Dolby Pro Logic II。
- SURR MODE** : 选择环绕声模式。
- TEST** : 启动或关闭测试音输出。
- CENTER + 或 -** : 调整中置扬声器频道的输出等级。
- REAR•L + 或 -** : 调整左后扬声器频道的输出等级。
- REAR•R + 或 -** : 调整右后扬声器频道的输出等级。
- SUBWOOFER + 或 -** : 调整重低音频道的输出等级。
- EFFECT** : 选择音效等级。

注：

- 调整声音之后，通过使用数字键您便可按播放源选择键来操作所需播放源；否则，数字键便不能用来操作所需播放源。

■ CD 录音机

按 CDR 键之后，您便可以在 CD 播放机或 CD 录音机上执行下列操作：



- ▶ : 起始播放。
- ◀▶ : 返回到目前（或先前）曲目的开始处。
- ▶▶ : 跳越到下一首曲目的开始处。
- : 停止播放。
- || : 暂停播放。想要继续播放时，按 ▶ 键。

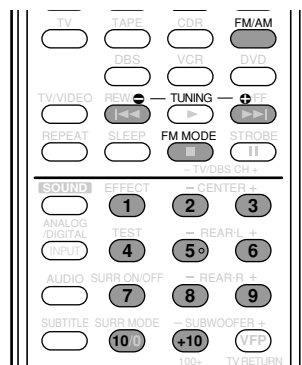
- 1 - 10, +10** : 直接选择曲目号码。
选择首曲目号码 5，按 5。
选择首曲目号码 15，按 +10，然后按 5。
选择首曲目号码 20，按 +10，然后按 10。
选择首曲目号码 30，按 +10，+10，然后按 10。

注：

- 当您在 CD 录音机上开始录音后，便可以使用 CD 录音机自身的按键或随机附带的遥控器上的按键。

■ 调谐器

通常情况下可以执行下列操作：



- FM/AM** : 调收最后选择的 FM 或 AM 电台。
- 每次按此键，波段在 FM 与 AM 之间交替切换。

按 FM/AM 键之后，您便可以在调谐器上执行下列操作：

- 1 - 10, +10** : 直接选择预设频道号码。
选择频道号码 5，按 5。
选择频道号码 15，按 +10，然后按 5。
选择频道号码 20，按 +10，然后按 10。

TUNING + 或 - : 调收电台。

FM MODE : 切换 FM 的接收模式。

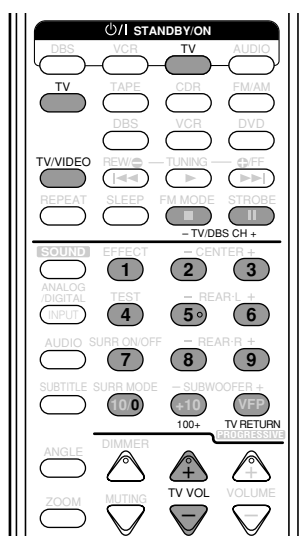
操作视频组件

想要使用本遥控器操作 JVC 厂牌的视频组件时：

- 在音频/视频连接以外（参阅第 7 页和第 10 页），需要通过 AV COMPU LINK-III 插孔连接 JVC 视频组件（参阅第 57 页）。
- 某些 JVC 厂牌的录像机可接收两种类型的遥控信号 — 遥控代码“A”和“B”。使用本遥控器之前，请确保连接至 VCR 插孔的录影机遥控器代码已设定为代码“A”。
- 想要使用遥控器操作视频组件时，须将遥控器直接对准各组件上的遥控感应器，而不是对准本机上的遥控感应器。

电视机

通常情况下可以执行下列操作：



TV/STANDBY/ON TV：打开或关闭电视机。

TV VOL + 或 -：调整音量。

TV/VIDEO：设定输入模式 (TV 或 VIDEO)。

按 TV 键之后，您便可以在电视机上执行下列操作：

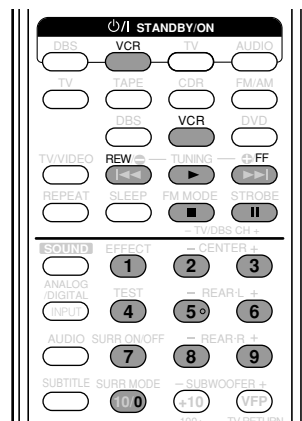
TV/DBS CH + 或 -：切换频道。

1 - 9, 0, 100+：选择频道。
 选择频道号码 5，按 5。
 选择频道号码 10，按 1，然后按 0。
 选择频道号码 23，按 2，然后按 3。
 选择频道号码 135，按 100+，3，然后按 5。

TV RETURN：在先前选择的频道与目前选择的频道之间交替切换。

录像机

通常情况下可以执行下列操作：



TV/STANDBY/ON VCR：启动或关闭录像机。

按 VCR 键之后，您便可以在录像机上执行下列操作：

1 - 9, 0：在录像机上选择电视频道。
 选择频道号码 5，按 5。
 选择频道号码 10，按 1，然后按 0。
 选择频道号码 23，按 2，然后按 3。

▶：起始播放。
REW：快速倒带。
FF：快速进带。
■：停止操作。
||：暂停播放。想要继续播放时，按 ▶ 键。

操作其它厂牌的设备

本机附带的遥控器可以将遥控信号传输给其它厂牌的电视机，DBS 调谐器和录像机。
通过将预设的传输控制信号切换成其它厂牌的遥控信号，使用此遥控器便可操作其它厂牌的组件。

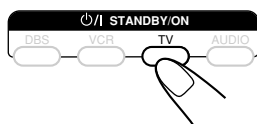
切换预设信号代码

想要使用此遥控器操作其它厂牌的设备时

- 须将遥控器直接对准各设备上的遥控感应器。
- 想要使用遥控器操作播放源时，必须使用遥控器上的播放源选择键选择播放源。
- 也请参阅随设备附带的使用手册。

■ 想要切换传输信号以操作其它厂牌的电视机时

1. 按住 **○/I STANDBY/ON TV** 键。

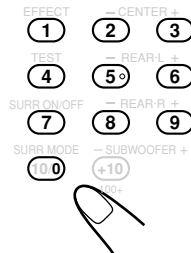


2. 按 **TV** 键。



3. 用数字键（1 – 9，0）输入厂牌代码。

参阅右侧表格查出代码。



4. 松开 **○/I STANDBY/ON TV** 键。

您便可以在电视机上执行下列操作：

○/I STANDBY/ON TV：打开和关闭电视机。

TV VOL + 或 -：调整音量。

TV/VIDEO：设定输入模式（TV 或 VIDEO）。

按 **TV** 键之后，您便可以在电视机上执行下列操作：

TV/DBS CH + 或 -：切换频道。

1 – 9, 0, 100+：选择频道。
选择频道号码 5，按 5。
选择频道号码 10，按 1，然后按 0。
选择频道号码 23，按 2，然后按 3。
选择频道号码 135，按 100+，3，然后按 5。
如果设备要求在选频道号码之后按 **ENTER** 键，TV RETURN 键便可发挥 **ENTER** 键的功能。

注：

- 也请参阅随电视机附带的使用手册。
- 某些电视机可能不配备左栏中列出的所有功能。
- 如果按数字键不能切换某些电视机的频道，可按 **TV/DBS CH + 或 -** 键来切换频道。

5. 按 **○/I STANDBY/ON TV** 键尝试操作您的电视机。

当电视机可以打开或关闭时，表示您输对了代码。

若您所购买的厂牌的电视机所附带的代码不只一个，可逐个尝试直到输入正确的代码为止。

电视机的厂牌代码

厂牌	代码
JVC	00*, 02, 13, 14, 47, 74
Akai	01, 02
Blaupunkt	03, 04
Fisher	01, 05
Grundig	03, 06, 07
Hitachi	08 – 10, 49
Iraddio	02
Ilt/Nokia	11, 12
Loewe	06, 15, 16
Magnavox	08, 17, 49
Mets	50 – 53
Mitsubishi	08, 18 – 20
Mivar	21
Nordmende	22, 23
Okano	15
Panasonic	24 – 27, 76
Philips	15, 17, 28, 75
Quelle	52 – 67
RCA/PROSC	08, 24, 29 – 31, 48
SABA	32, 33, 68 – 70
Samsung	06, 08, 16, 34, 35, 49
Sanyo	01, 05
Schneider	02, 15, 36
Sharp	37, 38, 77
Sony	39
Telefunken	40 – 42, 69
Thomson	71, 72
Toshiba	37, 43, 44
Zenith	45, 46

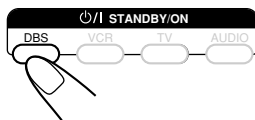
* “00” 为 JVC 初始内设定。

注：

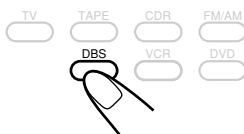
- 厂牌代码若有变更恕不另行通知。代码变更后，本遥控器便不能操作该设备。

■ 想要切换传输信号以操作其它厂牌的 DBS 调谐器时

1. 按住 $\odot$ /I/STANDBY/ON DBS 键。

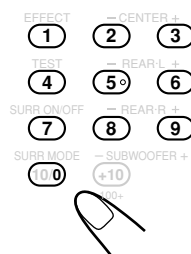


2. 按 DBS 键。



3. 用数字键（1 - 9, 0）输入厂牌代码。

参阅右侧表格查出代码。



4. 松开 $\odot$ /I/STANDBY/ON DBS 键。

您便可以打开或关闭 DBS 调谐器：

$\odot$ /I/STANDBY/ON DBS：打开和关闭 DBS 调谐器。

按 DBS 键之后，您便可以在 DBS 调谐器上执行下列操作：

TV/DBS CH + 或 -：切换频道。

1 - 9, 0, 100+：选择频道。

选择频道号码 5，按 5。

选择频道号码 10，按 1，然后按 0。

选择频道号码 23，按 2，然后按 3。

选择频道号码 135，按 100+，3，然后按 5。

如果设备要求在选择频道号码之后按 ENTER 键，TV RETURN 键便可发挥 ENTER 键的功能。

注：

- 也请参阅随 DBS 调谐器附带的使用手册。

5. 按 $\odot$ /I/STANDBY/ON DBS 键尝试操作您的 DBS 调谐器。

当 DBS 调谐器可以打开或关闭时，表示您输对了代码。

若您所购买的厂牌的 DBS 调谐器所附带的代码不只一个，可逐个尝试直到输入正确的代码为止。

DBS 调谐器的厂牌代码

厂牌	代码
JVC	56, 57*, 67
Amstrad	43 - 49
Blaupunkt	30
Echostar	50, 51, 67
General Instrument	29
Goldstar	31
Grundig	32, 33
Hamlin/Re	01 - 05
Hirshmann	48, 52 - 55
Instrument	68
Itt/Nokia	34
Jerrold/G	06 - 14
Kathrein	52, 58 - 63
NEC	35, 36
Oak	15 - 17
Orbitech	48
Panasonic	18 - 20
Philips	37, 38
Pioneer	21, 22
RCA	65
Samsung	39, 40
Schwaiger	61, 64
Scientiff	23 - 25
Siemens	41, 42
Sony	66
Technisat	48
Tocom	26
Zenith	27, 28

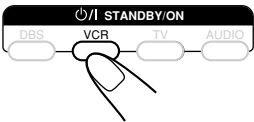
* “57” 为 JVC 初始内设定。

注：

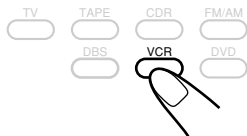
- 厂牌代码若有变更恕不另行通知。代码变更后，本遥控器便不能操作该设备。

■ 想要切换传输信号以操作其它厂牌的录像机时

1. 按住 /STANDBY/ON VCR 键。

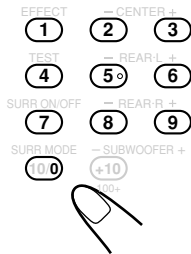


2. 按 VCR 键。



3. 用数字键（1 – 9，0）输入厂牌代码。

参阅右侧表格查出代码。



4. 松开 /STANDBY/ON VCR 键。

您便可以打开和关闭录像机。

/STANDBY/ON VCR ：打开和关闭录像机。

按 VCR 键之后，您便可以在录像机上执行下列操作：

- 1 – 9, 0：在录像机上选择电视频道。
选择频道号码 5，按 5。
选择频道号码 10，按 1，然后按 0。
选择频道号码 23，按 2，然后按 3。
如果设备要求在选频道号码之后按 ENTER 键，
TV RETURN 键便可发挥 ENTER 键的功能。

- ▶：起始播放。
REW：快速倒带。
FF：快速进带。
■：停止操作。
||：暂停播放。想要继续播放时，按 ▶ 键。

注：

- 也请参阅随录像机附带的使用手册。

5. 按 /STANDBY/ON VCR 键尝试操作您的录像机。

当录像机可以打开或关闭时，表示您输对了代码。

若您所购买的厂牌的录像机所附带的代码不只一个，可逐个尝试直到输入正确的代码为止。

录像机的厂牌代码

厂牌	代码
JVC	00*, 26 – 29, 58
Aiwa	01, 02
Bell & Howell	03
Blaupunkt	04, 05
CGM	06, 07
Emerson	08, 10 – 12, 64, 65
Fisher	03, 14 – 17
Funai	01
GE	18 – 20
Goldstar	07
Goodmans	13, 21
Grundig	06, 22
Hitachi	18, 23 – 25, 66
Loewe	07, 21
Magnavox	04, 19, 24
Mitsubishi	30 – 35
NEC	26, 27
Nokia	03, 36
Nordmende	38
Orion	09
Panasonic	19, 24, 39, 40
Philips	04, 19, 21, 24, 41, 42
Phonola	21
RCA/PROSC	04, 18, 19, 23, 24, 43 – 45
SABA	38, 46
Samsung	45, 47, 59, 61 – 63
Sanyo	03, 48, 49
Sharp	37, 50
Siemens	03, 51
Sony	52 – 54
Telefunken	55, 60
Toshiba	43, 44
Zenith	56, 57

* “00” 为 JVC 初始内设定。

注：

- 厂牌代码若有变更恕不另行通知。代码变更后，本遥控器便不能操作该设备。

要使本系统发挥最佳效能，请保持光盘和机器的清洁。

一般注意事项

一般来说，如果您能保持光盘和机器本身的清洁，您就会获得本机的最佳使用效能。

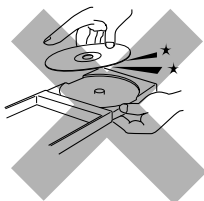
- 请将光盘存放在盒中，并将其放在柜橱里或框架上。

怎样保养光盘

- 将光盘从盒中取出时，请轻轻按住中心孔，握住边缘将其取出。
- 请勿触摸光盘的光亮面，亦不要弯折光盘。
- 用完后请将光盘还回盒中以防止变形。



- 还回盒中时请小心不要刮划光盘的表面。
- 避免将其暴露于阳光直射，高温和潮湿处。



怎样清洁光盘

请用一软布从中心到边缘直线擦拭光盘。



切勿使用任何溶剂 — 诸如普通唱片清洁剂，喷雾剂，稀释剂，或苯 — 来清洁光盘。

清洁主机

- 主机脏污时
应该使用柔软的布来擦拭。如果机器严重脏污，用布蘸上以水稀释后的中性洗剂然后拧乾再擦拭。最后用乾布擦乾。
- 因为机器有可能发生质量衰退，出现伤痕或漆面脱落，因此要注意以下事项。
 - 切勿用硬布擦拭。
 - 切勿用力擦拭。
 - 切勿用稀释剂或苯擦拭。
 - 切勿将任何挥发性物质如杀虫剂喷洒到机器上。
 - 切勿让任何橡胶或塑料物质与机器长期接触。

使用此表可以帮助您解决日常操作中发生的问题。如果有自己解决不了的问题，请向您的经销商咨询。

■ 一般

问题	可能原因	解决方法
电源打不开。	电源线未插上。	将插头插入交流电源插座。
没有声音从扬声器发出。	扬声器信号电缆未连接。	若需要检查扬声器导线连接状况。
	音频电缆连接不当。	正确连接导线。（参阅第 7 至 10 页。）
	选错了播放源。	选择正确的播放源。
	静音功能正在使用中。	按 MUTING 键取消静音功能。
	选错了输入模式（模拟或数码）。	选择正确的输入模式（模拟或数码）。
声音仅从一台扬声器发出。	连接不正确。	检查连接状况。
	均衡设定至一方极限值。	正确调整均衡。（参阅第 24 或 50 页。）
“OVERLOAD” 字样开始在显示屏上闪烁。	因音量过高而导致扬声器超负荷。	1. 按前面板上的 $\odot$ /STANDBY/ON 键关闭主机。 2. 停止播放播放源。 3. 重新打开主机，调整音量。
	因扬声器端子短路而导致扬声器超负荷。	按前面板上的 $\odot$ /STANDBY/ON 键关闭主机，然后检查扬声器导线。 如果“OVERLOAD”字样不消失，可拔下交流电源插头，然后再重新插上。 如果扬声器导线未短路，请向经销商咨询。
打开电源后 STANDBY 灯点亮，但主机不久即关闭（进入待机状态）。	因电压过高而导致主机超负荷。	按前面板上的 $\odot$ /STANDBY/ON 键关闭主机。然后拔下电源导线，向经销商咨询。
遥控器不按指令进行操作。	遥控器没有进入您要求的操作状态。	首先按 SOUND 键（参阅第 24 页）或播放源选择键，然后按您想要使用的键。
遥控器不工作。	离主机太远，或者没有对准主机进行操作。	使用时请靠近主机。操作时遥控器应距主机 7 m 之内。
	主机上的遥控感应器的前方有障碍物。	移开障碍物。
	遥控器没有对准主机或组件的遥控感应器。	将遥控器对准您想要操作的各设备上的遥控感应器。
	电池的极性（+/- 极）放的方向不对。	正确安装电池。
	电池电量已耗尽。	换上新电池。
	遥控信号设定不正确。	选择正确的厂牌代码。 （参阅第 61 至 63 页。）

■ 关于 DVD 放像机

问题	可能原因	解决方法
电视屏幕上不出图像。	视频导线连接不正确。	正确连接视频导线。(参阅第 8 页。)
	电视机的输入选择不正确。	在电视机上选择正确的输入。
	光盘不能播放。	更换光盘。(参阅第 29 页。)
电视屏幕上不出图像, 图像模糊, 或图像被分割成两部份。	扫描模式设定在“逐行扫描”, 但连接至本机的电视机不能正常接受逐行扫描视频输入, 比如老牌电视机就可能发生此种情况。	将扫描模式切换成为“隔行扫描”。(参阅第 14 页。)
	彩色系统没有正确设定。	切换彩色系统。(参阅第 7 页。)
光盘不能播放。	主机与光盘的区域代码不兼容。	更换光盘。(参阅第 29 页。)
	父母锁定功能正在使用中。	输入密码切换父母锁定等级。(参阅第 53 和 54 页。)
光盘不能播放, 并且“0:00”字样在显示窗上出现。	装入的光盘之标签和数据面放倒了。	正确放入光盘。(参阅第 15 页。)
	装入了不能播放的光盘。	更换光盘。(参阅第 29 页。)
影像和声音失真。	光盘刮划或脏污。	更换或清洁光盘。(参阅第 64 页。)
	主机和电视机之间连接了录像机。	直接将主机与电视机相连接。
	某些光盘当将“逐行扫描模式”设定于“电影”或“自动”时, 图像可能模糊不清。	将“逐行扫描模式”设定至“视频”。(参阅第 49 页。)
图像在电视屏幕上摇晃不稳。	“屏幕类型”设定不正确。	正确设定屏幕类型。(参阅第 49 页。)
	电视机设定不正确。	正确设定电视机。
尽管您已正确连接了 AV COMPU LINK 导线, 单触 DVD 播放功能还是不运作。	视频输出模式设定不正确。	根据电视机和主机之间的视频连接正确设定视频输出模式。(参阅第 22 页。)
在电视屏幕上没有您已选作初始字幕语言的副标题显示。		某些光盘的设计决定初始播放时总是不显示字幕。遇此情形, 需在开始播放后按遥控器上的 SUBTITLE 键。(参阅第 35 页。)
声音语言与您选作初始声音语言的语言不一致。		某些光盘的设计决定初始播放时总是要使用原始语言。遇此情形, 需在开始播放后按遥控器上的 AUDIO 键。(参阅第 35 页。)

■ 关于调谐器

问题	可能原因	解决方法
广播因噪音而听不清。	AM 环形天线离主机太近。	改变 AM 环形天线的位置和方向。
	附带的 FM 天线没有正确伸展和放置。	将 FM 天线伸展至最佳位置。
在接收 FM 期间连续出现嘶嘶声或嗡嗡声。	输入信号太弱。	连接室外 FM 天线或向经销商咨询。
	离电台的距离太远。	选择新电台。
	所使用的天线不适合。	向经销商确认您的天线是否正确。
	天线连接不正确。	检查连接状况。
在接收 FM 期间偶而出现爆破声。	接收了汽车的发出引擎启动音。	让天线远离汽车通行处。

■ 关于 MP3

问题	可能原因	解决方法
光盘不能播放。	光盘上没有灌录 MP3 文件。	更换光盘。
	是一张不能播放的光盘 (如 CD-ROM)。	
	MP3 文件名上没有正确的文件增设码 — .mp3, .Mp3, .mP3, 或 .MP3。	将文件增设码 — .mp3, .Mp3, .mP3, 或 .MP3 — 追加到文件名称上。(参阅第 43 页。)
	MP3 文件传输速率低于 64 kbps。	本机不能播放这类文件。更换光盘。
	MP3 文件的灌录制式不符合 ISO 9660 Level 1 或 2。	更换光盘。 (使用兼容制式灌录 MP3 文件。)
播出的不是 MP3 文件而是 JPEG 文件。	MP3/JPEG 被设定在“JPEG”。	光盘上同时录有 MP3 文件和 JPEG 文件, 想要播放 MP3 文件时, 须将 MP3/JPEG 设定在“MP3”。(参阅第 50 页。)

■ 关于 JPEG

问题	可能原因	解决方法
光盘不能播放。	光盘上没有灌录 JPEG 文件。	更换光盘。
	是一张不能播放的光盘 (如 CD-ROM)。	
	JPEG 文件的文件名称里没有正确的文件增设码。	将文件增设码—.jpg, .jpeg, .JPG, .JPEG 或任何这些字母的大小写组合 (如“.Jpg”) — 追加到文件名称上。 (参阅第 45 页。)
	不是以基线 JPEG 制式灌录的 JPEG 文件。	本机不能播放这类文件, 更换光盘。
	JPEG 文件的灌录制式不符合 ISO 9660 Level 1 或 2。	更换光盘。 (使用兼容制式灌录 JPEG 文件。)
播出的不是 JPEG 文件而是 MP3 文件。	MP3/JPEG 被设定在“MP3”。	光盘上同时录有 MP3 文件和 JPEG 文件, 想要播放 JPEG 文件时, 须将 MP3/JPEG 设定在“JPEG”。 (参阅第 50 页。)

放大器

输出功率	立体声操作中：
	前频道：每频道 80 瓦，最小 RMS，在 1 千赫时双频道驱动为 8 欧姆，总谐波失真不超过 0.9%。 (IEC268-3/DIN)
	环绕声操作中：
	前频道：每频道 80 瓦，最小 RMS，在 1 千赫时驱动为 8 欧姆，总谐波失真不超过 0.8%。
	中央频道：80 瓦，最小 RMS，在 1 千赫时驱动为 8 欧姆，总谐波失真不超过 0.8%。
	后频道：每频道 80 瓦，最小 RMS，在 1 千赫时驱动为 8 欧姆，总谐波失真不超过 0.8%。

声音 (测量时的交流电压为 110 伏/127 伏/220 伏/240 伏)

音频输入灵敏度/阻抗 (1 千赫)：	TV, TAPE/CDR, DBS, VCR: 240 毫伏/47 千欧姆
音频输入 (DIGITAL IN) *：	同轴：DIGITAL 1 (DBS)：0.5 伏 (p-p)/75 欧姆
	光学：DIGITAL 2 (TV)：-21 分贝米至 -15 分贝米 (660 纳米±30 纳米)
	*相当于线性 PCM (脉码调制)，Dolby Digital (杜比数码) 和 DTS Digital Surround (数码环绕声) (抽样频率为 32 千赫，44.1 千赫，48 千赫)。
信噪比 ('66 IHF/'78 IHF)：	TV, TAPE/CDR, DBS, VCR: 87 分贝/67 分贝
频率响应 (8 欧姆)：	TV, TAPE/CDR, DBS, VCR: 20 赫兹至 20 千赫 (±1 分贝)
音调控制：	低音 (100 赫兹)：±10 分贝 ±2 分贝
	高音 (10 千赫)：±10 分贝 ±2 分贝

影像 (测量时的交流电压为 110 伏/127 伏/220 伏/240 伏)

视频输入灵敏度/阻抗 (1 千赫)：	
综合视频：	DBS IN, VCR IN: 1 伏 (p-p)/75 欧姆
S-视频：	DBS IN, VCR IN: (Y: 亮度)：1 伏 (p-p)/75 欧姆
	(C: 色度)：0.286 伏 (p-p)/75 欧姆
视频输出等级/阻抗 (1 千赫)：	
综合视频：	VCR OUT, MONITOR OUT: 1 伏 (p-p)/75 欧姆
S-视频：	VCR OUT, MONITOR OUT: (Y: 亮度)：1 伏 (p-p)/75 欧姆
	(C: 色度)：0.286 伏 (p-p)/75 欧姆
组合视频：	DVD COMPONENT VIDEO OUT: (组合-Y)：1.0 伏 (p-p)/75 欧姆
	(组合-PB/PR)：0.7 伏 (p-p)/75 欧姆
彩色系统：	NTSC/PAL
水平解像度：	500 线
信噪比 (S/N)：	63 分贝
同步：	负

FM 调谐器 (IHF)

调收范围：	87.50 兆赫至 108.00 兆赫
-------	---------------------

AM 调谐器

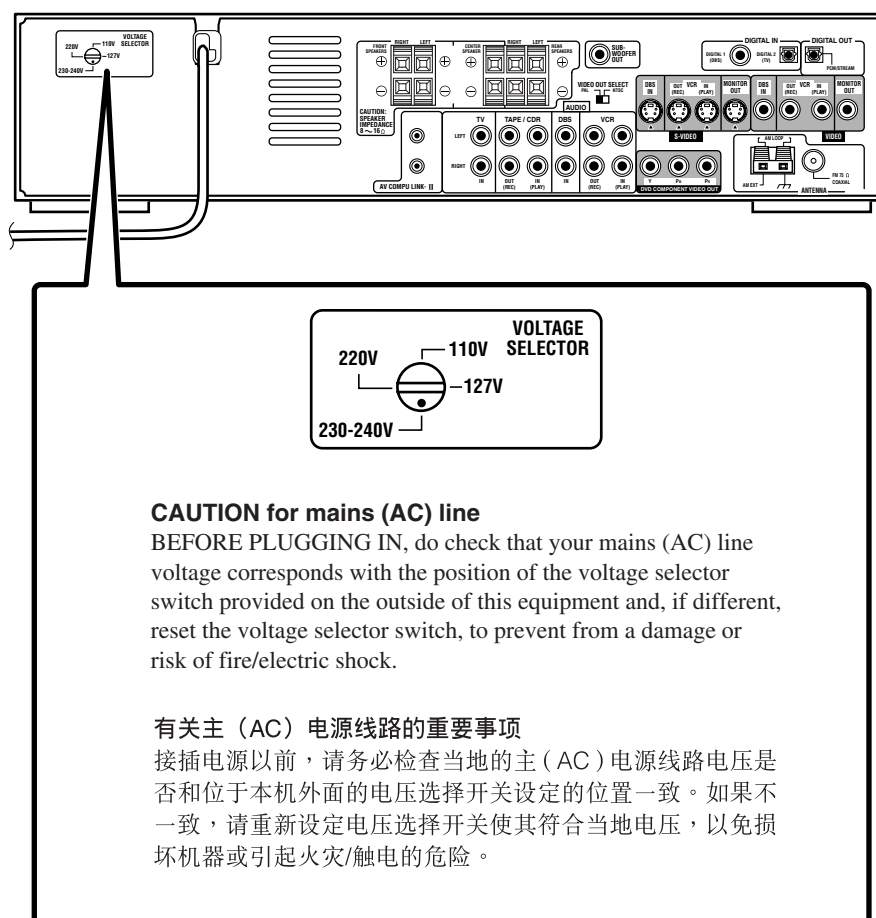
调收范围：	531 千赫至 1 602 千赫 (在 9 千赫间隔)
	530 千赫至 1 600 千赫 (在 10 千赫间隔)

一般信息

电源要求：	交流电 110 伏/127 伏/220 伏/230 伏—240 伏 ~， 可以使用电压选择器进行调整，50 赫兹/60 赫兹
功耗：	180 瓦 (操作模式下) 5 瓦 (待机模式下)
体积 (宽/高/深)：	435 毫米 × 100 毫米 × 403.5 毫米
重量：	7.9 千克

Mains (AC) Line Instruction (not applicable for Europe, U.S.A., Canada, Australia and U.K.)

主（AC）电源线路说明（不适用于香港、欧洲、美国、加拿大、澳大利亚及英国型号）



JVC
VICTOR COMPANY OF JAPAN, LIMITED

